

**The complete gard'ner: or, directions for cultivating and right ordering of fruit-gardens, and kitchen gardens / By Monsieur de la Quintinye. Now compendiously abridg'd [from J. Evelyn's translation] ... and made of more use, with very considerable improvements, by George London and Henry Wise.**

### **Contributors**

La Quintinie, Jean de, 1626-1688.  
Evelyn, John, 1620-1706.  
London, George, -1713.  
Wise, Henry, 1653-1738.

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Printed for Andrew Bell ..., 1701.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/sadfrjsv>

### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>









Twelve pound & eleven pence will  
buy one acre of Land

---

32268/8

It buye four Winchester Bullhols  
to an acre of Land

---

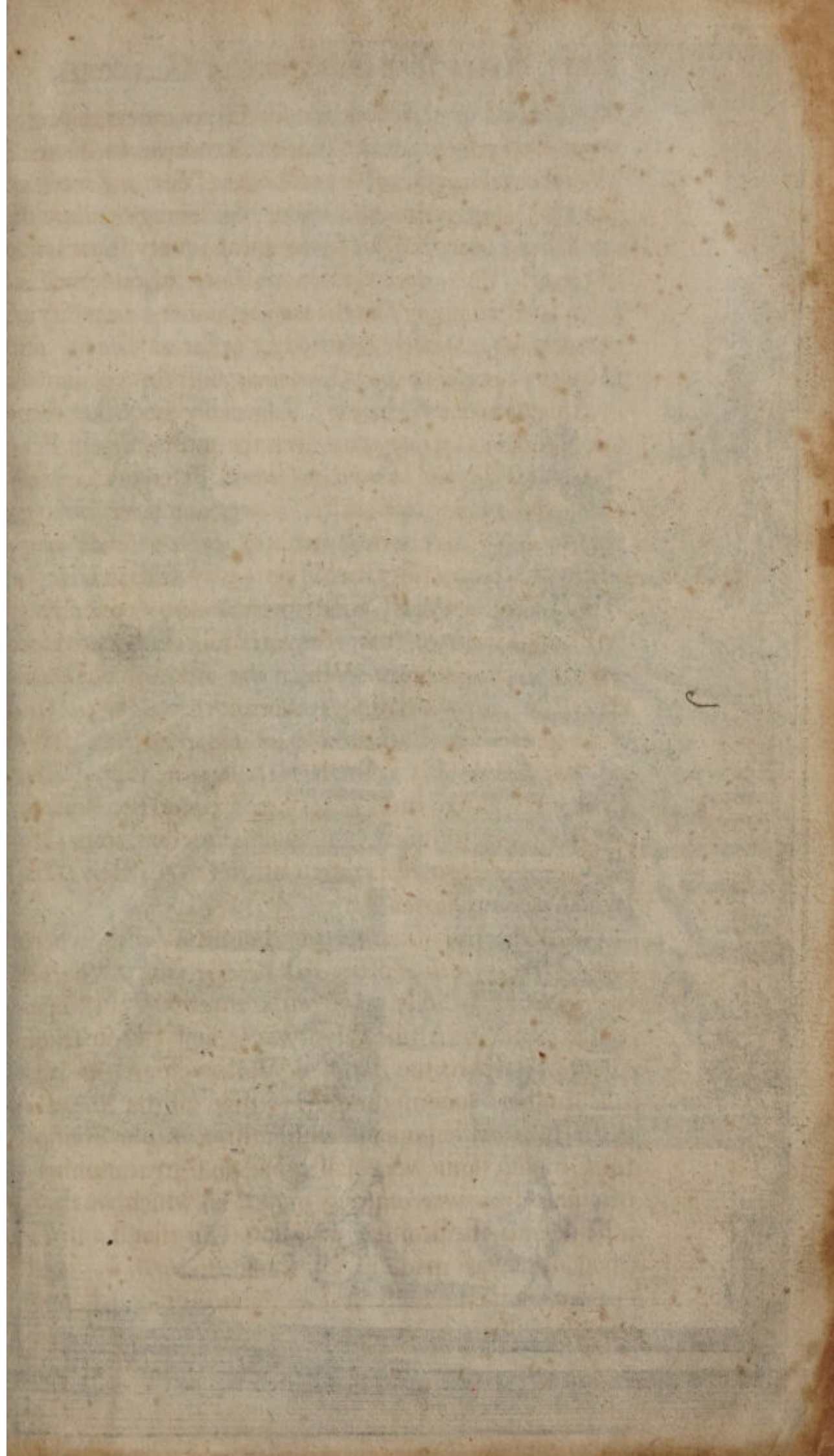
an acre of Land containe one  
hundred & sixty perch square  
and every perch is sixteen foot  
and a half

So that an acre of ground  
ground is 1320 foot square  
1320

1320

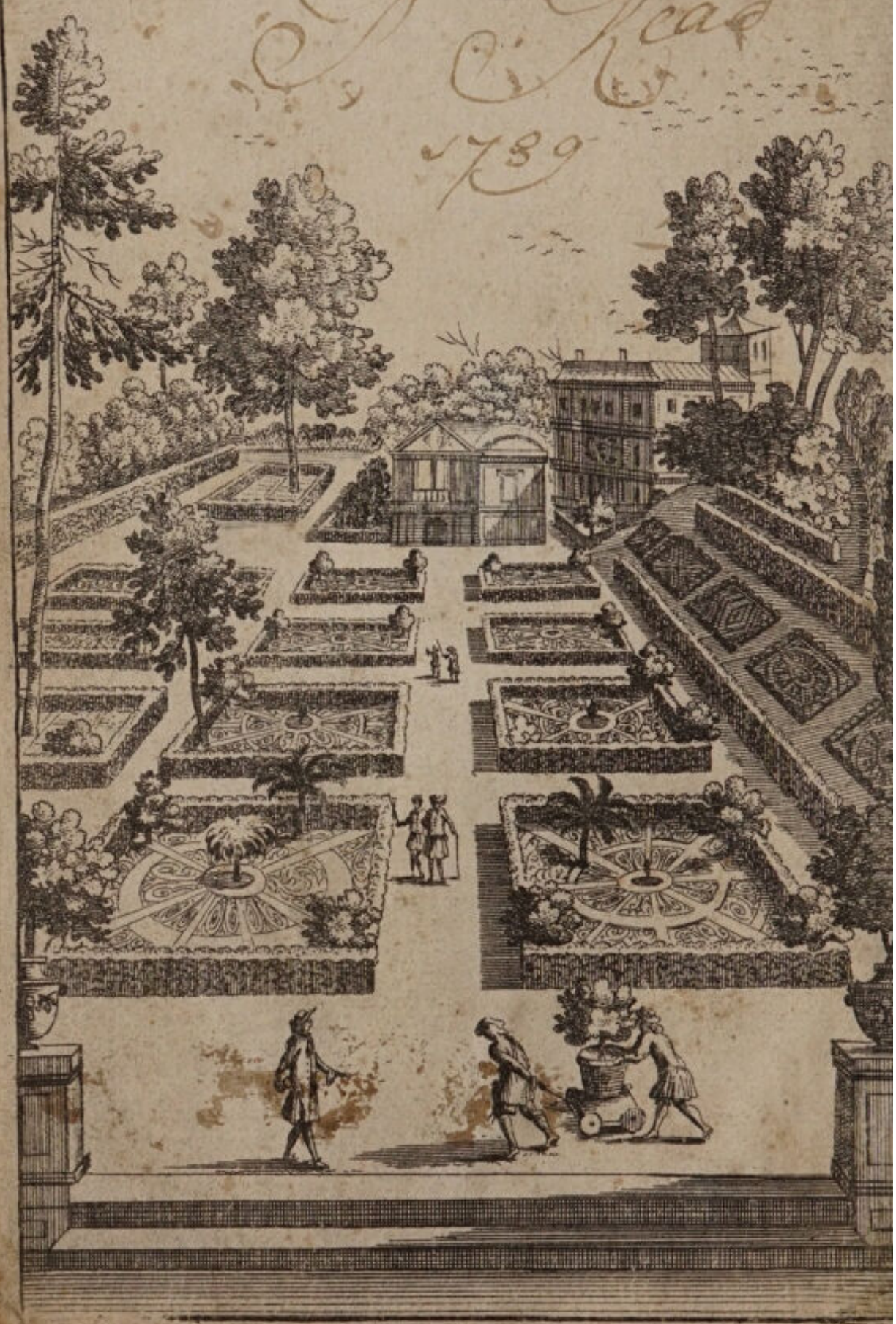


1851





*P. Head*  
*1789*





*Gabriel* THE *Read Esq*  
**Complete Gard'ner:**  
*Percival* OR, *Read*  
 Directions for CULTIVATING  
*A D* AND *1789*  
 Right ORDERING  
 OF  
**FRUIT-GARDENS,**  
 AND  
**KITCHEN GARDENS.**

By Monsieur De la Quintinye.

Now Compendiously Abridg'd, and made of more  
 Use, with very Considerable Improvements.

By George London, and Henry Wise.

The Third Edition. Corrected.

L O N D O N,

Printed for Andrew Bell at the Cross-Keys and Bible  
 in Cornhil near Stocks-Market, 1701.







---

An Advertisement of J. Evelyn, Esq;  
to the Folio Edition of Monsieur  
*La Quintinye*.

I Cannot conceive but it must needs be a very acceptable Advertisement, and of Universal Concern to all Noble men, and Persons of Quality, lovers of Gardens, and Improvers of Plantations (of all Diversions and Employments the most Natural, Useful, innocent and Agreeable) at what Distance soever (from a Place of so easy and speedy Correspondence, and which is so near this great City) to give this Notice.

That of all I have hitherto seen, either at Home or Abroad; or found by Reading many Books publish'd on this Subject, pretending to speak of Nurseries and Plantations for store and variety; Directions for the Designing (or as they term it) the Skilful Making, Plotting, Laying-out, and Disposing of a Ground to the best Advantage: In a word, for whatsoever were desireable for the Furniture of such a Ground, with the most excellent and Warrantable Fruit (I say Warrantable; because it is peculiarly due to their honest Industry, and so rarely to be met with elsewhere) and other Accessories to Gardens of all Denominations, as in that Vast, ample Collection which I have lately seen, and well consider'd at Brompton Park near Kensington: The very sight of which alone, gives an Idea of something that is greater than I can well express, without an enumeration of Particulars; and of the exceeding Industry, Method and Address of those who have undertaken, and Cultivated it for publick Use: I mean Mr. George London (chief Gardner to their Majesties) and his Associate Mr. Henry Wise: For I have long observ'd (from the daily practice, and effects of the laudable Industry of these two Partners) that they have not

\*

made



## An Advertisement of J. Evelyn, Esq;

made Gain the only mark of their Pains; But with Extraordinary, and rare Industry, endeavour'd to improve themselves in the Mysteries of their Profession, from the great Advantages, and now long Experience they have had, in being Employ'd in most of the celebrated Gardens and Plantations which this Nation abounds in, besides what they have learn'd Abroad, where Horiculture is in highest Reputation.

I find they not only understand the Nature and Genius of the several Soils; but their usual Infirmities, proper Remedies, Composts and Applications to Reinvigorate exhausted Mould; sweeten the foul and tainted, and reduce the Sower, Harsh, Stuborn and Dry, or over moist and diluted Earth, to its genuine Temper and Constitution; and what Aspects, and Situations are proper for the several sorts of Mural, Standard, Dwarf, and other Fruit trees.

They have made Observations, and given me a Specimen of that long (but hitherto) wanting particular, of Discriminating the several kinds of Fruits, by their Characteristical Notes, from a long, and Critical observation of the Leaf, Taste, Colour, and other distinguishing Qualities: So as one shall not be imp's'd upon with Fruits of Several Names; when as in truth, there is but one due to them. For instance, in Pears alone, a Gentleman in the Country sends to the Nurseries for the Liver Blanch, Pignigny de chouille, Rattau blanc, &c. the English St. Gilbert, Cranbourn Pears (and several other names) when a'l this while, they are no other than the well known Cadillac. The same also hap'ning in Peache, Apples, Plums, Cherries, and other Fruit; for want of an accurate examination (by comparing of their Taste, and those other Indications I have mentioned) For which Gentlemen complain (and not without cause) that the Nursery-men abuse them; when 'tis their Ignorance, or the Exotic Name of which they are so fond.

I find they have likewise apply'd themselves to attain a sufficient Mastery in Lines and Figures for general design,



## An Advertisement of J. Evelyn, Esq;

*design, and expeditious Methods for casting and leveling of Grounds; and to bring them into the most apt Form they are capable of; which requires a particular Address, and to determine the best Proportions of Walks and Avenues, Stras, Centers, &c suitable to the lengths; and how, and with what materials, whether Gravel, Carpet, &c. to be layed.*

*They have a numerous Collection of the best Designs, and I perceive are able of themselves to Draw, and contrive other, applicable to the places, when busie Works, and Patterns of Imbroidery for the Coronary and Flower Gardens are proper or desired. And where Fountains, Statues, Vases, Dials, and other decorations of Magnificence are to be plac'd with most advantage.*

*To this add a plentiful and choice Collection of Orange-trees, Limon, Merril, Bayes, Jassmines, and all other Rarities, and Exotics, requiring the Conservatory; after they have embellish'd their proper stations abroad during the Summer, and for continuing a no less ornament in the Greer-House during Winter.*

*They have a very brave and noble Assembly of the Flowery and other Trees; Perennial and variegated EverGreens and scrubs, hardy, and fittest for our Climate; and understand what best to plant the humble Boscage, Wilderness, or taller Groves with: where, and how to dispose, and govern them according as Ground, and situation of the place requires both for shelter and ornament. For which purpose (and for Walks and Avenues) they have store of Elms, Limes, Platans, Constantinople-Chestnuts, Black Cherry-trees, &c.*

*Not are they, I perceive, less knowing in that most useful (though less pompous part of Horticulture) the Potagere, Meloniere, Culinarie Garden: Where they should most properly be plac'd for the use of the Family; how to be planted, furnish'd and Cultivated so as to afford great pleasure to the Eye, as well as profit to the Master. And they have also Seeds, Bulbs, Roots;*



## *'An Advertisement of J. Evelyn, Esq;*

*Roots, Slips, for the Flowry Garden, and shew how they ought to be order'd and maintain'd.*

*Lastly, I might super-add, the great number of Crouds and Gardens of Noble-men and Persons of Quality, which they have made planted ab Origine, and are still under their Care and inspection (though at Considerable Distances) and how exceedingly they prosper, to justifie what I have said in their behalf.*

*And as for the Nursery part in Voucher, and to make good what I have said on that particular, one needs no more than take a Walk to Brompton Park (upon a fair Morning) to behold, and admire what a Magazine these Industrious Men have provided, fit for age, and Choice in their several Classes; and all within one Inclosure: Such an Assembly I believe, as is no where else to be met with in this Kingdom, nor in any other that I know of.*

*I cannot therefore forbear to Publish (after all the Encomiums of this great Work of Moun.<sup>r</sup>. de la Quintinye, which I confess are very just) what we can, and are able to perform in this part of Agriculture; and have some Amœnities and advantages peculiar to our own, which neither France, nor any other Country can attain to; and is much due to the Industry of Mr. London and Mr. Wise, and to such as shall imitate their Laudable Undertaking.*

*Be this then for their Encouragement, and to gratifie such as may need or require their Assistance.*

J. EVELYN.

---

Place this between page 14 and 15 before the Defence of Gardens.



---

A N  
 A D V E R T I S E M E N T  
 T O T H E  
 Nobility and Gentry.

**O**F late Years, since *Gard'ning* and *Planting* have been in so great esteem, it's observable, that many who have planted *Fruit-Trees*, have been disappointed in their hopes; for after they have been at the charge of making and *planting* their *Gardens*, they then of course expect success, both in their *Trees* and *Fruit*; tho' the proper means for both be usually neglected.

We have not only observ'd these *Disappointments*, but as much as in us lay, have given our *Cautions*, especially to Gentlemen that have desired our Opinion: And now out of a true regard to the publick, in respect of *Gard'ning*, we communicate to the World these our Observations, which tho' few, we hope may be of use.

In the first place we think fit to remark that we have gone through the Works of our learned Author with all the exactness we possibly could, abstracting out of each Title, or general Head, all that is useful; and have reduc'd into a proper method, that in which the Original is so prolix and interwoven, that the Reader was rather tir'd than inform'd.



Secondly, the Author sometimes dwells so long upon some one *Fruit*, that he often passes by another that is equally as good, without so much as giving the least description of it; which Deficiency we have endeavour'd to supply.

To which we shall add something, as to the Observations we have made of the *Miscarriages* and *Disappointments* that Planters meet with: Which may be reduc'd into these three heads.

First, the best, or properest sort of *Fruit*, are not always made choice of to *plant*, but often the contrary.

Secondly, they are not well manag'd, and order'd after they are *planted*.

Thirdly, Some Seasons of late Years have prov'd very bad, and may spoil the *Fruits*; tho' the greatest Care and Skill that's possible be us'd about them.

First, The best or properest sort of *Fruit* for each *Exposition*, are not always made choice of to plant; but often the contrary.

Gentlemen coming to *London* at the Seasons of *Planting*, and observing often that Bundles of *Trees* are standing at the *Seeds-Men* Shops, or at least meeting with some of their Printed Catalogues, in which they make large offers of the Sale of all their sorts of *Fruit-Trees*, *Ever-greens*, *Flowering Shrubs* and *Roots*; but with what Certainty any one may depend upon the Truth of what is offer'd, or what Reason they should have to buy of them rather than of the *Gard'ner*, we leave them to judge; knowing very well that none of those grow in their Shops.

Another sort of Men there be, that ply about the *Exchange* and *Westminster Hall*, some of which never fail of having all sorts of *Fruit Trees* that you shall want, tho' they have not a *Foot* of *Land*: Not but that there are some of those who have *Ground* of their own, wherein they raise *Trees*.

There



There are also those Gentlemen who send directly to a *Nursery Man* for such and such sorts of *Fruit-Trees*, not knowing what the sorts are which they send for, but as it is too often seen, one *Fruit* being call'd by the name of another, they send for such sorts of *Fruit* which they have tasted under those Names; but it being a mistake, and the *Fruits* they send for perhaps of the worst Sorts, or not in the least fit for the *Exposition* allotted them; or it may be instead of the best, they only send for those that are properly fit for baking, this we know, and have sent them the descriptions of the very same *Fruits* they have sent for thro' their Mistake, which hath soon caused them to change their Opinion, & forth with make choice of those sorts that have been more proper for them.

As for Instance, There came a Letter from a Person of Honour in *Scotland*, to send him the several sorts of *Fruit-Trees* mention'd in his Catalogue, wherein were twelve sorts of *Peaches*, of which six were such as ripen with us very late, as *Malecotoon Peach*, which is not worth any ones planting, and some others of late kinds; whereas we find by experience that those latter *Peaches* hardly ever ripen here; and what can be imagin'd will the success of them be, when they are plant'd so far North? most certain that Noble Lord would never have sent for those sorts, had his Lordship had the least knowledge of them.

Now it may be some of those sorts of late ripe *Fruit*, that are proper neither for the *Soil* nor *Exposure*, are sent according to their order, and *Planted*, and very often the space of time between the *Planting* and their *Bearing* may be some Years, in which time they have forgot what *Trees* they sent for; but it may be the *Trees* thrive very well, and there is great expectation of some fine *Fruit*, but when the *Fruit* is ripe, and at its full Maturity, all their expectations are frustrated; for perhaps a harsh gritty choaky



*Pear*, a late watery *Peach*, or a sower *Plum*; then the *Nursery-Man* is presently slav'd and condemn'd for a cheating Knave, for sending them such sorts of bad *Fruit*, when at the same time they were the very same sorts they sent for.

There is also a sort of Men who call themselves *Gardners*, and of them not a few, who having wrought at labouring work at the new making of some *Ground* or in a *Garden*, where a great many Hands are employ'd; and after the young Beginner hath exercised the *Spade* and the *Barrow* for twelve Months or thereabouts, he then puts on an *Apron*, sets up for a profess'd *Gard'ner*, and a place he must have; he hears some honest Country Gentleman is in *London*, and wants a *Gard'ner*; he goes to him, and tells him his Story of what great matters he is capable of, and that he hath been at the new making of such a *Ground*, and such a great piece of Work he manag'd, and it may be he gets a favourable Letter, or at least some recommendation from some of those Sellers of *Trees* before mention'd; so then he is hir'd, and his Master tells him he has brought to Town with him a Note of some *Fruit Trees* that he shall want, and asks him if he knows the best sorts, (his Answer is, he kens them reet weel) and has so much Impudence as to name some sort or other, right or wrong.

Now this *List* is sent to the *Nursery Man*, and if he makes any Scruple of sending the same sorts, it's judg'd he's loth to send out his best *Fruits*, for the Gentleman thinks that his *Gard'ner* hath all the reason in the World to make choice of the best Sorts of *Fruit* and therefore have them he will; now if the *Nursery-Man* hath not these sorts, he is forced to buy them: So that in this, and other-like Cases, a *Nursery-Man* is oblig'd to raise a supply of some very indifferent, or bad sorts of *Fruit-Trees* to serve these Purposes. This is sufficient, without meddling any further, to demonstrate how far this Gentleman is impos'd



impos'd upon, even at the first step; and this we do affirm to be true of our own knowledge, those Men having wrought with us; and of those Northern Lads much is owing to their Impudence.

Secondly, That *Fruit-Trees* are not well order'd and manag'd after their being *Planted*.

There be some Gentlemen who send for the best sorts of *Fruit-Trees* from a *Nursery-Man*, or *Gard'ner*, and accordingly the *Trees* are sent, and perhaps the Directions for placing them against the *Walls* which they properly require, and are afterwards *Planted* but let us inquire how they are planted and order'd.

It may be those *Trees* that are sent are *planted* against some *old Walls*, where other *Trees* have dyed the Year before; now what is done in this case, why Holes are made just where the other *Trees* stood, and the *Tree Planted* now the odds is more than ten to one, whether these *Trees* ever come to answer expectation.

Or if it be a new *Wall*, then it may be a *Trench* is dug in clay or Gravel, according as the *Ground* is, of two or three Foot wide, and of a proportionable depth, so that the *Borders* are fill'd up with good *Earth*, and there the *Trees* are so planted, that by that time the *Trees* come to bear, their *Roots* have got to the extent of the good *Earth*, and then return back again, by which the *Fruit* becomes small, bad, and of no relish.

But in those places where the *Borders* are made of a proper *Depth* and *Width*, and with good *Earth*, and the *Trees* carefully *planted*, it may be instead of the *Trees* being carefully headed at the most proper time, they are not *headed* at all, but stand with their *Heads* on all Summer; or if they are, it may be instead of being carefully *water'd* all Summer, the *Borders* are full of Weeds, or if clear from Weeds, then it may be a Crop of *Pease* and *Beans* are sown and planted upon them; or if a *Garden* of Pleasure, then the *Borders*



are fill'd up with the several varieties of great growing *Flowers*, which suck the nourishment from the *Trees*, and utterly destroy all good *Fruits*.

There might be many more Instances inserted of this Nature, of all which we have been Eye Witnesses, and two often seen these neglects in the several *Plantations* we have seen manag'd, without mentioning the great abuse which *Fruit Trees* suffer for want of being well prun'd, and the *Fruits* carefully pick'd, and other neglects of this Nature; for in truth it's rare to see these works well perform'd.

Thirdly, That some Seasons of late Years have proved very bad, and may have spoiled the *Fruits*, tho' the greatest Care and Skill had been us'd about them that was possible.

As to the difficulty of the Seasons, if we suppose the best *Fruit Trees* to be planted and manag'd with the greatest Care and Diligence, the Ground first of all well prepar'd, and *Fruit-Trees* budded or grafted on such *Stocks* as are most proper to the nature of the Ground, and the several kinds planted against the *Walls* properly where they should be, and afterwards skilfully prun'd, and as often as is needful, the superfluous *Fruit* pick'd off, and no more left on each *Tree*, than it can well bring to perfection, to be fair and good, when all these directions are duly observ'd, yet by reason of the badness of Seasons, by Cold, or too much Rain, many of the *Fruit* often prove watery, insipid, and worth little or nothing.

These following *Fruits* are known to be the best of their Kinds, and when well manag'd, and the Season favourable, there is none that do exceed them,

*Peaches*



*Peaches.*

*Next.*

*Pears.*

|   |                 |             |
|---|-----------------|-------------|
| { | Minion.         |             |
| { | White           | } Magdalen. |
| { | Red             |             |
| { | Montabon.       |             |
| { | Belchevereuse.  |             |
| { | Burdine.        |             |
| { | Admirable.      |             |
| { | Old Newington.  |             |
| { | Red Roman.      |             |
| { | Violet Haffive. |             |
| { | Brinion Rond.   |             |
| { | Virgoulee.      |             |
| { | Le Chaffery.    |             |
| { | Ambret.         |             |
| { | St. Germaine.   |             |
| { | Espine.         |             |
| { | Craffeine.      |             |
| { | Colmar.         |             |
| { | La Marquise.    |             |
| { | Buree.          |             |
| { | Vert Longue.    |             |

These several *Fruit-Trees* we have had growing in our own Plantation at *Brumpton Park*, and others, where no Skill, Cost, or Pains have been wanting, yet we do affirm that in some bad Seasons several of the aforementioned *Fruits* have had little or no Relish or Flavour in them, nay insomuch that if our selves and others had not gather'd good *Fruit* from the same *Trees* in more favourable Summers before, and knew them to be the true kinds, one might have been deceiv'd, and if a stranger had tasted the *Fruit* both in a good and a bad Season, he would not have believed that the same *Trees* could produce so different *Fruits*.

Now it it be so, that in some bad Seasons the *Fruit* proves very indifferent, tho' it meet with the best



usage. what can be said to those Men who expect every year to have the best of *Fruit*, without taking due Regard to the managing of them; who in *Planting* of them, do not consider to plant *Peaches*, *Pears*, &c. to the several *Aspects*, against the Walls, which they do properly require? so that instead of *Planting* them against a *South-Wall*, they are often planted against a *North*, *North East*, or *North-West Wall*?

Again, others hearing that the aforementioned *Pears* are the very best sorts, they many times send for them, and plant them to be *Dwarfs*, and not against a Wall; whereby when they come to bear, the *Fruit* generally comes not to its due Perfection, whereupon the *Gard'ner* that sold the *Trees* is blam'd, and counted a Rogue for selling them such bad Kinds.

But whereas the most Ingenious Monsieur *De la Quintiny* says, that he has tasted above 300 several sorts of *Pears*, different one from another, without finding above 30 sorts that are Excellent; he likewise inserts, that great Allowances must be made to the fickleness of Seasons, of which we are not the Masters; as also of the Diversity of *Soyls* and *Climates*, which is almost infinite, and to the Nature of the *Stock* of the *Tree*, and lastly to the Manner or Figure in which the several *Trees* grow and produce.

They are all points that require a great deal of Consideration, and very quick Sense to ballance the Opinion of those that would judge of them. There are sometimes ill *Pears* among the *Virgoulees*, *Le Chafseries*, *Ambretts*, and *Thorn Pears*, &c. and but scurvy *Peaches* among the *Minions*, *Magdalens*, *Violets*, *Admirables*, &c. and bad *Plums* among the *Perdrigons*, some bad *Grapes* among the *Muscats*, and bad *Figs* among those that are most esteem'd.

This



This may perhaps astonish some Curious Person but tho' in a certain sort of good Fruit there may be some defective, yet it follows not from hence that the whole Kind should be rejected; for a *Fruit* may prove ill one Year, or in such certain *Expositions*, which may have appear'd good several Years before; so on the other hand, that *Fruit* which was good this Year, was not to be endur'd for some preceding Years.

Now to prevent as much as in us lies, and put a stop to these grand Disorders for the future, and to direct our Nobility and Gentry into a true Method, how to prepare the *Earth*, and make their Ground fit for *planting*, and how to have good *Trees*, whereby they may have real Cause to rejoice in the Event.

Take the following Rules, with what you'll meet with in the Abridgement, which may be sufficient Directions for all young *Planters*.

1<sup>st</sup>. As to the preparing and making your Ground fit for *planting*.

In all the Plantations that we have had to do with or have observed, we have found by Experience, That when young *Trees* are planted in the same *Earth* that others have died in, they seldom or never succeed well in it; so that in this Case, the only and best way will be to take out all the old, worn-out, or exhausted *Earth*, about 4, 5, or 6 Foot Diameter, and of a proportionable Depth, that is where you design to Plant your *Tree*, and take some good fresh *Earth* to fill the hole up: The best *Earth* for this Use is a sort of a rich sandy Loam, which may be taken near the Surface of some rich Pasture Ground where Cattle have been fed or fother'd, or of some rich Sheep Walk, where there is a Depth of *Earth*; and if it is mix'd with a little old *Mellon Earth*, or the like, it may do well, or Cow or Horses Dung may likewise do well if it is quite rotten, so as to be like *Earth*; but of this a small Quantity, as  
one



one part in four or five, and so rotten that it may not be discern'd to be *Dung*, but *Earth*.

This sort of *Earth* ought to be prepar'd, and to lie some time on a heap before *planting*, and if you have Conveniency, to keep it from great Gluts of Wet, so that when you come to use it, it may be dry, and being well wrought and turn'd over, it becomes fine, and in using fills up the Vacancies between the *Roots*.

This *Earth* is of great use where Ground cannot be brought into a fit condition for *planting*, by reason of its being over moist, and will not admit of being well wrought, till such time as the Season for *planting* will be over, and sometimes in a very dry Spring when the Work is undertaken late; so that the *Earth* of it self in the Ground, will not admit of *planting*, and having a Stock of this sort of *Earth* so well prepared and ordered, the *planting* may very well go on, and by which a Year's time is sav'd: For having to each *Tree* only so much of this *Earth* to cover the *Roots* of the *Tree*, and fix him so that he may stand firm, the rest may be done at a time when the Weather will better admit of it.

After these *Trees* are well *planted* in this *Earth*, and having good half-rotten *Dung* near at hand, lay on a Coat of about three or four Inches thick, afterwards laying on a sprinkling of *Earth* of about an Inch thick, and above that lay on *Fern* or old *Straw* five or six Inches thick or thereabouts, and two or three Foot every way from the *Stem* of the *Tree*, then lay on a few great Stones, which will be of use to keep the Wind from blowing off the *Fern* or *Straw*.

This Coat of *Dung* and *Straw* will be of great Benefit to the *Roots* of the *Trees*, keeping them warm in the *Winter* from the violent Frosts, and cool in *Summer* from extreme Heats; and as time  
and



and Wether wafts the *Dung*, *Fern* or *Straw*, it renders it very agreeable to the *Roots* of the *Trees*, or *Plants* against a *Wall*.

After this is perform'd, if *Wall-Trees*, let the Principal *Branch* of them be nail'd to the *Wall*, to keep them from being shaken by the *Wind*, for 'tis a great Annoyance to all *Fruit-Trees* and others, to be so shaken; especially when they have struck young *Roots*, by breaking them off, which is a great Hindrance to their Progress in growing, and often causes their dying.

Also in all Standard *Fruit Trees* and others, if this Method of fresh *Earth* be used in *planting*, and after being well *planted*, to be stak'd and tied so as the *Wind* or *Cattle* do not annoy them, the Owners will reap a satisfactory Benefit.

If your *Trees* are not headed, or at least so low as they should be when they are *planted*, then observe, that as soon as the *Buds* begin to swell so as you can be able to discern which are most proper to serve for the use of filling up the *Wall*, then head your *Trees*, cutting them within six or nine Inches of the *budding* or *grafting* Place, more or less, according as the *Tree* is furnish'd with *Buds*; but be sure to hold the *Tree* fast, so as the *Roots* may not be mov'd.

In performing this Work of *heading* of those *Trees* at the *Spring*: it ought to be done with a particular Care.

Now supposing these *Trees* are *planting* according to all the Directions before mentioned; it follows not from thence, but that they may still lie under farther Inconveniencies, if due Care be not taken to *water* them when they require it, to keep the *Borders*, *Divisions*, or other Places clean from *Weeds*: For in some space of Years there ought not to be any thing suffer'd to grow within five or six Foot of the *Roots* of the *Tree*, to suck the least Nourishment from it.

And



And they must be also well secur'd from the injuries of Cattle, &c.

For we rather chuse to advise all persons not to *Plant* at all, than not to take proper methods whereby their *Trees* may succeed; for it can never be pleasing to see a stunted *Tree*, or a *Plantation* not thrive, and we are most certain it can be no satisfaction or Credit to any honest Nursery man or Gard'ner, to see or hear of such Miscarriages.

To be furnish'd with good *Trees*.

Enquire out an able *Nursery-man*, or Gard'ner of good repute, give him an account of the Aspects of your *Walls* which you design to plant, and the height of them.

Also let him have the particular length of each *Wall*, &c. in yards or Feet, and what sort of *Earth* your Ground does most incline to, whether hot and dry, or cold and moist, &c.

This *Nursery man* must regulate and proportion the whole *Plantation* with *Trees* proper for the several Aspects and nature of the Soil, as also for all *Dwarfs*, *Standards*, or *half Standards*, which shall be thought necessary.

But perhaps a Gentleman has a *Plantation* already, yet wants a few more *Trees* for some vacant places; herein the *Nursery Man* should be likewise inform'd what plenty of choice *Fruits* you have already.

As for Example.

If you are pretty well stor'd with the *Burre Pear*, which indeed is one of the best sorts of *Fruit* in its proper Season, and so likewise for any other choice sorts, you may chuse rather to be supply'd with some other sorts generally allow'd to be good.

But herein be not over-fond of infinite varieties of *Fruit*, for the most knowing Men in *Fruit-Trees*, rather content themselves with a few good sorts, than trouble



trouble themselves farther, where they are sure to find little or no satisfaction.

It may not be amiss to give a Word or two of Directions for planting an entire Collection of *Fruit*.

Supposethen that you have Walls and ground enough to plant a whole Collection, herein it will be mainly necessary so to regulate the matter that you may be supply'd with *Fruit* at all times of the Year: In order to which its requisite to have *Fruit-Trees* suitable to each Season; as, first to *Summer*, next for *Autumn*, and next to them the first *Winter Fruits*, such as are eatable in *November* and *December*; and lastly, the late *Winter Pears*, as the *Bon Chretien Double*, &c. which will continue good a long time, even till *April*, if carefully gather'd and look'd after, and will then be excellent.

As for *Summer*, tho' there be several excellent perfume'd *Pears*, as also of *Peaches* in *July* and *August*, yet they soon perish.

Also in *Autumn*, to have too many *Buree* and *Bergamot*, (tho' the best in that season) will not be convenient, but to have other *Fruits* follow them successively.

We are of opinion that *high Walls* will do best to be planted with the choicest sorts of *Winter Pears*, for the advantage which is reap'd from them is very great; the *Fruit* usually keeps very long, if gather'd in a proper Season, and discreetly dispos'd of afterwards; and some sorts of them will make a lovely appearance at your Table for six Weeks or two Months together; also another great Benefit is, that they may be conveyed with safety from the Country to *London*, or elsewhere, as there shall be occasion.

It is to be noted, that tho' these Directions that are given in sending the length and height of the *Walls*, together with their several Aspects, and nature of the Ground, to a *Nursery-man* or *Gardner*, is only



only for those Noble-men and others, that have not had the knowledge of *Fruit*, whereby to make the most judicious choice themselves; but for those that have had that knowledge, or at least have a sufficient *Gard'ner*, it's suppos'd that they may send their order for such and such sorts of *Fruit*, being able to judge of what sorts they most stand in need of, or at least that are most suitable to their *Pallates*.

---

SOME

---



---

S O M E  
**R U L E S**  
 F O R T H E  
 Defence of *G A R D E N S*,  
 A N D

*Securing of large Plantations from turbulent  
 and blasting Winds.*

*With Instructions touching Espalliers, or places  
 of Shelter for the preserving of tender  
 Greens and Plants.*

**I**T's strange to consider to what a vast Perfection we in this Island are arrived in a few years in many laudable Arts, but especially in Gardning; wherein we are at present very little Inferior either to the *Italian, French, or Flemming*. But that which renders our *Gardens and Plantations* less successful than theirs, is judg'd to proceed, as certainly it does, from the variableness of our Climate, compared with that of the more *Southern Continent*: For those that are upon *Terra Firma* do observe, that tho' their Winters be severe, and many times sharper than ours, yet when that is past, usually moderate and comfortable Weather succeeds all the Summer after. But we here in  
*England*



## xvi *Rules for the defence of Gardens.*

*England* find it quite otherwise, Experience making it too often appear, what sudden Alterations we have of Weather through most parts of the Year, as from hot to cold, from calm and serene, to stormy, turbulent, and sharp; and all this sometimes in a very short space of time. This indeed does too often frustrate our Labour and Industry, so that we are under a necessity of contriving a timely Remedy, (as far as lies in our Power) to preserve our *Gardens* against the encounters of this destructive Enemy: Especially since our Predecessors in *Gard'ning*, nay even the most eminent Practitioners therein, as well as several ingenious Gentlemen, who being well skill'd in art, and have written of *Gard'ning*, have wholly omitted, or too much neglected it, contenting themselves only with making a Brick or Stone Wall about their *Garden*; conceiving when that is done, that they are sufficiently provided with a secure defence. Which was also the opinion of that time, in which the Author of the *Complete Gard'ner* made it his Practice to plant under all those several Parallel Walls at the Royal *Potagerie* at *Versailles*, which is near twenty Years since; upon the Plant of which *Garden*, with its Walls and Scituations, some Observations were made in *April* last, viz. 1698. by G. L. which are as follows.

In all the Divisions of the Parallel Walls, where they were placed closest, the *Peaches* and *Nectarines* were almost wholly gone off from the Wall, especially those near the Door-way, and also in those Quarters where the Parallel Walls were set in obtuse Angles, one might observe that all the *Branches* of the *Trees* were gone off within three or four Foot of the Ground, some were half gone, and great numbers of whole *Trees* were entirely gone; all which was the mischievous effects of Eddy-Winds: So that if a strict calculation was made of all those *Peach-Trees*, and *Nectarines* which Monsieur *La Quintinie* planted, and had



had in Perfection about twelve Years since, one would not find forty good *Peach Trees* in all that great Design for *Wall Fruit-Trees*, whereas in his Book he describes some hundreds of *Trees* for that purpose.

'Tis farther observable that those *Trees* which miscarried most, were such as grew upon the *South West Walls*.

And that in the great Square of that *Garden* the *Trees* have not been so much destroy'd as in the little Squares, for which this reason may be assign'd, viz. Their allowing several of those *Trees* which were design'd, for *Dwarfs*, to run up into tall Heads for *Standards*, which do in part break off the Winds from those tender *Trees* which are against the Walls.

'Tis also observeable that this Plantation, which in all probability was intended for one of the finest in *Europe*, is now in the Year 1698, reduced from that Prosperity it enjoy'd in the Year 1686, even to such a degree of destruction, that not one part in three of those *Trees* can be found in Perfection, and even those are either *Pears*, *Plums* and fine *Cherry-Trees*. They have indeed new planted most of their Walls with *Peach Trees* and *Nectarines*; some Plantations are also made on the outside to break off the Winds, and for the same reason they have permitted several of their *Dwarfs* to run up for *Standards* in the great Squares, from the shelter of which they expect to succeed in retrieving the former prosperity of their Plantation.

These observations I thought fit to insert, as falling naturally in, to confirm the Rules of our present Discourse.

Some may question why we must now have these works of *Espaliers* here in *England*, more than their Forefathers had, who found it sufficient to have *Gardens* encompass'd with good Walls against which several *Fruit-Trees* were planted, which by experience they found to come to good Perfection; as for instance in the Scituations of some old Monasteries?



To this 'tis answer'd:

We know by experience, that when we have been invited to several places to give our Advice, in order to the altering, or new making of some Designs for the Ornament of Gentlemens Seats, by making regular Lines for Walls, or for *Standard Fruit Trees*, we have found some of those Scituations have been formerly noted to be places excellent for good *Fruits*, &c. for which several Reasons may be given.

First, We have observ'd that most of those places have been scituated in an excellent Soil, on the South declivity of a Hill, a fine River on the South of that, secur'd very well from *North*, *North-East*, and *North-west* Winds by high *Trees* of several kinds, and some *Trees* also on the *South East*, and *South West*; so that the whole Scituation hath been secur'd from violent Blights of the Winds.

In these old Scituations we have observed, that there had been very good *Trees* against the Walls; more particularly in one place we observ'd an old Body of a *Newington Peach*, whose Trunk was like an old decay'd *Willow*, the Wall was of Brick, and near fourteen foot high above ground, the *Tree* had spread from the *Stem* twenty Foot on each side, which was near five hundred and sixty superficial Feet; this *Tree* was planted in the Year 1633, and the old Body was taken up with a few live *Branches* in the Year 1682, which was near fifty Years old. It is very rare to find a *Tree* in any good Condition, at this time, half that Age.

We have also observ'd, that at some of those old Monasteries, and Seats so well shelter'd from the Winds, and that have been noted places for plenty of good *Fruit* and early ripe. that by erecting some new Buildings, or the decayedness of the *Trees*, that has caused them to be taken down, has soon made an alteration, insomuch that those places have had their full share of the Blights, exactly  
with



with other places, if not worse; neither did the *Fruit* after that come so early ripe as formerly, for where care hath been taken, that large Plantations should grow on the outward Bounds of the *Gardens*, the Benefit of them is very great, besides the breaking off the cold blighting Winds; for the glowing heat of the Sun, in all those places so well defended, causes both *Plants* to flourish, and *Fruit* more early to ripen.

This being so, we suppose it needless to add how highly necessary it will be to find out some better security for our *Gardens* and *Plantations*, so far as is possible: For the effecting therefore of which, we shall lay down some short Rules and Directions.

First, for securing of *Gardens* and *Plantations*.

Second, to make a defence for securing of *Orange* Trees, *Lemons*, *Myrtles*, and other tender exotick *Greens* and *Plants* in the Summer Season.

In the first place to make a general security for a whole *Garden* or *Plantation*, it will be necessary to plant *Trees* for defence thereof, some distance without the utmost Bounds or Walls, in such manner as is hereafter specified: The Lines of *Trees* for this purpose, may be planted in two or three Rows convenient that they be planted pretty thick, considering the use that they are for. And in *Plantations*, after the first Line is planted, let the second Line be planted in such order that every three *Trees* may make an *Equilateral Triangle*, that so the first Range may be closed by the second, after which a third Line may be planted which may bear the same proportion to the second, as the second does to the first; in this manner.



Three Rows of *Trees* Planted in this order, will be found to be of extraordinary use ; and if it may be done with conveniency, let these Ranges encompass the whole *Plantation* or *Gardens*. This method of planting is much better than at right Angles, for several reasons.

The distance of *Planting* them may be from eighteen or twenty Foot, to 25 Foot asunder.

These several sorts of *Trees* are fit for this use.

|       |   |             |
|-------|---|-------------|
| Elms, | { | Dutch,      |
|       |   | Witch,      |
|       |   | English.    |
|       |   | Abealls.    |
|       |   | Beach.      |
|       |   | Oak.        |
|       |   | Lyme.       |
|       |   | Siccamore.  |
|       |   | Pine.       |
|       |   | Scotch Fir. |

But of all these the three sorts of *Elms* and *Lymes*, are to be preferr'd, if to be obtain'd with conveniency ; tho' if the Rules hereafter laid down be well observ'd and put in practice, the *Firs* and *Pines* may be of great use.

What *Trees* soever are imploy'd for this use, let them be strong, and the larger the better, for hereby they will the sooner answer the design propos'd ; in transplanting of them, let them be taken out of their natural Earth or Abode with a great deal of care,  
and



and with as much of their *Root* to them as is possible, and moderately *prun'd* and well *planted*, but not too deep if the Ground incline to Moisture, for hereby many *Trees* are spoil'd; we rather advise all Persons to *plant* rather shallow than deep, and therein they can hardly err. After they are planted, let them be very well *stak'd*, that they may have strength to withstand the strong Winds, 'till they have taken *Root* sufficient to subsist of themselves; in their growing up they must be taken care of every Year, and well water'd on all Occasions.

Their Head should not be too tall at their first Planting, for when they are so, they will require abundance of trouble in *staking* of them firmly.

It will be proper for all Persons that hereafter shall make *Garden* or *Plantations*, as soon as they have measur'd and laid out the Bounds thereof, to begin to plant these Rows of *Trees* in the aforesaid method, even before they go about the making of their *Gardens*, that no time may be lost, and that they may be a serviceable Defence with as much speed as may be.

*Pines*, and all sorts of *Firs*, look very well when Planted in this manner, and are of great usefulness in breaking off Winds from the inward Plantation; they make a very fine tow'ring show in the Winter Season, when all other *Trees* and Places look rusty; likewise if they are planted on a rising Ground, so as to be seen at any great distance, they look very noble and proper for all magnificent Seats.

But to effect this, they must be procured out of some *Nursery*, their Size to be from two Foot to three or four Foot high, let them be planted in some place in the *Garden*, or some necessary place set apart for that purpose, in order to be afterwards transplanted out, where its design'd they shall stand, but first let them come to be seven, eight, or nine Foot high; after which they must be taken up with almost all their *Roots*, and as much *Earth* about them, as two,



or four Men can carry, with each *Tree* in a Hand-Barrow, this *Earth* will be a great means to fix them where they are to be planted, that they may thrive better, and more firmly withstand the violence of the Winds; and by being remov'd in this manner, they suffer very little Damage as to hind'ring their growth.

This way of Planting is of excellent use and benefit to all such Persons as intend to make large Plantations of *Firs* and *Pines* for *Avenues*, *Views*, or Walks of Shade, or the like, in Pasture Grounds, Parks, or other grasing Grounds where Cattle come, or to bound their *Garden* by planting one, two, or three Lines of these sorts of *Trees* without the Bounds of the *Garden*. But of these the Silver *Fir* is a noble *Tree* tho' the other does very well.

This method being follow'd, it may be accomplished with a great deal of ease; but if they should be planted out at two Foot and half, or three, or four Foot high, in Parks or other Places where Cattle come; its a very hard matter to secure them, or to keep the Ground loose, and in such order as the said young *Trees* require.

As for those which are planted out of the larger size, after they have stood three or four Years after planting, they will be out of the reach of Cattle from injuring their *Boughs*.

The nature of some of those *Trees* is such, that they do not shoot away free and strong 'till they come to be about three or four Foot high, after which there are few Forest *Trees* that out strip them in growth, when well manag'd.

We enlarge the more on these *Trees*, by reason of their Nobleness, there being hardly any body that has undertaken any thing of this kind, that ever repented them of their Charge and Trouble, if a right method were taken in ordering of them; they will for the before-mention'd use be the most proper and useful of any.

We



We have often observ'd about some Noblemen's Seats, what vast Charges they are sometimes at in levelling and putting their Ground in order for Views, Avenues, or some private walks of Shade, and after they have been at all this expence, perhaps the Ground is planted with *Ashs*, *Walnuts*, *Abeals*, or such like ill growing *Trees*.

Whereas if the Rules before set down had been well observ'd, then those fine growing *Trees* would perhaps have been as cheap or cheaper, since in the beauty and fineness of the *Trees*, there is no comparison to be made.

The *Greens* aforesaid do very much excel all those that shed their Leaves, by reason they continue the same all the Winter, besides they will aspire to a great height, become beautiful *Trees*, and of long duration.

It remains now to lay down some Rules and Directions for making *Espallier Hedges*, or places of defence for securing of *Oranges*, *Myrtles*, and other tender *Greens* and *Plants* from malevolent Winds in the Summer Season.

By reason of the want of a security for these tender *Greens* and *Plants* (when exposed abroad in Summer) we too often find the ill effects, and that many times they suffer more prejudice in twelve Hours time, than they can afterwards recover in two Years. And indeed hitherto there have bin but few that shelter them at all in Summer, the event whereof has been, that what Strength they get one Summer they lose the next, and hereby are deprived of the opportunity of making any strong and vigorous Progress.

But if there is occasion for the use of these *Espalliers* soon, that is the first or second Year after their being Planted, then must there be a substantial Frame of Wood made of seven, eight, or nine Foot high, the distances of the Posts asunder to be according to the length of the Rails which is commonly about eight



or nine foot long, and of an *Espalier* Frame of eight Foot high from the top surface of the Ground, in which height of eight Foot, there may be 6 Rails, each Rail being about 17 Inches asunder, and the same Distance from the Ground, as you may see here prescrib'd.

These being the form of the *Espaliers*, every one may add to the Bigness, Strength, or Beauty of it as he thinks fit.

If these *Espaliers* be us'd in a Country where Timber is plenty, and in a *Garden* or part of a *Garden* where it is not expected that the Wood work should appear fine the first and second Year, then this Frame may be made and set up of Poles cut out of the Woods, of *Ash*, or the like sort of Wood that will split, provided it be strong. The higher you plant  
your



your *Trees*, the stronger the *Posts* must be ; and care must be taken that the Frame be set upright, and straight.

But it is to be observ'd, that in all the several sizes of *Espaliers*, the *Trees* or *Plants* to be there *Planted* ought to be handsome bred *Plants*, and such as are furnisht with side *Boughs*, that they may be tyed to the Rails, in order to cause the *Espallier* to thicken the sooner ; and it is to be Noted, that where these *Espalliers* are made in the middle of a *Garden*, that *Lyme-Trees* are rather more proper for this use, than *Elms*, by reason that the *Roots* of *Elm-Trees* run over a great deal of Ground, and injure most *Trees*, or *Plants* that grow near them, which the *Lyme-Tree* does not near so much.

The several sorts of *Trees* that this *Espallier* may be made of, are these.

|       |   |                        |
|-------|---|------------------------|
| Elms, | { | Dutch,                 |
|       |   | Witch,                 |
|       |   | English.               |
|       |   | Lyme.                  |
|       |   | Horn-beam Beach.       |
|       |   | Maple.                 |
|       |   | Alder.                 |
|       |   | White thorn.           |
|       |   | Privet.                |
|       |   | Spruce Fir.            |
|       |   | Pines and Scotch Firs. |
|       |   | Laurel.                |
|       |   | Holly.                 |
|       |   | Yew.                   |
|       |   | Apple.                 |
|       |   | Pear.                  |

Any of these sorts, if ingeniously ordered and regulated, as they ought to be, will answer the end Design'd.



As to the Form thereof let it be an Oblong, or long Square, like that represented in the Margent; and in laying out of its Dimensions on the Ground, let the two longest parallel sides run North and South, or thereabout.

The largeness and extent thereof must be regulated and proportion'd, according to the number of tender *Greens* and *Plants*, which it's design'd to contain, always allowing proper distances in placing of them, and for *Allies*, that there may be conveniency of coming to Water and view them on all Occasions.

Now let it be consider'd where this *Espallier* ought to be placed, and if it may be conveniently done, let it be at no very great distance from the *Green-House*, (where they stand in Winter) for the better removing of them forward and backward: But if it cannot be so ordered without obstructing of the decent View of the *Garden* or Buildings, then place it in some other convenient part of the *Garden*.

The next thing is to begin to make this *Espallier*, in order to which, after its Dimensions are markt out, make a *Border* answerable thereto, which should be eight Foot wide, and well Trencht, two Foot and a half, or three Foot deep; if the Ground be not naturally good so deep, it must be made good, least after the *Trees* have been planted some Years, when they

30

150

25

120



they come to strike *Root* deep, they pierce down to a Poor, Cold, Barren *Earth*, and are thereby exceedingly hindred in their Progress; If the Ground be naturally good, then only dig and trench it well, without adding any compost to better it.

Thus far it's supposed, that the form of this *Espallier* is agreed upon, as also the extent and largeness, and the Borders ready made, so that all is ready for Planting such *Trees* as shall be judged most requisite for this Work.

*The several sorts of Trees that are mentioned before.*

We will begin with the *Elm*, of which there are three sorts, viz. The *Dutch*, the *Witch*, and the *English*, and are all fit for this purpose; but the *Dutch* and the *Witch*, are the greatest Growers, shoot freest, and come soonest to Perfection.

If it's design'd to make an *Espallier* to be serviceable the first or second Year, then it will be requisite in the first place to make a *Frame* of *Wood*, or *Rail*, to which the *Trees* must be fasten'd after they are planted, because they must be of a much larger size than those that are to grow up leisurely.

The *Elms* for this *Espallier*, to be serviceable the first Year, must be of two Sizes, the largest should be about eight or ten Foot high, the lesser about four or five Foot high, to be good Brushy *Trees* from Top to bottom, as near as may be; let them be *Prun'd*, but so that the side *Boughs* may remain, to be spread out and fasten'd by *Withs* to the *Frame*.

These *Trees* must be Planted in the Border in a streight line, the largest size to be at three Foot distance from each other, and between all the largest size throughout, plant one of the lesser size, by which means there will be Planted an equal number of both sizes.

Avoid



Avoid *Planting* them too deep, if the *Ground* be *Moist* indeed you can hardly err in *Planting* of them shallow.

Let the *Frame* be made strong and substantial, and of a sufficient *Heighth*, the *Posts* fixed strongly to the *Ground*; when the *Trees* are planted, and fasten'd to this *Frame*, they will grow more uniform and upright, and thick from top to bottom. They must be kept sheer'd and water'd on all *Occasions*.

But *Espalliers* are to be made without a *Frame* of *Wood* to support it, and the *Trees* at first *Planting*, to be of a much smaller size, the largest may be five or six *Foot* High, the lesser of four *Foot*, Plant the largest at three *Foot* asunder, and the lesser size between them as before, let them be Young thriving *Trees*, and the fuller of *Boughs* the better, but then the *Boughs* must be cut off within an *Inch*, two or three of the *Stem*, and as they Grow to be often sheer'd or clipt; that they may grow upright and appear uniform like a *Wall*, the *Borders* must be kept clean from *Weeds*, and carefully dugg every *Year*, but not so deep as to injure the *Roots*.

The *Lyme* or *Linden Tree*, (call it as you please) is fit for this use, chuse two sizes, let them be bushy thriving *Trees*, the largest size may be six or seven *Foot* high, the lesser three *Foot* high, to be planted in the same *Order* and distance as the *Elms* before mention'd, also to be *Prun'd* and *Sheer'd* like them, and the border slightly dugg yearly.

*Hornbeam* and *Beach*, are inferior to none for an *Espallier*, of those sorts of *Trees* that shed their *Leaves*, and for some *Reasons*, may be preferr'd, as thus,

The *Trees* grow naturally very thick, and hold their *Leaves* On the longest of any that shed them, the only *Objection* against them is, they cannot be planted so large as *Elms* or *Lymes*; but if the *Plants* be

rais'd



rais'd from *Seed*, and have been transplanted, they come freely away, and if carefully *Planted* and *Water'd*, when necessary, they will prosper well, especially when they arive to be five or six Foot high, they will shoot away strongly every Year : Chuse two sizes, the largest of four or five Foot, the small of two or three Foot, plant the largest at eighteen Inches asunder, the small between them, as before.

*Maple*, if planted of young *Sets* will make a good *Hedge*, and thickens well after *Clip- ping*. *Maple.*

*Alder*, for a wet or moist *Ground*, makes a very good *Hedge*. *Alder.*

*White thorn* and *Privet*, most People know will make very good *Hedges*, but then they will not admit of being planted so large as other *Trees* ; but being planted small *Plants*, and as they grow up to be yearly clipt on the sides, they'l grow well without any *Espalier* *Frame* to support them. But these and all those plants that are planted small are not for present service, but must have some Years time before they can be of any Use. *White-Thorn and Privet.*

We come now to speak of the *Spruce-Fir* for this Use, and indeed for such Persons as can secure their *Oranges* and other tender *Greens* for some few Years, till an *Espallier* hereof be grown up fit to receive them it will be incomparable, and make a very beautiful and noble one ; if the *Plants* are Young they will thrive very well, and may be clipt with *Sheers* every Year as they grow up ; besides, by its beautifulness in appearing *Green* all the Year, it has a great Advantage over any of the former. *Spruce Fir for Espaliers.*

The benefit and advantage of this sort of *Fir* is more than any of the rest, by reason that it will endure cutting or clipping, better than the other sorts of *Fir*,



*Fir*, and after clipping it thickens very well, and is for this use the best sort of *Ever-greens*, for these two Reasons.

*First*, It's a very speedy grower.

*Secondly*. It endures clipping well, and thickens so well after clipping.

The best way to make this *Fir Espalier* is thus, make the Borders as before mention'd of good *Earth*, the young *Firs* to be healthy, thriving *Plants*, of two Sizes, let the largest be three Foot and a half or four Foot, the smallest of two Foot; the largest size should be planted about eight Foot asunder, with the smaller size planted between them as before, they must be taken great care of for the three first Years, to water them and keep them clean from Weeds, but in clipping of them, observe, not to clip them just against Winter, for thereby it causes the *Tree* to look rusty in the depth of Winter, but if they are clipped a little after Mid-Summer, they appear of a lovely beautiful Green.

*Pine and  
Scotch Fir  
for Espaliers.*

The *Pine* and *Scotch Fir*, both these are much of a nature as to their growth, but are not so requisite for *Espaliers* as the *Spruce Fir*, because they will not endure clipping so well, nor make so regular a growth, as we find by trial of some of them in our own Plantations at *Brompton Park*. As for the size and distance of *Planting*, use the same Method as for the *Spruce-Fir*.

*Laurel for  
Espaliers.*

*Laurel* also is not unfit for this purpose, if carefully planted, and the Situation not too much expos'd to the Winds; the young *Plants* may be of two sizes, the largest about three or four foot high, to be planted at three Foot distance, and the smallest about a Foot and a half, to be planted between the largest. It's a quick Grower.

The



The *Holly* is a most excellent Tree for making *Espaliers* continues green all the Winter, will grow exceeding thick, values not the Power of the severest Storms, and may be brought into what thickness or form the Projecter pleases.

*Holly for  
Espaliers.*

The chiefest Objection against it is, that it's a slow grower, but that's only for the first, second, or third Years after 'tis planted, 'till it has taken strong Root in the Ground; but if Time and Patience be allow'd 'till it be of sufficient Height, it will make abundant Recompence. Great care must be taken to get young thriving *Plants* of two sizes, the largest of one Foot and a half high, and planted about two Foot asunder, the lesser size of nine Inches or a Foot high to be planted between the large size as before; if the young *Plants* be good and carefully tended, water'd and clipt, and the Borders slightly dug every Year, they will shoot away very fast, especially after they arrive to be four or five foot high, as for example, in the Hedges of our Plantation at *Brompton* Park, they have advanced two Foot, and two Foot and a half in one Year.

As for *Yews* to make *Espaliers*, when they are carefully planted and well ordered, and time and patience allow'd 'till an *Espalier* hereof comes to perfection, it makes a noble, firm and durable one, and for this use will excel the best *Brick Wall*, the young *Plants* may be of the same size as those of the *Holly* before mention'd, and manner of planting the same; they must be clipt every Year, and water'd on occasions, and kept clean from Weeds.

*Yew for  
Espaliers.*

*Apples* and *Pears* come now to be spoken to, and some of them are fit enough for this purpose, the sizes which they ought to be of may be thus, the largest size to be *Tall Standards*, the smaller size to be *Dwarfs*, or good

*Apples and  
Pears for  
Espaliers.*



good bushy young *Trees*; the tall ones may be planted about four or five Foot asunder; these with care and good management will grow without a Frame of Wood, but in this, as in all others, it must be granted, that they are better with a Frame of Wood than without. If a Frame be made, let the side Boughs be fastned to the Rail; let the small *Dwarf Trees* be planted between them as before.

It will be necessary in making of this *Espalier* of *Apples* and *Pears* to chuse such sorts of them as do naturally aspire and grow upright, for there are some of both sorts that are inclin'd to grow otherwise, Amongst the *Apples* the *Golden Pepin* may be chosen.

This *Espalier* may have one advantage over the former sorts, which is by its producing of *Fruit* every Year, and is likewise very useful for the bounding our *Kitchen Gardens* from the sight of Walks or *Gardens* of Pleasure. As for the proper sorts of this use, it's best to consult with some ingenious *Nursery Man*, who will make choice of such as shall be fit for this purpose.

If an *Espalier* be made of *Apples* and *Pears* without a Frame of Wood, the *Trees* must be smaller, and of such size as is directed for the *Elm*.

Perhaps it may be thought necessary to add a Word or two as to what Aspect the entrance into this *Espalier* ought to be; but herein every one may do as he shall think most proper, with reference to the place where it stands.

But some will object.

Is not a *Brick Wall* sooner made, more substantial, durable, and more effectual for this use than any of the former.

In answer to which, The principal design of these *Espaliers* is to deaden the violence of Winds, that the tender *Greens* and *Plants* which are encompassed by them may be serene and quiet; and Experience tells us, that the best *Brick* or *Stone Wall*, will not effect



fect this, for *Walls* being compact and close built, have a strong Power to repulse and beat back the Force of violent Winds, to the great detriment of whatsoever is tender that grows near them, being sometimes rent in Pieces. But the most tempestuous Winds beating against these *Espaliers*; especially if made of *Spruce-Fir*, *Holly*, or *Yew*, they gently give way to its Force, without any manner of repulse, and hereby all tender *Greens* and *Plants* encompassed by them are safe and secure.

But those that design to make an *Espalier* of any of the five sorts of *Greens* before mention'd, and cannot stay till they are grown up, but want a present security for their tender *Greens*; herein the best way will be, as we have tryed and found by Experience) to proceed thus. First lay out the Dimensions for the said *Espalier* of *Ever Greens*, make the Borders as before directed to those Dimensions, which plant at the proper Season with *Spruce-Firs*, or other foremention'd hardy *Greens*, to the outbounds of which all round, draw Parallel Lines to the several sides, 18 Foot distant from it, and here make another Border all round, and make a Frame of Wood as is before directed: After which Plant this Border with large *Elms* or *Lymes*, or any of the beforemention'd *Trees* that shed their Leaves The size and manner of *Planting* them is mention'd before more at large; tho' for this use, the larger the *Trees*, and the higher the Frame, better.

These large *Trees* will form themselves thick with their Leaves, the first and second Year, and afterwards will so continue, and are of great use till the *Espalier* of *Ever-greens* is grown up of a sufficient Heighth, to be a security of it self, after which the said *Elms* or *Lymes* may be taken up, and *Planted* elsewhere, in some place not far off, either to make a View, or some other proper place of Shade near to Houses.



And now as to what has here been humbly offer'd, it may possibly be thought to proceed from some reserve of self interest, to those of our Profession.

To this we answer.

That since the success of our *Industry* hitherto hath Establish'd us a *Reputation*, amongst so many *Noble* and *Worthy* Persons as have been pleas'd to make use of our Service, we have no cause at all to apprehend the loss of the continuance of their favour and good Opinions, or any need to seek it by mean and deceitful ways.

Those who will but consider with what Freedom and Plainness we have endeavour'd to lay down the Directions we here Recommend, will soon, and in Justice too, absolve us of any unworthy design, or other than what is for the Publick Good; since there cou'd not be indeed a readier way to ruin our Reputation, than thro' our silence to suffer Gentlemen, the noble Patrons and Encouragers of our Labourers (and who have been at so great Charge and Pains to Cultivate and Adorn their *Gardens*) to want the best Directions we can give; or a better to preserve our Credit with them, than by discovering to all the World what (not by Conjecture only, but by long Experience, and our own many Years diligent Observation,) we find the best Expedients to keep and maintain them in their Beauty.

It really grieves us more to see a *Garden* of Curious *Plants* miscarry, thro' any of those destructive Accidents we have mention'd, than any advantage which may be thought to Accrue to us, by the supplies that are daily fetch'd from our *Magazines* and *Nurseries*, to repair and furnish what is lost, can be the least satisfaction to us: It being our best and only true interest, that all we do should prosper; from such encouragement it is we are sure to Thrive with the



Favour and Good Will of those who are pleased to employ us, and make good use of these Directions with a Blessing from above. If *Planting* be undertaken in Youth, with what pleasure may a Person view the successive growths of his Industry, and in his own time behold his new *Plantation* in much Maturity, and then not only will a Reflection be grateful, but this Accommodation delightful.

To Conclude, All we have here said relating to *Espalliers*, and of their great use and Benefit, we again Recommend to such as would enjoy the most Noble and Instructive Ornament of a *Garden* in variety of *Greens*, and preserve them in a flourishing Condition. How contrary it is to our Inclination that any should Miscarry, we hope we have ingenuously declared, in our giving the plainest Direction for their Preservation, grounded on long Experience, which we as freely Communicate, as we shall farther do, if this meets with Reception and Encouragement.

---







---

O F

# FRUIT-GARDENS,

## A N D

# Kitchen-Gardens.

---

### C H A P. I, and II.

*That a Gard'ner ought to be well skill'd in the  
Culture of Fruit and Kitchen-Gardens.*

**A**S Gardens seem to be in a perpetual motion, always acting either for good or ill, according to the good or ill Conduct of their Master; so they seldom fail, either to recompence the Diligent and Ingenious, or severely to punish the Lazy and Unskillful. There is daily some new thing to be done, as to Sow, Plant, Prune, Pallisade; to see Plants grow, Legumes Imbelish, Trees Blossom, Fruit Knitting, then Thickning, Colouring, Ripening, and at last to gather them; and yet this so necessary a Skill is not so extremely difficult, as 'tis generally thought to be. For having had the Honour of being near Thirty two Years Director of all the Fruit and Kitchen-Gardens of the Royal Family, I do affirm, for the satisfaction of the Ingenious, that 'tis very easie to attain to as much Knowledge



as is reasonably necessary for the Curious, either to avoid what might perplex them, or at least put them in a Condition of enjoying their wishes; provided due attention be given to the following Rules.

The First relates to the Quality of the Ground, its necessary depths, Tillage, and Amendments, and the ordinary Modeling of useful Gardens.

The Second concerns the Choice of Trees well qualified, either in or out of the Nurseries; the Names of the principal Kinds of Fruits of every Season, to be able to distinguish them, and what number of each the compass of his Garden may require. To know how to prepare the Heads and Roots of Trees before they be put into the ground again, to place them at a convenient distance, and in a good exposure, and then to know (if not all) yet at least the Principal Rules of Pruning, either as to Dwarfs, or Wall-Trees. How to pinch off some Branches that are over vigorous, to Pallisade such as require it, to trim such useless Budds and Sprigs as cause confusion; and lastly, to give every one the Beauty they are capable of.

The Third relates to the making of Fruit grow Large, and Beautiful; to gather them prudently, and eat them seasonably.

The Fourth relates to Grafts on all sorts of Fruit-Trees, whether in Gardens, or Nurseries, both as to time, and manner of applying them.

The Fifth relates to the general Conduct of Kitchen-Gardens, especially to understand the pleasure and profit they may yield, in every Month of the Year.

These Articles not being many, the Curious may in a little time be fully instructed by the following Abridgment.



## C H A P. III.

*An Abridgment of the Maxims of Gard'ning:*

## First ARTICLE.

*The Qualification of the Earth or Soil.*

THE Soil of a Garden is known to be good for Fruit-Trees.

1. When all which the ground produceth of it self, or by Tillage, is Beautiful, Vigorous, and Abundant; nothing poor or small, which should be strong; or yellow, which should be green.

2. When in smelling to a handful of Earth, it gives no ill scent.

3. When 'tis easie to Till, not over strong, or stiff.

4. When you handle it, 'tis mellow, without being too dry and light like Turf Earth, or like ground altogether Sandy.

5. When 'tis not over-moist, like Marshy ground; or too hard, like Loomy ground, which is often at the bottom of good Meadows, coming near to the nature of stiff Clay.

6. Lastly, as to the Colour, it must be chiefly of a blackish gray, and yet there's some redish that does very well; I never saw any both very white and good.

## Second ARTICLE.

*Of the Depth of the Ground.*

IF the top appears good, you must have three foot deep of the same Earth, which is very material,



and of which you ought to be pretty well assured, by sounding the ground in five or six places; 'tis a great Error to be satisfied with less depth for Trees.

### Third ARTICLE.

#### *Of Tillages.*

'Tillage the finer made, the better for Trees; there must be at least four yearly, viz.

'At the Spring, digging or stirring with Forks;  
'At Midsummer by cleansing and stirring the surface of the ground.

'At the end of *August*, the same as at *Midsummer*, and just before *Winter*, by well digging, and cleansing the ground from Weeds.

'Besides these stirrings, or diggings, its suppos'd that the ground be clear'd from Weeds, as often as need requires. It must never be unmanur'd, nor trampled, nor beaten.

'Small Plants, as Strawberries, Lettice, Succory, &c. must be often Weeded.

### Fourth ARTICLE.

#### *Directions for Amendments.*

'ALL sorts of Rotten Dung are excellent for grounds us'd for Kitchen-Garden-Plants, Sheeps Dung when rotten, is good for most sorts of tender Plants.

'But it and most sorts of Dung are of the greatest use to all Plantations of Fruit-Trees, and a general amendment, if thus apply'd, viz. That is, on fenc'd Borders, against Walls, in Dwarf-Plantations, or in Nurseries, and such like, which requires amendment, the ground to be dugg, or loosened with Forks in *August*, *September*, or *October*, according

'ing



ing as a moist Season shall offer it self; after which, lay on the several sorts of Dung, Sand, Chalk, Sea-Coal Ashes, &c. as shall be most proper for the nature of the Soil. These Dungs being thus laid on, and spread abroad, the Winter Rains and Frosts will wash it into the ground, to nourish most part of the Roots, and render the Earth healthy; and all Trees or Plants growing thereon, will receive the full benefit thereof. And we are most certain that by this sort of Improvement, one Load will do more good, than two Load us'd the common way of laying it on the ground, and Digging and Trenching of it in a foot or more under ground. There is near *London*, a sort of Street-Soil, so call'd, because it's the cleansing of the Streets, wherein there is a great deal of Sea-Coal-Ashes; this sort of Soil is of very great use, with a little rotten Horse-Dung, or Neats Dung mixt, and laid on Land as aforesaid, especially for all stiff and wet Land, it makes great improvement, for it contains a great quantity of Salt in it, by which it much enricheth the Soil, and hollows all stiff and wet Land, whereby the Water passeth thro' the freer.

## Fifth ARTICLE.

THE best and most convenient disposition of Fruit and Kitchen-Gardens, is in well regulated Squares, so that if possible, the length may exceed the breadth. The breadth of the Walks must be proportioned to the length and extent of the Garden, the narrowest not less than six or seven foot, the rest in Squares, not to exceed fifteen or twenty Fathom, or thirty or forty yards on one side, to a little more or less on the other; they will be very well often or twelve Fathoms on one side, to fourteen or fifteen on the other; common Paths for service, ought to



be about two Foot. No Kitchen-Garden can succeed without a Conveniency of watering.

#### Sixth ARTICLE.

**T**rees fit for Planting must have a clean shining *Bark*. Shoots long and vigorous; sound *Roots*, and proportionate to the *Stem*, not too hairy, streight, and of one *Stem*.

#### Seventh ARTICLE.

**T**O prepare a Tree for Planting, take off all the hairy *Roots*, if they be dry, or dead, if not, leave some; preserve a few thick ones, but chiefly the youngest and best, which have a more redish and lively colour than the old ones, and must be Prun'd reasonably short, only the bruis'd ends cut off on the lower side, according to their thicknes. In *Dwarfs* let the longest be not above eight or nine Inches, in high *Standards* about a foot. If *Roots* be not bruis'd in taking up, it's better to leave them longer; more may be allow'd to *Mulberries* and *Cherry-Trees*; weak *Trees*, according to their thickness, may have three or four Inches. 'If there be five or six *Roots* spreading equally about the foot, and well plac'd, tis enough.

#### Eighth ARTICLE.

**I**N order to plant well, you should chuse dry weather, to the end that the *Earth*, being dry, may easily fill up between the *Roots*.

The time to Plant *Fruit-Trees*, and all other *Trees* that lose their *Leaves*, which are equally hardy, is from



from the end of *September*, to the beginning of *March*, and sometimes both sooner and later. 'In wet ground, the Spring is better than *September*, or *October*.

'Let not the end of the Root be above a foot in the ground, cover the upper part of the Root with about eight Inches of Mould, then apply half rotten Dung thereon, laying on that a small quantity of Earth, after which, apply Fern, Litter, or Straw thereon, which will keep the Roots warm in Winter, and moist in Summer. After the two Roots are Prun'd, cut the Stem to its designed length, before you Plant it.

The proportion of the heighth of the Body of the Dwarf may be from 8 to 18 Inches.

High Standards about 6 or 7 foot, in all Soils; let none of the Roots incline straight downwards, but, if possible, spreading on each side.

Trampling or treading spoils small Trees, but is necessary to great ones, to secure them against the Winds.

Set not too deep in any ground, especially in wet ground, the shallower the better, and raise little Hills above the Roots, as before directed.

Wall-Trees must be distanc'd by the goodness of the Earth, and height of the Wall. If the Walls are 12 foot high, let one Tree shoot up to garnish the top, between two to garnish the bottom, planting them within 5 or 6 foot of each other. But for Walls of 6 or 7 foot high, the Trees may be Planted at about 9 foot distance.

#### Ninth ARTICLE.

**T**HIS relating all to Pruning, is referr'd to the Fourth Part, which Treats largely on that Subject.



## Tenth ARTICLE.

**A**S to *Espalliers* or Wall-Fruits, the Branches ought to be Pallisado'd or spread about *May*, by an orderly disposing of the Branches to the right and left, which incline to each side to avoid confusion, as also in respect of Barrenness, and to avoid crossing one another. But Barrenness being the greatest defect, Crossing must not be scrupled, when Barrenness cannot otherwise be avoided,

Preserve all the fine Branches which Peach-Trees shoot out, unless they prove so numerous as to cause confusion. However, if necessity require, cut close some of the most unruly Branches; likewise take away the Branches of false Wood, which sometimes grow in the front of Pear Wall Trees, as well as those growing in the middle of Dwarfs, which is call'd the Trimming of Budds, or useless Branches.

## Eleventh ARTICLE.

**T**HIS relates to the gathering, laying up, and ordering in the Store-house, such Fruit as do not ripen upon the Tree; for which I refer you to the Treatises upon this Subject, which are the 7th, 8th, and 9th Chapters of the 5th Book.

## Twelfth ARTICLE.

**T**HIS Article being only of Grafts, and Nurseries, the Reader is referr'd to the 11th Chapter of the 5th Book, where the Author Discourses at large on these Subjects.

Thirteenth



## Thirteenth ARTICLE.

**T**HIS relates to Kitchen-Gardens, and the works of every Season, which is also referr'd to the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>d</sup>, and 3<sup>d</sup> Chapters of the 6<sup>th</sup> Part where the Reader will find several useful *Calendars*, and *Alphabets* of works to be done, relating to the Provisions for, and Products of every Month in the Year.

---

## C H A P. IV.

**O**F this the Author makes no other use, than to write a tedious enumeration of the several Qualifications requisite to a good Gard'ner; all which may be summ'd up into the following short Character, *Viz.*

He should be neither too Old, nor too Young, Vigorous and Active, of good Capacity and Experience, of known Diligence and Honesty, of good Nature and Affability; and no doubt but these Qualifications will recommend him to any Person of Quality.

*The End of the Abstract of the First Part.*

---



---

O F

# FRUIT-GARDENS,

A N D

## Kitchen-Gardens.

---

### VOL. I. PART. II.

---

- I** Shall here Treat of Four Things.
1. Of the Conditions necessary to a good Fruit and Kitchen-Garden.
  2. Of Earth in General.
  3. How to Correct the Defects in Gardens ready made.
  4. Of Cultivating Gardens, with an account of the Soil proper for each sort of Fruit.
- 

### C H A P. I.

#### *Of the Conditions necessary to a good Garden.*

1. **T**HE Ground must be good, whatever the Colour be.
2. The Situation must be favourable.
3. A good Convenience for Water.
4. The Ground to be upon a small Rising.
5. Of



5. Of an agreeable Figure, and good entrance.
6. Enclos'd with reasonable high Walls.
7. The access to be easie and convenient.

Let us now try whether these Articles, and the execution of them, be grounded upon sufficient Reason.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of Earth in General.*

**T**O contract our Author's many distinctions of Sands and Earth, we shall reduce them to Five General Heads.

Those that are moderately fat, unctuous, and sticking together, make strong Earth.

Others more inclining to it are Loomy Earth, such as are extreme unctous make Clayey and heavy Earth, unfit for Culture.

Of these some are black, red, white, and grey, but Colour is not very essential to the goodness of Soil, as we shall prove hereafter.

The fourth is of the several sorts of light and Sandy, which are of a hollow nature, and very proper towards the meliorating and manuring the heavy Earth before mention'd.

The First is of a Sandy, Limy nature, in which generally speaking most Trees thrive best; and if it has a small mixture of Stones in it, we find no injury in that, but rather a benefit to the Roots of the Trees therein Planted.

The large Cherry-Trees of the Vale of Mount Morancy, and the fine Plumb-Trees of the Hills of Moudon, inform what Soil is proper for Cherries, and what for Plumbs. Sometimes in a small compass of ground there are veins of Earth extremely different; for Wheat grows well in many places, though  
close



close by perhaps the ground is fit only for Rye, and so likewise for Grapes, and other Fruits. And many things succeed well in *England*, which will not thrive in *France*: And so on the Contrary.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the necessary Conditions requisite to a good Earth.*

1. **I**Ts production must be vigorous, and numerous
2. It must easily recover it self, when worn out.
3. It must have no ill taste, or scent in it.
4. It must be at least 3 foot in depth.
5. Free from great stones, and easie to Till.
6. Neither too moist nor too dry.

Which Maxims I explain in the following Sections

*Viz.*

*First,* The First proof of a good Earth is, when of it self it produceth Trees having vigorous and numerous Branches, where the Plants grow with large thick Leaves, and the Trees grow up in few years.

*Secondly.* The second proof of good Earth is, that it easily repairs what injuries it shall receive by great Droughts, great Moisture, or long Nourishment of Foreign Plants, tho' much depends upon the situation. Therefore take it as a Maxim, that no Earth can be said to be good, which shews not its Fertility by its Productions, and is likewise able to recover it self when brought low. These are the Earths for Fruit-Gardens. As for Kitchen-Gardens, I do grant, that having a full supply of Dung, and Water, the Industrious Gard'ner may do Miracles.

*Thirdly.* The goodness of the Earth does also consist in having neither smell, nor taste; since all our Fruits and Legumes will infallibly be tainted with whatever



whatever is ill or unfavoury in that kind; a convincing proof of which, are those Wines that taste of the Soil.

The taste and smell may be tried by smelling to a handful of it, or soaking it in Water, and straining it thro' a Linen Cloth.

*Legumes* require not so much nicety, because the boiling throws off what might be unpleasing to the taste.

*Fourthly*, A farther enquiry into good Earth, is to sound the depth of the ground, to try if it be at least 3 foot of as good Mold at the top is; and if (with long use) this Earth become almost worn out, you may recover it, by throwing what lay at the bottom up to the top.

Without this choice of sufficient depth of Earth, your Trees and *Legumes* will grow yellow and sick, many of them perish, and after five or six years patience, when you expect the benefit, you'll be oblig'd to be at the expence of a new Plantation.

*Fifthly*, A good Earth, without being too light, ought to be easie to Cultivate, pretty free from great Stones; if there's but a few, they do little or no harm.

Light Moulds do very much multiply the Roots of Plants, by drinking in the Rains, and Watering, and makes easie passage for the Roots to run in; they are also easily impregnated and kept warm by the Sun, and consequently quick in production.

Earth which is too strong and cuts like Loomy or stiff ground, is apt to close and grow hard, to such a degree, that Rains or Watering will scarce soak into them; such Earth is naturally inclin'd to rottenness, is cold and backwards in productions, keeps a continual moisture at bottom, apt to split and crack in great heats, insomuch that they are incapable of Culture, prejudicial to Trees and Plants that have newly taken Root, by uncovering some, and breaking others.

but



‘ But all such Grounds as are so stiff, are pernicious  
 ‘ to Trees, without care be taken, which in all Plant-  
 ‘ ing ought to be very high ( nay rather ) on the top of  
 ‘ the Ground, than in it, raising a sufficient quantity  
 ‘ of good Earth to the Roots of each Tree, so that  
 ‘ when the Roots of the Trees shoot, they have the  
 ‘ benefit of the best Earth that lies on the top of the  
 ‘ Ground, and are not confin’d in the wet Earth  
 ‘ which the nature of the ground produces, as they  
 ‘ would be when planted low in all those sorts of  
 ‘ Grounds. But there is an excellent Method for Ma-  
 ‘ nuring and Meliorating of such Grounds, by digging  
 ‘ it up in the Winter, and laying on a Coat of a cer-  
 ‘ tain sort of Dung call’d *Street-Soil* ; as is explain’d  
 ‘ more at large in 5th Page of the First Part.

We come now to the Cure of the defects of an Earth too light and dry.

The First Expedient is to remove as much of that Sandy Earth as will amount to 3 foot deep, and afterwards fill that up with as good Earth as you can get, of a stiffer nature, with a good mixture of Cow-Dung.

‘ As for the removing of such dry Earth as the Au-  
 ‘ thor describes, undoubtedly the Directions may be  
 ‘ good for a Prince’s Pocket ; but this being design’d  
 ‘ for the publick good, and for the use of all honest  
 ‘ Country Gentlemen, it may be accomplish’d without  
 ‘ that Charge ; viz. In bringing in a certain quan-  
 ‘ tity of more solid Earth mixt with Cow-dung, to  
 ‘ mix with the other Earth, which will conduce much  
 ‘ to the improvement of it.

The Second is to keep the Cultivated Places some-what lower than the Walks, that the Water which falls upon them, may run into that Ground.

Or, Thirdly, throw into those Cultivated Places all the Snow which shall happen to lie upon the Walks, and other parts near at hand, during the Winter.

These



These Experiments we have persuaded our Friends to practise, with great success.

Sometimes there lies water about three foot underground, as it commonly happens at the bottoms of Vales, or where there lies a good black Sand; this water is naturally rais'd to the top, always keeping the Earth in good temper for production. Whereas on the contrary, water lying within a foot, or somewhat more, being there stopt by Chalk, Stone, or stiff Clay; if some way be not found to discharge this water, the Soil will grow cold, rotten, and stark nought.

In Cold Countries light Earth is to be preferr'd, because 'tis made warm by a small Heat; but on the contrary in Hot Countries, a strong fat Soil is best, the heat not so easily penetrating, or drying up the Plants

Therefore happy are they who pitch upon a fertile Soil, without taste, sufficiently deep, moderately light, pretty free from stones, neither too strong and moist, nor too light and dry.

#### CHAP. IV.

*Of other Terms us'd in discoursing of Earth.*

*Of worn-out Earth.*

**T**He most Fruitful Earth will in time be worn out by the multitude of its productions; I mean such as are forced upon it: but where it bears what is only natural and voluntary, as the ground of a good Meadow, it suffers no detriment; but when you go about to force it to produce *Saint-Foin*, Wheat, or any Grain that is a stranger to it, you'll soon find it to slacken and abate of its Crop, and in the end grow poor, and want help to put it into heart again.

All



All Earth according to the different quantities and kinds of Salt wherewith it abounds, shoots forth several different kinds of Plants, sometimes altogether and at the same time: witness the ground of good Meadows. The like may be said of Grounds long us'd for Vineyards, Woods, Forests, Orchards, &c. which when destroy'd, we cannot expect that they should succeed again with the same Plants, because its too much wasted. But it may do well for smaller Plants, as Pot-Herbs, Pease, Beans, &c. In this the Gard'ner must shew his skill, in knowing what Plants should succeed each other. But if he should be oblig'd to Plant new Trees, in the room of others that are dead, then there is some work to be done; of which hereafter. The manner of imploying Earth you will find more at large in the Treatise of Kitchen-Gardens.

#### *Of Fallow-Earth.*

Fallow, or Earth that lies at rest, is such as is left unemploy'd, in order to recover and re-establish its former fruitfulness; whether by the Influence of the Stars, or Rains, I determine not; but 'tis plain that good Earth having been much impair'd, if laid Fallow, and a little Dung laid thereon, or Straw burnt upon it, will easily recover its natural Fertility.

#### *Of Transported Earth.*

This Expedient of Transporting Earth is seldom us'd, unless when a Garden is to be made in a place where there is none that is good, such Earth does really improve by thus removing of it, and is evident; which proceeds either from the Air, or else by making of it looser, and more penetrable to the Roots.



*Of New Earth.*

New *Earth* is such as never serv'd to the Nourishment of any *Plant*, viz. such as lies Three Foot deep, or as far as you can go, if it be really *Earth*; or else *Earth* that has been a long time built upon, tho' formerly it did bear *Plants*, both which sorts are extremely good both for *Plants*, and *Trees*. Or likewise *Earth* out of some Rich Pasture Ground, of a Sandy *Loamy Nature*, where *Cattle* have been long a time fed, is of excellent use for most sorts of *Plants*, especially if it has been thrown up in heaps to meliorate, and have taken the Winter Frosts, it will be so much the better.

*Of the Colour of Good Earth.*

There is good and bad of almost all Colours, but 'tis the *blackish gray* that pleaseth most, and has had the approbation of former Ages. I have often met with reddish and whitish *Earths* that have been incomparable, but seldom any quite white that deserv'd that Character. There is some that is black on the top of Hills, and also in Vales, which is only a dead *Earth*; the most certain Argument of it's goodness, is the Strength, Vigour, Beauty, and largeness of the *Plants* and *Herbs* that it produceth.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Situation of Gardens.*

AS to a *Kitchen-Garden*, little Vallies or low Grounds are to be preferred to all other Situations, and have commonly all the advantages that can well be desir'd, the *Mold* easie and of sufficient  
C depth,



depth, 'tis fatten'd by the Neighbouring Hills: *Legumes* grow here: Easie and plenty Waterings are at hand. But then they are liable to Inundations; by which *Asparagus*, *Artichocks*, *Strawberries*, &c. are utterly destroy'd, when they come to be long overflow'd.

As for *Fruit-Gardens*, certainly Ground Moderately dry, and indifferent high are the best, provided it be good in it self, and deep enough.

If Choice *Fruits* grow not so large on such Grounds, yet it is recompens'd in the beauty of the Colour, goodness of Taste, and Forwardness. How delicious are the Winter *Thorns*, *Bergamots*, *Lansac*, *Petit-Oins*, *Louis Bonnes*, &c. growing upon an elevated Ground, compar'd to those in a Meadow-ground, which shews the importance of the Situation of *Fruit-Gardens*. But for *Fruits* and *Legumes*, nothing is beter than a rising Ground, if good in it self, the Waters above constantly washing, but not staying upon it, affords it a proper temper, the Sun performing its part, and freeing it from the danger of cold, which Marshy Grounds are always subject to.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Exposure of Gardens, and what may be good or ill in either of them.*

There are Four sorts of Expositions, *East*, *West*, *South*, and *North*. These Terms among *Gardeners*, signifie the contrary to what they do with *Geographers*: For the *Gard'ner* only intends those Parts or Walls of the Garden upon which the Sun directly shines, and in what manner it shines the whole Day; either as to the whole, or as to some sides of it. As for instance,

If



If the Sun at his Rising, and all the first half of the Day, continues to shine upon one side, that is the *East* side; that upon which the Sun shines the latter half part of the Day is the *West*; that part where it shines longest in the whole Day is the *South*; and that side on which it shines least, is the *North*. 'Tis true, that whatever Situation a Garden is in, it must have all the Aspects of the Sun, except such as lie against Hills, or the sides of Mountains; some have the rising, others the setting Sun: But for such as are situated upon open Plains, the difference of the Exposure is not so sensible.

If your Garden be of strong *Earth*, and consequently Cold, the *South* Exposure is best.

If it be Light, and Hot, then the *East* is to be prefer'd: A *Southern* Exposition is often subject to great Winds, from the middle of *August*, to the middle of *October*; for which the *Stalk*; as the *Virgoules*, *Vert Longues*, *St. Germines*, &c. suffer much; others do better resist the Winds, as the *Thorny-Pears*, *Ambretts*, *La Chasseries*, *Dry-Martins*, &c.

"Note. That where the Author speaks of the *Vir-*  
 "goules, *Vert-Longues*, *St. Germines*, &c. Planted  
 "Standards, it's to be understood in reference to  
 "France; for here in *England* they require a good  
 "South Wall; for if they are planted either Stan-  
 "dards or *Dwarfs*, it's very rare that they suc-  
 "ceed.

The *Eastern* Exposure is subject to *North East* Winds, which withers the Leaves and new Shoots, especially of *Peach-Trees*, blowing down much Kernel, and Stone-fruit; moreover the *Eastern* Wall-trees have little benefit of the Rains, which seldom come but from the *West*.

The *Western* Exposure dreads the *North West* Winds in the Spring, and the Autumn Winds, those throwers down of Fruits.



“As for the Northern Aspect here in England, we find it most proper for Baking Fruits, especially Pears; also some sorts of Plumbs, and Morella Cherries may be planted there, to succeed the Cherries planted in other Exposures.

In short, all Expositions have their perfections, and imperfections; we must take our best advantage of the first, and use our best skill to defend ourselves against the last.

## CHAP. VII,

### *Of the Conveniencies of Waterings for Gardens.*

THE Spring and Summer are subject to great Heats, and Scorchings; for which reason, the Legumes or Plants of that Season, acquire the largeness, thickness, sweetness, and delicacy which they ought to have; but will be always bitter, hard, and insipid, unless helpt by long Rains, which are very uncertain; or else plentiful Waterings, which we ought to have at command: And therefore tho' small Plants, as Strawberries, Greens, Pease, Beans, Sallads, &c. may be supplied by Rain, yet Artichoaks of a year or two's growth must have a Pitcher two or three times a week to every Roor, else Gnats will annoy them; the Heads will be small, hard, and dry, and the Suckers will only produce leaves.

During Seven or Eight Months, there is generally a necessity of watering all that grow in Kitchen-Gardens, except *Asparagus*. But *April* and *May* being the two Months for blasting, and drought, there is often a necessity of watering every new planted Tree, nay sometimes those that have store of green Fruit, especially if the Earth be dry and light, may be watered till *August*, lest the Fruit prove small, stony, and not palatable.

The



The most common, but worst of Waterings is that of Wells; 'tis true, they are necessary, where no better can be had; but Rain-water, or Rivers, or a Canal, or Pond well stored with Pipes, to distribute water into the several parts of a Garden, are the Soul of Vegetation,

---

## CHAP. VIII, and IX,

*That the Garden ought to be partly upon a Level, Of a Pleasant Figure, and well plac'd Entrance.*

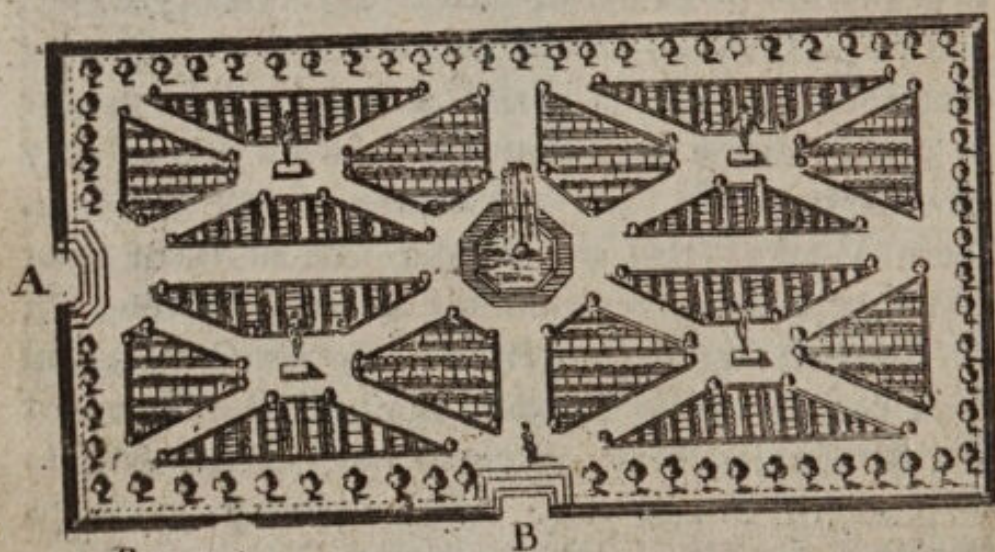
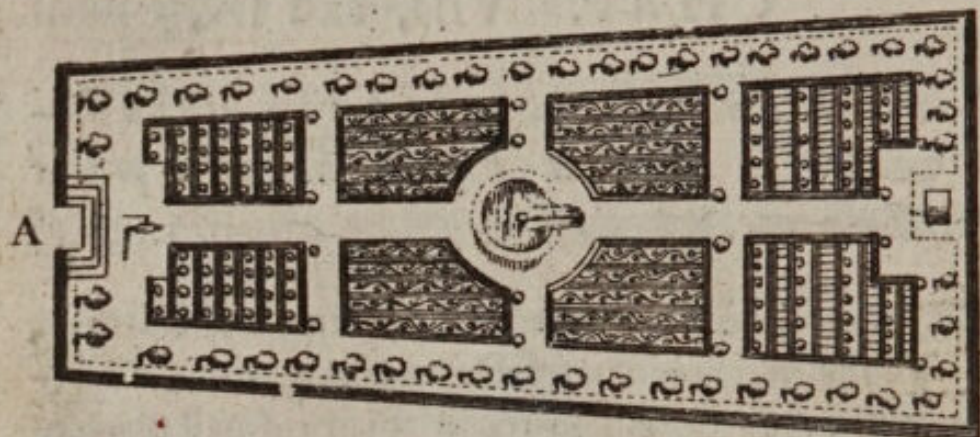
**G**REAT inequalities are troublesome to Gardens, the overflowings of Rains causing great disorders, and much trouble to repair them; small unevennesses do no great harm, rather good in a dry *Earth*; and yet in Gardens too much inclining to drought, or that lie high, and of a perfect Level, 'twill be proper to allow them a little inequality, such a one as may be unperceivable, and yet continue in all the Southern Walks, that the Water that in them is of no use, may fall to replenish the *Roots* of the *Trees*, &c.

The best Figure for a *Fruit* or *Kitchen Garden*, and most convenient for Culture, is a beautiful Square of straight Angles, being once and a half, if not twice so long as 'tis broad, viz. From Forty yards, to Twenty, or Twenty Four; from Eighty yards, to Thirty Six, or Forty; from one Hundred and Sixty yards, to Eighty, one Hundred, or one Hundred and Twenty; for from Squares it's most easie to raise uniform Beds of *Strawberries*, *Artechoaks*, *Asparagus*, &c. or of *Chervil*, *Parsly*, &c. which cannot well be done in an irregular Figure.

If the *Kitchen Garden* be large, the Entrance should be just in the middle of that part which has



the most extent, as appears by the Figure at the point *A*, in order to face an Alley, which being of the whole length of the Garden, will appear stately, by dividing of the whole length of the Ground into two equal parts, each of these composing Squares or Plots too long in proportion to their breadth, must be subdivided into smaller parts.



*Pag. 34*

The Entrance would not appear so well in one of the broad sides, as Letter *B*.

When under a necessity, I have made fine Gardens, which have had their Entrance at one of the Corners; such is the Kitchen Garden at *Rambouillet*, and yet no body finds fault, because the Entrance faces a fine Alley, bordered all along with *Espaliers*, or Walls full of Fruit. And



And tho' this Figure be not the most perfect, yet I have made a fine *Kitchen-Garden* of 220 yards in length, and 120 broad, resembling the Figure of a Lozenge; and tho' the Entrance has been made in the middle of the narrowest side *A*, yet 'tis not easie to distinguish so small an irregularity; for tho' the Angles are not equal, it nevertheless hinders the Plats from seeming perfect in their proportion.

---

## CHAP. X, and XI.

*A Garden must be well inclos'd with Walls, and not far distant from the House.*

**A** Wall well garnished, *Dwarfs* well ordered, and vigorous; all sorts of good *Fruits* of every Season, fine *Beds* and Plats furnished with all sorts of *Legumes*, clean Walks of proportionable largeness, neat *Borders* well fill'd with useful things, a well-contriv'd variety of what is necessary in a *Kitchen Garden* for all Seasons) these are the things that we ought to have in our Gardens, and setting aside all manner of Prospects, a Garden ought to be inclosed with *Walls*; for besides the shelter they afford against trouble some Winds, and Spring Frosts, it is impossible to have early *Legumes*, and fine *Fruits* without the help of them; besides many things that would scarce be able to grow in the hottest part of Summer, are affected by the favour of a Wall.

In short, *Walls* are so necessary, that to multiply them, I make as many little *Gardens* near the great one as I can, whereby I have more Wall-Fruit, and better shelter.

Those Persons who have several Gardens, 'tis necessary that those for *Flowers* and *Shrubs*, we mean the *Parterr's* should face the principal aspect of the House for nothing can be more Charming, than to see at all,



times on that side an agreeable variety of a succession of *Flowers*; therefore without prejudicing the *Parterre*, we place our Garden in the best ground we can find near the House, of a convenient access.

Such as can have but one *Garden*, it will be far better to employ it in *Fruits* and *Legumes*, than in *Box* and *Grass-plats*; in such a case, if the *Garden* be indifferent large, 'twill be convenient to take the nearest part of it for a *Parterre*, leaving the rest for things of use and necessity.

If the place be not large, then make no *Parterre*, but resolve to employ it in *Plants* for use, placing the most pleasant part of the *Kitchen Garden* most in sight of the House. A fine well plac'd *Arbor* for shelter in case of a storm, or to view the Culture of the Ground, will not do amiss.

## CHAP. XII.

*How to Correct defective Ground, either as to quality, or want of quantity.*

THE defects of *Earth* may be reduced to Five Particulars.

1. Bad *Earth*.
2. Indifferent.
3. Indifferent good, but not enough of it.
4. To have no *Earth* at all.

5. Tho' the *Earth* be never so good, yet the great moisture to which it may be subject, may make it incapable of improvement by Culture.

1. If the *Earth* be defective, for that it stinks, or is meer dead, watery Loom, or else stony, gravelly, or full of Pebles, or only dry Sand. In this Case it must be taken away to the depth of Three foot in the principal places of the *Garden*, viz. for *Trees*, and long rooted *Plants*, and Two Foot for lesser *Plants*,  
filling



filling it up with the best *Mould* you can get; and if this be intended for the *Garden* next the *House*, it ought to lie *Two* or three *Foot* lower than the *House*, from whence there ought to be a *Balluster*, with some steps to come down into this *Garden*, which is a great Ornament.

‘ But as to what has been said heretofore, as relating  
‘ to a Prince’s Pocket, this may do very well, but the  
‘ Charges being so great, it will be best to use the  
‘ aforesaid Directions, in bringing in a certain quantity  
‘ of *Dung* and *Earth* of a more agreeable temper, to  
‘ intermix therewith.

As to the Second Case, in which the *Ground* having a sufficient depth, yet the *Earth* is nevertheless but indifferent, either too dry and light, or too tough and moist, or else too much worn out; in this case, care must be taken to mend it by mixing new *Earth* with it, with this caution, that you mix loomy *Earth* with what is too light, and sandy mould, with that which is too tough, and that which is really good, with that which is worn out, unless you intend it should recover it self by rest.

‘ And as for improving of it by *Dung*, observe  
‘ that all moist *Dung*, such as *Cow-Dung*, is proper  
‘ to be mixt with light *Earth*, and *Dung* of a light  
‘ nature to be mixt with heavy *Clay*, or Cold loomy  
‘ *Earth*.

3. If it be really good, but not enough of it to make *Three Foot* deep, you must consider whether the top of the *Earth* be of sufficient height; if it be, then all that is naught must be removed, and good added, to make up the depth requir’d.

If the waters are naturally in the *Earth*, they must either be turn’d aside at a distance, by *Gutters*, or *Drains*; or else you must raise the whole *Plats*, or only the great *Beds* upon ridges, making deep *Furrows* to serve for *Paths*.



If these moistures are only occasion'd by great Rains, you must use the same Remedy, by raising the *Earth*, and making Gutters or Drains to carry it off.

---

### CHAP. XIII.

**T**His Chapter treats of the Sloping, Raisings and fallings in a Garden, and is judg'd to be of no use, by reason of the infinite varieties which are to be found in Grounds, and for which no certain Directions can be laid down.

---

### CHAP. XIV, XV, XVI, and XVII.

*Of the Distribution of the Ground of a Fruit and Kitchen-Garden.*

**A** Good Kitchen Garden ought to be plentiful in its productions, agreeable to the Eye, and convenient for Walks and Culture. To which purpose, it should be employ'd with all the good order and prudence that may be, with *Plants* and *Seeds* suited to the several parts of it: It must be distributed into convenient *Squares* or *Plats*, with Walks very neat, well placed, and of suitable size, which must never be narrower than five or six Foot, be the Garden never so small; and ought not to exceed Eighteen or Twenty be the *Kitchen Garden* never so large.

In a small Garden, the Entrance ought to be in the midst of that breadth, with only one Walk of about Six Foot.

“The Author enlargeth farther, about the difference of Walks, which is judged needless; as also what he adds farther in this Chapter, relating to *Espalliers*, which is nothing advantageous to the  
“Reader



“Reader, and not fit to be put in practice in *Eng-land*, according to the method us'd in *France*, where *Espalliers* are more frequent than Walls.

For a Garden of Twenty or Twenty Four yards, whether the Entrance be at the middle or on one side; in both Cases the works ought to be seven Foot broad, nay Eight or Nine, in that which is parallel to the Front of the House.

## CHAP. XVIII, and XIX

“THESE Chapters Treats of Gardens of various Sizes, from Thirty to Forty Yards; from Fifty to Sixty, and so on, proceeding to Gardens of an extraordinary size, but the Directions are judg'd to be of very little or no use.

## CHAP. XX, and XXI.

*Of the manner of Cultivating Fruit-Gardens and of Tillage.*

IF we would have our Trees particularly our *Dwarfs* and tall *Standards*, well fed, very vigorous, and agreeable to sight, we must take Care.

1. That they be not too near one another.
2. That no sorts of *Plants* be near them, which may inwardly steal their nourishment, or outwardly hinder the refreshings and helps they are to receive by Rain, or Dew.

Take care to keep the *Earth* always light and clean, and therefore often Cultivated, that the *Earth* may be nourished both by the Rains, Sun, and *Dews*, To which end, we must be careful to till, amend, and cleanse the Ground, as often as it requires.



*What Tillage is.*

*Tillage* is a moving or stirring, which being perform'd on the top of the Ground, enters to a certain depth, and makes the lower and upper parts change place.

*Earth* that is hot and dry, must be *Till'd* in Summer time, either a little before, or whilst it Rains, or soon after, or when there is likelihood of more; at which time, you can neither *Till* too often, nor too deep; but (by the Rule of Contraries) they must seldom be *Till'd* in very hot weather, unless they be water'd immediately after.

*Earth* that is cold, strong, and moist, must never be *Till'd* in time of Rain, but rather during the greatest Heats,

But we find that there are several Grounds that will not work till after Rains; at which time it's the best time for *Tilling*, and bringing it into Order.

The frequent *Tillings* hinder part of the goodness of the *Earth* from being wasted by the growth and nourishment of ill *Plants*; but these *Tillings* are not wholly sufficient, unless care be taken to Hoe and pull up those ill Weeds which usually grow in Summer and Autumn, and multiply without end, if suffer'd to run to Seed. But (by the by) you must know, that in the times that *Trees* blossom, and *Vines* shoot, *Tillage* is very dangerous.

To dry *Earths*, I allow a large Culture or *Tillage* at the entrance of Winter, and the like as soon as 'tis past; that the Snows and Rains of the Winter and Spring may easily sink into the *Earth*. But to strong and moist *Earth* I allow but small *Tillage* in October, only to remove the Weeds and stay to give them a large one at the end of April, or beginning of May, when the *Fruit* is perfectly Knit, and the great Moistures over.

Rain-



Rain-water seldom sinks above a Foot deep, but water of Snow Two or Three Foot, as being much heavier than Rain-water, and as it melts slowly and by degrees from the undermost part of the Mass of Snow, so it soaks with more ease, not being hindred by the Wind or Sun.

Therefore I dread much Snow upon strong moist Grounds, and order it to be remov'd from about the *Fruit-Trees*. So in dry *Earth* I gather it as a Magazine of moisture to the *Southern Expositions*,

## CHAP. XXII, and XXIII.

### *Of Amendments, or Improvements and Dungs.*

**A** *Mendments* are a bettering and improving of *Earth*, which improvement is made with all sorts of *Dungs*, according to the temper and employment of the *Earth*. As for Instance there must be a great deal of Dung to produce *Pot-herbs*, which grow abundantly in a short time, and quickly succeed each other in a small compals of Ground. On the other side, *Trees* require but little or none for their Nourishment, because being so long a growing, they make but inconsiderable productions, compar'd to the Ground they take up; and tho' they remain long in the same place, yet by the help of their roots, which stretch to the right and left, they make a shift to pick up far and near the nourishment that is fit for them.

Now since the great defects of *Earth* are too much moisture, coldness, and heaviness, also lightness, and an inclination to parching, so amongst *Dungs*, some are fat and cooling, as that of *Oxen*, and *Cows*; others hot and light, as that of *Sheep*, *Horses*, and *Pigeons*, &c. And whereas the Remedy must have

Virtues



Virtues contrary to the Distemper it is to Cure; therefore hot and dry Dungs must be us'd in cold, moist, heavy Earths, and *Oxen* and *Cow-Dung* in lean dry light Earths, to make them fatter and closer.

Not that these two sorts, tho' the principal are the only materials for amendment of *Earth*; for upon Farm-Lands, all sorts of Scruffs, Linen, Flesh, Skin, bones, Nails, Hoofs of Animals, Dirt, Urine, Excrements, Wood, Fruit, Leaves, Ashes, Straw, all manner of Corn or Grains, Soot, &c. In short, all that is upon or in the Earth (except Stones and Minerals) serve to amend and better it.

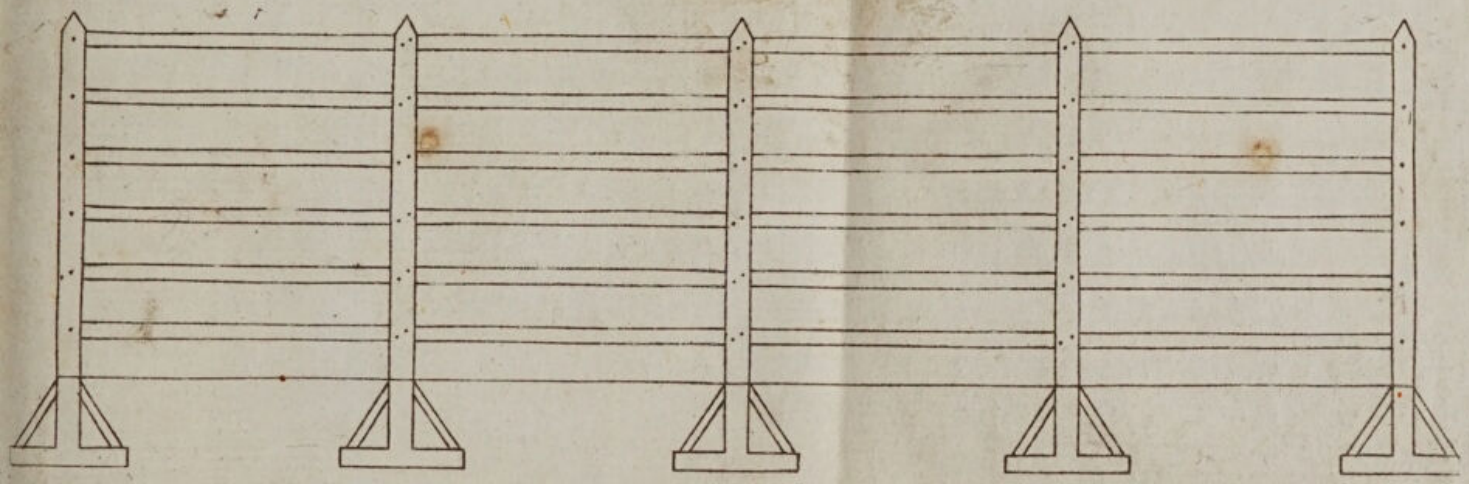
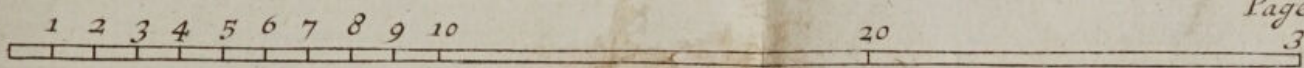
'The rest of this Chapter our Author makes use of  
'in Philosophizing, which is little to our purpose,  
'who have regard only to his experience, and matter  
'of fact; we proceed therefore to that of Dungs.

#### *Of Dungs*

In *Dungs* there are two peculiar properties; one is to fatten the *Earth*, and render it more Fruitful; the other to produce a certain sensible heat, capable of producing some considerable effect. The last is seldom found but in *Horse* and *Mule-Dung*, newly made, and still a little moist; which indeed is of wonderful use in our *Gardens* in the Winter; it then animating and enlivening all things, and performing the Office which the heat of the Sun does in Summer; for being laid in Couches, it affords us all the Novelties of the Spring; as Cucumbers, Radishes, small Salads, and Melons, and all these long before Nature can afford them. In great Frosts it supplies us with Greens and Flowers, and which is very rare, early *Asparagus*.

When 'tis old, the heat being wholly past, but not rotten, it preserves from the Cold what the Frost might destroy, and therefore 'tis us'd in Winter to







1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10





cover Fig-Trees, Artichoaks, Succory, Sellery, &c all of great value in *Gard'ning*; and after all, being rotten, it serves to amend the Ground.

The time for *Amendments* is from the beginning of *November*, till towards the end of *March*, because this Dung would be of no use in the *Earth*, if the Rains did not rot it; such as is us'd at other times, only grows dry and musty, and so far from being kind, that 'tis pernicious and fatal to Vegetables; for where there is a large quantity of it, a multitude of large white Worms breed in it, which gnaw all the tender things they meet with all. Now since the Winter is the only fit time for *amendment*, our Garden must not lose any part of it, neither minding the Quarters of the Moon, nor the Winds, whatever they be, they being only troublesome and useless Observations; and fit only to set-off a visionary and talkative *Gard'ner*.

Sometimes there is a necessity of Dinging largely, and pretty deep in the Ground, and sometimes 'tis enough to turn the top lightly.

I look upon Sheep's Dung as the best of all Dungs, and most promoting fruitfulness in all sorts of *Earth*, the Treatise of *Orange Trees* will shew more particularly how I value it above all others; *La Poudret*, and the Dung of Pigeons and Poultry I seldom use, the one is too stinking, and the other is full of little Fleas very prejudicial to Plants.

The Leaves of *Trees* rotted in some moist place, are rather Soil than Dung; and are better spread to secure Earth from parching, than to warm the inside of it.

*Terreou*, or Soils, that Dung, which having serv'd for *Couches*, or Hot-Beds, is consum'd to that degree, that it becomes a sort of Mould; which then is employ'd no longer for Dung to fatten, but like Earth for small Plants, that may be laid Seven or Eight Inches deep upon new Bud's, for Sallads, Radishes



dishes, and *Legumes*, that are to be transported, or to remain, as *Mellons*, *Cucumbers*, hard *Lettuce* &c, about Two Inches thick. It is also laid over *Earths* new sown at Spring, and in Summer, when they are too dry of themselves, and are subject to harden and chop by heat, by which the Seed would dry up, and not be able to get thro' the hardness of the *Earth*; in such case, 'tis us'd to preserve the moisture obtain'd by Tillage, and Waterings, and to hinder the Birds from picking of the new *Seeds*.

Ashes of all sorts, would be of great use in *Amendments*, if we had enough of them; but that not being possible we use them only about the feet of some *Fig-Trees*, and others.

Some value *Turf* for *Amendments*, but I look upon it as only fit to produce of it self, not to make another *Earth* Fruitful. I have a great value for the *Earth* under the *Turff*, as 'tis new *Earth*, never wrought, and consequently fruitful, and good for *Fruit-Trees*; or else so, after the same manner as I have caus'd *Dungs* to be employ'd for deep *Amendments*.

## CHAP. XXIV.

### *Whether it be proper to Dung Trees.*

**F**OR the Resolution of which Point, our Experienced and Learned Author proposes Five Queries to those Gentlemen who assert 'tis proper to Dung *Trees*.

1. Whether they mean all sorts of *Trees*?
2. Whether *Fruit Trees* only?
3. Whether, if *Fruit-Trees*, they mean all in general, to preserve the vigorous, and recover the infirm?
4. Whether they have a Rule for the quantity of *Dung* to be allow'd each, and where it should be laid?
5. Whether



5. Whether they should be Dung'd in all sorts of *Earths* good and bad ?

After all the Answers that can possible be supposed to be given to these Queries, he gives a full and convincing Confutation of them, as the effect of his many years great Experience, and thereby proving it wholly improper to Dung *Trees* ; no not so much as the Infirm, of whom he gives the following Character, *viz*, An infirm *Pear-Tree* is not always concluded so, by reason of its producing yellow Shoots, since some that are very vigorous produce Leaves of that colour ; only they are such upon which some old Branches die, or such, of which the ends of the new Shoots wither, or produce none at all ; or continue Scabby, full of *Cankers* and *Moss*, yet blossom extremely but little of the *Fruit* knits, and that which does, remains small, stony, and bad. But when the *Tree* chances to produce large yellow Shoots, which often happens to some *Pears* grafted upon *Quincestocks*, which being Planted in a dry Ground, are notwithstanding in a good Condition ; this defect of yellow Leaves, proceeding from some of the principal Roots lying level with the Ground, whereby they are parched by the great heats of the Summer.

An account of the Diseases of *Trees* he gives at large in the Fifth Part.

## CHAP. XXV.

*What sort of Earth is most proper for every kind of Fruit-Tree.*

THE Wildings of *Pear-Trees*, *Apple-Trees*, even these call'd *Paradise*, *Plumb-Trees*, and *Fig-Trees*, agree well with all sorts of *Earth*, hot and dry, cold and moist, provided the Ground be deep enough, *viz* Two Foot and a half, or Tree Foot



*Fig-Trees* require much less; *Quince-Trees* thrive not in dry light ground, soon growing yellow? *Almonds* and *Peaches* thrive better in this than in strong *Earth*, which makes them too subject to Gum; such strong *Earths* are fitter for *Plumbs*, small bitter *Cherries*, *Goosberries*, *Raspberry Bushes*, &c. *Vines* thrive and produce better *Grapes* in certain dry *Grounds*, than in strong cold *Earths*; *Cherries* thrive pretty well in light *Ground*.

*Earth* has not the same effect as to the good taste of *Fruits*, as it has to the vigour of *Trees*; for the *Winter Bon-Chrestien*, *Petit Oin*, *Lansac*, and *Thorn-Pear*, &c. will be always insipid, and most of them stony, or mellow in *Ground* that is cold and moist: whether grafted on a *Wilding*, or a *Quince-Stock* especially for *Dwarf-Standards*. 'Tis the same with *Peaches* and *Pavies*, &c. Those kind of *Fruits* require a pretty dry *Ground*, at least one that's well drain'd by *Gutters*, or contriv'd *Descents*.

In short, *Trees* are commonly vigorous in strong *Earth*, but the *Fruit* seldom so well tasted, as those we find in drier *Grounds*.

Besides *Tillage* and *Amendments*, your *Garden* must be always kept clean, the *Walks* kept free from *Stones* and *Weeds*, as likewise the whole *Ground*. The *Trees* should be always free from *Cater-pillars*, *Snails*, *Moss*, &c.

Having thus far gone upon the true *Sense* and *Experience* of the *Author*, we conclude this *Second Part*, and proceed to the *Third*.

*The End of the Second Part*



---

O F

FRUIT-GARDENS,

A N D

Kitchen-Gardens.

---



---

VOL. I. PART. III.

---

*A Preliminary Discourse Shewing the Order, Method, and Design of this Part, chiefly relating to Fruit-Trees.*

**F**RUIT, as it was our *Primitive*, and most Excellent as well as most Innocent Food, whilst it grew in *Paradise*; a Climate so benign, and a Soil so richly impregnated with all that the Influences of *Heaven* could communicate to it; so has it still preserved, and retain'd no small Tincture of its Original and Celestial Virtue. And tho' it has, in this Degenerate State of the World, ceas'd to be the genuine and natural, as well as the most Innocent and wholesome Diet; (*when the Days of Man were as the days of Heaven, Long and Healthful*, and would yet approach them, had not Mens intemperance, wanton and deprav'd Appetites, substituted the *Shambles*, and Slaughter'd *Flesh* to debauch us) yet after all the



' Inventions of the most luxurious, and voluptuous  
 ' *Epicure*; the most *Cæsarian* Tables would want of  
 ' their Magnificence, noblest Gust, and grateful Re-  
 ' lish without *Fruit*, and the Production of the *Garden*  
 ' which gives the true *Condiment*, and most agreeable  
 ' closure to all the rest. 'Tis from *Fruit*, and Saluta-  
 ' ry *Plants*, that besides the Nourishment they yield  
 ' us) we receive the Sovereign *Elixirs*, prepar'd, and  
 ' extracted by natural *Chymistry* and *Solar Fire*, of Vir-  
 ' tue to Attemper and Allay the *Ebullitions* of the *Blood*,  
 ' and sweeten its *Saline Acrimony* in the hottest *Climes*  
 ' and *Seasons*; and with their *Cordial Juices*, to Recreate,  
 ' Chear, and Restore the exhausted *Spirits*, clog'd and  
 ' disturb'd by what they have contracted from those  
 ' full Meals of *Flesh*, and grosser *Aliments*: Parents of a  
 ' Thousand Diseases and Infirmities: So that tho' pos-  
 ' sibly it might not by some be reckoned among the ab-  
 ' solute *Necessaries* of Life; it ought at least be number'd  
 ' among those *Conveniences*, without which we should  
 ' lose an infinity of that *Pleasure*, and innocent *Content-*  
 ' *ment*, which seems in pity to have been left us, to  
 ' Charm and Alleviate the *Cares* and *Anxieties* which have,  
 ' since the *Fall*, both shorten'd and imbitter'd Life. And,  
 ' if after all our Labour to Repair what the choicest  
 ' and most delicious *Fruit* has been despoil'd of, since  
 ' it grew in *Paradise* (but which we find by Industry  
 ' and Culture so far exalted and restor'd) it does not  
 ' arrive to that *Transcendent* Perfection; much less do  
 ' any *Artificial Supplement*, as have all this while usurp'd  
 ' the Place of that our more Innocent, Primitive,  
 ' and Natural *Food*, pretend to come in Competition.

' It is then upon this Account, and with Reason,  
 ' that Naturally all Men, *Princes* especially, and great  
 ' Persons, have in all Ages and Civiliz'd Countries,  
 ' endeavour'd to cherish and incourage the Culture of  
 ' *Fruit*; and to have spacious *Gardens* and *Plantations*;  
 ' not only curiously contriv'd for Pomp and Ornament  
 ' but



' but furnish'd with varieties of the most beautiful  
' choice, and delicious *Fruits*, as *Royal Adjuncts* to'  
' their stateliest *Palaces*, and *Rural Estates*.

' We have already shew'd, how near some *Fruits* do  
' (by the Gard'ner's skill and care) approach Perfection,  
' superior to any the richest *Mixtures*, necessary to  
' *Food, Health, and Refreshment*; nor is there perhaps  
' in all *Nature's Circle*, vast as it is, wherewith to  
' charm, and, at once, Content more *Senses*, than do  
' some *Fruits* (perfect in their kind) us'd with Mode-  
' ration, and as becomes us in all things else.

' To Illustrate this a little, let us but take a turn or  
' two in a well-contriv'd and Planted *Garden*; and see  
' what a surprizing *Scene* presents it self in the *Vernal*  
' *Bloom*, diffusing its fragrant and Odoriferous *Wastes*,  
' with their ravishing *Sweets*: The tender *Blossoms* curi-  
' ously enamell'd; the variously-figur'd *Shapes* of the  
' verdant *Foliage*, dancing about, and *Immant'ling* the laden  
' *Branches* of the choicest *Fruit*; some hiding their blush-  
' ing *Cheeks*; others displaying their *Beauties*, and even  
' Courting the *Eye* to *Admire*; others the *Hand* to *Ga-*  
' *ther*, and all of them to *Taste* their delicious *Pulps*. Can  
' any thing be more delightful, than to behold an ample  
' *Square* (in a benign *Aspect*, tapestred and adorn'd with  
' such a glorious *Embroidery* of *Festoons*, and *Frutages*, de-  
' pending from the yielding *Boughs*, pregnant with their  
' *Offspring*, and pouring forth their *Plenty* and *Store*, as  
' out of so many *Amalthean Horns*? some tinctur'd with  
' the loveliest *White* and *Red*; others, an *Azurine-Purple*;  
' others strip'd with *Incarnadine*, as over a *Tissue* of *Vege-*  
' *table Gold*, *Colours* of an *Oriency*, that mock the *Pencil*  
' of the most exquisite *Artist*; and with which their  
' native *Beauty, Perfume, Fragrancy, and Taste*, gratifie  
' and entertain more *Senses* at once, than does any  
' *Sublunary Object*, in all un-vitiated *Nature* besides.

' No wonder then, if after all the enormous Ex-  
' pence and *Treasure*, that *Princes* and *Great Persons*



lay out in Raising Superb and magnificent *Structures*,  
and *Country Seats*, ( built for Pomp, and outward E-  
legancy ) the *Gardens* be neglected, so as not to an-  
swer, or be but Contemptible ; they are deserv'dly  
look'd upon as *Imperfect*, naked heaps of *Stone* and  
solitary *Masses*, defective and useless to all those lau-  
dable and noble Purposes we have enumerated ; and  
as other Blessings which improv'd *Nature*, with so boun-  
tiful a hand, gratifies her Friends and Favourers ; furnish-  
ing the *Owners* with so many useful, and highly ne-  
cessary Conveniencies, as sweetens their agreeable  
Food and Industry, with the most wholesome and in-  
nocent Diversion ; in a word, so has this part of *A-*  
*griculture* obtain'd ; as not only to have been thought  
worthy the Contemplation and *Recherches* of the Pro-  
foundest *Philosophers* ( as well as *Poets* and *Orators* ) but  
of the Mightiest *Potentates*, becoming *Souls* great  
and large, as was that of *Solomon's* in all his Glory.  
Can there then be any thing more Admirable, and  
indeed desirable ( of not forbidden Pleasure ) than to  
see, not only the *Fruit* and *Labour* of our own *Hands*  
to thrive and prosper about our *Habitations* ; but  
to enrich, and improve our *Native Store* with the ac-  
cession of *Foreign Countries*, excellent, and con-  
summate in their kinds ; and to possess within our own  
*Walls*, all that is so Rare and Elegant ? in short, a  
handsomely contriv'd, and well furnish'd *Fruit-Garden*,  
is an *Epitomy* of *Paradise*, which was a most glorious  
Place without a *Palace* ; but so can no *Palace* be,  
without what so nearly resembles it, without a *Gar-*  
*den* : And now, that such it may be, is the *Design*  
of the ensuing *Treatise* ; made *Short*, *Easie*, and *Plea-*  
*sant*, as was the *Labour* of that delicious *Spot* ; and to  
Free it from those almost infinite, and insupportable  
*Incumbrances*, with which this agreeable, and ( in it  
self ) *Easie Art*, has hitherto been clog'd and abus'd,  
deliver'd to us in so many *Voluminous Work*, as have  
been



' been publish'd ; but which, in truth, serve rather to  
' *Tire, Distract, and Discourage*, than usefully to *Instruct*.

' In order to *this*, the *Authors* of this *Epitome* have  
' endeavour'd to shew ( besides the *Designing, Dressing,*  
' *Preparing, and Inclosing* of the Ground ) how to distin-  
' guish and *Discriminate* the several kinds of *Fruit,*  
' and how to make the most *Judicious Choice* ; of what  
' *Numbers* to compose the *Plantation* ; and in what *Series,*  
' *Order, and Method* to place them ; that they may so  
' answer to the several and respective Seasons, always  
' to gratifie the Care and Culture of the *Gard'ner, Lord,*  
' or *Master* of the *Plantation*, with what is most excel-  
' lent of the several *Kinds*, in an *un-interrupted Circle,*  
' and perpetual succession, from the beginning of the  
' Year, to its ending ; together with whatsoever else  
' is requisite to continue, and maintain the *Plantation*  
' in the condition and Perfection it ought to be : And  
' this, with a frank and generous *Communication* of all  
' that ( by long *Study, Experience, Labour,* and no small  
' *Expence*, they have been able to attain, without the  
' least, *Reserve* or *Self interest*, as a willing *Tribute* which  
' they gratefully offer to those *Great Persons, Noble and*  
' *worthy Gentlemen*, who have honour'd their *Profession*  
' and *Employment* ; or shall at any time hereafter accept  
' of their future Service, and in a word, for the Benefit  
' of *all* in General. Lastly, we do with all deference,  
' and just respect, pay our *Acknowledgments* to the late  
' *Illustrious Monsieur de la Quintiny*, the most knowing  
' Director of all the *Fruit and Kitchen-Gardens* of the  
' Royal Family at *Versailles* ; where by his Conduct  
' and Direction, that August Monarch has, with such  
' infinite cost and encouragement, outdone all that  
' we Read of *Ancient*, or can see of *Modern*, in *Horticul-*  
' *ture's* Magnificence, advanc'd to its utmost *Acme* and  
' Perfection. In which undertaking they proceed in  
' the following Method and Order.

*First*, Having first told you, that by *Fruit* here is



not meant any of those that creep upon the Ground or grow on Shrubs; as *Cucumbers*, *Melons*, *Strawberries*, *Currants*, &c. Which we intend to treat of in the *Sixth Part*: whose Subject is of *Kitchen-Gardens*. We shall only insist upon these here which grow upon perfect *Trees*, as of *Wall Trees*, *Dwarfs*, or *Standards*.

Secondly, To the best Sorts are given the most ample and lively Description that possible may be fram'd, and likewise the aptest Names, and most received amongst the most judicious sort of *Curiosos*; which are commonly deriv'd from some principal Qualities, wherewith they affect the Senses of the *Eye* and *Taste*, and consequently denote something of the Nature of the thing, of which they are the Names.

"The Author here mentions that he has tasted above three hundred several sorts of *Pears*, different one from another, without finding above thirty that are Excellent.

Great Allowancies are to be made to the fickleness of Seasons, of which we are not Masters; as also of the Diversity of *Soils* and *Climates*, which are almost infinite; and to the Nature of the State of the *Tree*, which is sometimes good and sometimes bad; and lastly, to the Manner or Figure in which the several *Trees* grow and produce.

They are all Points that require a great deal of Consideration, and very much serve to ballance the opinion of those that would judge of them. There are sometimes ill *Pears* to be found among the *Virgolees*, the *Lechasserees*, the *Ambretts*, the *Thorn Pears*, &c. And but scurvy *Peaches* among the *Minions*, *Magdalens*, *Violets*, *Admirables*, &c. and bad *Plumbs* among the *Perdrigons*; some bad *Grapes* among the *Muscatts*, and some bad *Figs* among those that are esteemed. This may perhaps astonish some curious Persons; but tho' in certain sort of Good *Fruits*, there may be some defective, yet it follows not from thence that the whole Kind should be rejected. So



So that a *Fruit* may prove ill one year, or in such certain Expositions, which may have appear'd Good several years before. So on the other hand, that *Fruit* which was Good this year, was not to be endur'd for some proceeding years. It remains now that we only add some few other Cautions and Remarks worth your Consideration, and so proceed to the Treatise it self.

*First*, The Cutting and Trimming of *Trees* retards the quick bearing of them, yet because it Contributes both to the beauty of the *Tree* and *Fruit*, it should not be neglected.

*Second*, The time that Kernel *Fruit-Trees* require before they attain to a fit Age for *Bearing*, is (one with another) about four or five years, tho' some advance sooner than others, as is specified in their particular Descriptions; yet in the succeeding Years they bear more plentifully than the *Stone-Fruit*.

*Third*, That *Stone Fruit Figs*, and *Grapes*, are usually not above three or four Years before they bear considerably, and in the fifth and sixth Years bear their full Crops; which they continue, if well order'd, and in favourable places, many years after.

*Fourth*, In some Grounds in the same Climate *Fruit* will Ripen fifteen days or more before some others, not far off from them, in Ground of a different Temper.

*Fifth*, The difference of *Hot* or *Cold* Summers does steal more considerably forward, or set back the same *Fruits*, of one and the same Climate and Season.

*Sixth*, *Fruits* of good *Wall Trees* ripen a little before *Standards* in every Garden, and those of *Standards* a little before those on *Dwarfs*.

*Seventh*, Among *Wall-Trees*, the *Fruits* of those in the *South* and *East* Quarters do comonly Ripen much about the same time, save only that the *South* has a little the start of other, and that those on the *West* are



are later by eight or ten days, and those of the *North* by fifteen or twenty.

‘ These are Remarks in *France*, which the Author treats of: For the *East* and *West walls* come to early there, and the *North walls* in such a Time after them. Yet we reject planting any thing against those *North-walls* to be eaten Raw; but only *Pears* for baking, *Plumbs*, *Cherries*, &c. for baking or preserving, Except some *Cherries* that come after the others.

Cold, heavy, moist *Grounds* produce indeed the Fairest and Largest *Fruit*, but the hotter, drier, and lighter Soils, the more Delicious and rich Tasted, and especially of *Grapes*.

When *Fruits* are laid up to Keep, not only the *Fruit* of every sort, but of every particular *Tree*, and every several *Exposure*, is to be laid in parcels by themselves, that it may more precisely be known when each of them is Mellow, and how long they will keep; and that the different Effects of *Grounds*, *Expositions*, and *Forms* of *Trees*, may be the more exactly observ'd.

---



## CHAP. I.

*Of Standard Pears to plant.*

**S**tandard Trees do not at all accommodate little Gardens, as *Dwarfs* do; the shade of Great Trees being destructive to every thing else which we might plant there; we will therefore plant no Standards but in great Gardens; and here regard must be had to plant them at a good distance from any Walls, excepting those of the North.

Now for this purpose we should chuse Trees of those sorts of Fruits which are not very big, and yet are of great increase, and are good when they fall, that is to say, of some Summer Fruits, because their smallness preserves them from bruising, and their ripeness which loosens them from the Tree makes them fit to be eaten presently with Pleasure, when any of them happen to be batter'd in falling. Or else,

We should chuse those kinds which hold fast by their Stalks, and such whose Fruit are very hard in themselves, as are the small Winter Fruits, and bakeing Pears, so that they are not easily shaken down by Winds, nor when they fall, so apt to be much endamaged thereby,

Among the Summer Fruits proper to be planted in the form of Standard Trees, are comprehended the *Russelet*, the *Cuisse-Madam*, or the great *Blanquet*, or the *Musked Blanquet*, the *Musked Summer Bon Cretien*, the *Bourdon*,



*Bourdon*, or the *Musk'd Robert*, the *Pendar*, or the *melting Pear* of *Breast*, and in every large Plantation may be added some Summer *Bon-Chretiens*, some *Admiral Pears*, &c. For the *Fruits* of Autumn may be chosen the *Lansacs*, *Vine Pears*, *Russellins*, &c. And for Winter *Fruits*, the dry *Martin*, the *Ambret*, the *Winter Russellas*, the *Ronvil*, and perhaps some *Bezi de Caissoy* Trees and in fine, for *Fruits* to bake, preserve, &c. the little *Cerlean*, the *Franck Royal*, the *Angober*, the *Donvillee*.

There we have about twenty four sorts of *Standard Pear Trees* to plant prosperously enough in our *Gardens*; but because in important places, as for Example, in fine *Kitchen Gardens*, baking and preserving *Fruits* are not considerable enough to be allowed any room, and because they are expedient for all those that conveniently can, we may have some of them in seperate Orchards, designed only for *Fruit*, together with all sorts of *Cherry Trees*, *Agriots*, *Biggaroes*, *Guines*; with all sorts of good *Apples*, *Pepins*, *Calvils*, *Apis*, *Fenouilletts*, or *Corpendus*, &c. with some good sorts of *Plumbs*, viz. of *Damask Plumbs*, of all sorts of *Mirabelles*, diapred *Damask*, &c. and lastly, with *Mulberry Trees*, *Almond Trees*, *Azerol*, or *Garden Hawth-Trees*, &c. Therefore since for these reasons, *Fruits* for Baking, &c. may be planted elsewhere, far off from our *Kitchen Gardens*, we should in their stead multiply some of the best of our Summer and Autumn *Fruits*; tho' a Summer *Pear Tree* that has been planted ten or twelve Years, is capable of yielding so great a quantity of *Fruit* of its kind, that 'twill be all we can do to spend them before the Rottenness (that follows close after the Ripe-



Ripeness) surprises them, which makes them good for nothing.

And therefore when we are contriving Plantations of *Fruit-Trees*, we should still remember when we intermix in them any *Standard Trees*, that we must proportionably diminish the number of *Dwarf Trees*, which we should otherwise be oblig'd to have of the very same kinds.

'Tis not amiss to add here this Caution, that in respect of these *Standard Trees*, it is good in planting them to leave them some of the *Bran-ches* of their *Tops* which they had when in the Nursery Garden, because they will bear *Fruit* so much the sooner, and because the height of their *Trunks* is not so exactly regulated as that of the *Dwarf Trees*; whether that height begin a Foot higher or lower, their shape will be never the less comely for that; and it is always a considerable advantage, which these sort of *Trees* may be made to afford us, by advancing their Fruitfulness, which we can hardly ever draw from the *Dwarf Trees*.

In places that are much exposed, or near the High ways where People pass, we ought to have this forecast, not to plant any *Fruit* there that is eatable whilst on the *Tree*, otherwise 'tis certain all the *Fruit* that will come to the owner from thence will be only a great deal of vexation, and little else.

As for what concerns the Plantations of *Pears* or *Apple Trees* for Syder, or Perry, the *Trees* may



may be planted at threescore or threescore and twelve Foot apart one from another, because that proportion hinders not the Grounds in which they grow, at least for several Years together, from being sown yearly with good Corn; the plowing up, and other Culture used for the latter, extremely contributing to the well cultivating of the other.

---



A  
C A T A L O G U E  
O F

*Mr. De la Quintinye's Best Pears,  
Peaches, and Brugnons,*

*Collected together, from whence they were Dispers'd and Interwoven, in several of his Discourses in his Folio, and brought into the best Order for use, by which the Reader may at the first View, see the Name of each Fruit. To which is Annexed four Columns, the first shewing the Page in the Abridgment that refers to their Description at Large; the second the Page in the Folio; the third the seasons of Ripening; and the fourth their best Situation or Exposure of being Plac'd.*

|                          | <i>Abridg.</i><br><i>Page.</i> | <i>Folio</i><br><i>Page.</i> | <i>Times of</i><br><i>Ripening.</i> | <i>Situation or</i><br><i>Exposure.</i>                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>L</b> A Petit Muscat  | 45                             | 99                           | Beg. of July                        | These being Early, may be Planted for Dwarf; or Standards. |
| La Blanquet Muske        | 46                             | 109                          | Beg. of July                        |                                                            |
| La Cuisse Madam          | 46                             | 100                          | July                                |                                                            |
| La Gros Blanquet         | 46                             | 100                          | July                                |                                                            |
| La Magdelene.            | 49                             | 107                          | July                                |                                                            |
| Ia Petit Blanquet        | 46                             | 100                          | Mid of July                         |                                                            |
| La Grand Onionet         | 51                             | 108                          | Mid. of July                        |                                                            |
| La Muscat Robert         | 47                             | 101                          | Mid of July                         |                                                            |
| La Blanquet Longue Queue | 46                             | 101                          | Mid. of July                        |                                                            |
| La Poir sans Peau        | 47                             | 102                          | End of July                         |                                                            |
| L' Espargne              | 49                             | 107                          | End of July                         |                                                            |
| La Bourdon               | 49                             | 108                          | Beg. of July                        |                                                            |
| L' Orange Musquee        | 56                             | 112                          | August                              |                                                            |



|                         | <i>Abridg.</i> | <i>Folio</i> | <i>Times of</i> | <i>Situation or</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | <i>Page.</i>   | <i>Page.</i> | <i>Ripening</i> | <i>Exposure.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| La Rouffelet            | 40             | 91           | End of Aug.     | These may<br>be Planted<br>for Dwarfs<br>and Stand-<br>ards, or a-<br>gainst East<br>and West<br>Aspected<br>Walls.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Poir la Rose            | 56             | 116          | End of Aug.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bouchet              | 55             | 111          | End of Aug.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| L' Orange Vert          | 48             | 104          | End of Aug.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Robine               | 40             | 92           | End of Aug.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Caffolet             | 47             | 100          | End of Aug.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Callio Rosat         | 57             | 116          | Aug. & Sept.    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bon-chretien d' Este |                | 104          | Aug. & Sept.    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Musque                  | 48             | 109          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Salviati             | 52             | 110          | Aug. & Sept.    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bergamotte           | 37             | 83           |                 | Sept.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| La Burree               | 36             | 82           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| L' Angober              | 51             | 83           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                         |                |              | Sept.           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Pendar               | 55             | 111          |                 | Sept.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                         |                | 112          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Vert Longue          | 43             | 95           |                 | Octob.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| La Marquis              | 41             | 94           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Muscat Fleuri        | 48             | 104          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bezi de la Mote      | 49             | 105          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Rouffelin            | 55             | 111          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Poir de Vigne        | 47             | 101          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Messieur Jean        | 44             | 97           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                         |                | 107          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Sucrein Verde        | 50             | 108          | End of Octob    | These being<br>later than<br>the former,<br>will require<br>to be Plant-<br>ed against a<br>South-E. or<br>South West<br>Aspect, or<br>near that<br>Exposure,<br>except those,<br>for Baking,<br>which may<br>be Planted<br>upon a<br>North,<br>North-East<br>or North-<br>West Af-<br>pect. |
| La Lanfac               | 44             | 95           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                         |                | 96           | End of Octob.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Befidery             | 51             | 100          | Octob. & Nov.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Chat                 | 55             | 112          | Octob. & Nov.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Villaine d' Anjou    | 57             | 116          | Octob. & Nov.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Gros Queue           | 57             |              | Octob. & Nov.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Chat Brule           | 54             | 110          | Octob. & Nov.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La St. Francis          | 55             | 113          | Nov.            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Martin Sec           | 44             | 97           | Nov.            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Doyenne, Ou, St.     |                |              |                 | Nov.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Michel                  | 48             | 104          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Craffan              | 41             | 93           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bure d' Angleterre   | 53             | 110          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Bezide Cuiſſoy       | 55             | 12           |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Poir de Livre        | 54             | 111          |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La Louis Bon            | 43             | 195          | Nov. & Dec.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| La St. Auguſtine        | 45             | 98           | Nov. & Dec.     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



# Vol. I. The Complete Gard'ner.

|                               | Abridg.<br>Page. | Folio<br>Page. | Times of<br>Ripening. | Situation or<br>Exposure.                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| La Virgolé                    | 37               | 84<br>85<br>86 | Nov. & Dec.           | These will<br>require a<br>good South<br>Aspected<br>Wall.                                                                                        |
| La Chaffery                   | 38               | 85<br>89       | Nov. & Dec.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| L' Ambret                     | ib.              | 85<br>89       | Nov. & Dec.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Petit Oin                  | 42               | 94             | Nov. & Dec.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| L' Espine D' Hyver.           | 93               | 86             | Nov. & Dec.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| L' Amadot                     |                  | 1090           | Nov. & Dec.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Bon Chretien de<br>Spaigne |                  | 52             |                       |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La S. Germain                 | 41               | 93             | Dec.                  | These be-<br>ing so late<br>Ripe will<br>never<br>come to<br>Perfection,<br>without<br>the benefit<br>of the best<br>South As-<br>pected<br>Walls |
| La Colmar                     | 42               | 94             | Dec.                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Pastourelle                | 53               |                | Dec. & Jan.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Grand Fremont              | 56               | 113            | Dec. & Jan.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Poir de Reavile            | 51               | 108            | Jan.                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Franck Real                | 51               | 108            | Jan.                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Double fleur               | 50               | 108            | Jan. & Feb.           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Russellit d' Hyver         | 54               | 110            | Jan & Feb.            |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Citron d' Hyver            | 54               |                | Feb.                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Portaile                   | 45               | 98             | Feb. & March          |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Bugi                       | 50               | 107<br>198     | Feb. & March          |                                                                                                                                                   |
|                               |                  | 79             |                       |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Bon Chreti d' Hyver        | 35               | 80<br>81       | March & Apr.          |                                                                                                                                                   |
| La Carmelite                  | 56               | 115<br>116     | March & Apr.          |                                                                                                                                                   |



# The Complete Gard'ner. Vol. I.

*A list of Peaches.*

*Abrig. Folio. Times of Ripening.  
Page. Page.*

|                                       |    |     |                                              |
|---------------------------------------|----|-----|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>P</b> etit Avan Peach              | 63 | 137 | Beginning of <i>July</i> .                   |
| Troy Peach                            | 58 | 137 | End <i>July</i> Beg. <i>August</i>           |
| Yellow Alberge Peach                  | }  | 138 | Beginning of <i>August</i>                   |
| Yellow Pavie Alberge                  |    |     |                                              |
| Red Alberge                           | 6  | 138 | Middle of <i>August</i>                      |
| White Magdalene                       | 64 | 153 |                                              |
| Red Magdalene                         | 59 | 147 |                                              |
| Mignon Peach                          | 63 | 153 |                                              |
| Italian Peach                         | }  | 138 | End of <i>August</i>                         |
| The White Peach                       |    |     |                                              |
| Little violet Alberge Peach           |    |     |                                              |
| Little violet Alberge Pavies Boardine |    |     |                                              |
| Cherry Peach white Pulp               | }  | 138 | End of <i>August</i>                         |
| Cherry Peach yellow Pulp              |    |     |                                              |
| Drusel Peach                          | 59 | 147 | Beginning of <i>September</i>                |
| Cheyreux Peach                        | 63 | 138 |                                              |
| Rossanne Peach                        |    | 138 |                                              |
| Pavre Rossann                         | 61 | 138 |                                              |
| Perfique Peach                        | 59 | 146 | A little after Beginning of <i>September</i> |
| Violet Hafting Peach                  | 64 | 154 |                                              |
| Bel-Guard Peach                       |    | 138 |                                              |
| Violet Brugnon                        | 61 | 138 |                                              |
| Purple Peach                          | 60 | 147 | Middle of <i>September</i>                   |
| Amirable Peach                        | 59 | 146 |                                              |
| Nivet Peach                           | 60 | 147 | A little after Middle of <i>September</i>    |
| Pau Peach                             |    | 138 |                                              |
| White Andille Peach                   | 65 | 157 |                                              |
|                                       |    | 138 |                                              |
| Narbon Peach                          | 61 | 146 | }                                            |
| Great yellow Backward Peach           |    |     |                                              |
| Royal Peach                           |    |     |                                              |
| Backward Violet                       | 62 | 138 | }                                            |
| Yellow smooth Peach                   |    |     |                                              |
| The White Payle                       | 65 | 157 |                                              |
| The Great Red                         | 65 | 138 |                                              |



---

O F

FRUIT-GARDENS,

A N D

Kitchen-Gardens.

---



---

Vol. I. PART III.

---

CHAP. I. II.

Of Pears.

*La Bon-Chretien de Hyber.*

**T**His is justly prefer'd before all others, *The Bon-Cretien.* being of greater Antiquity, and has carried this illustrious Name for many Ages. It's Noble to behold, by reason of it's long and Piramidical Figure, being usually five or six Inches Long, and three or four Inches Thick, and of a pound weight or more; nay sometimes above two pound.

E z

It's



It's naturally Yellow, with a lively Carnation Colour, when well Expos'd.

It lasts very long on the Tree, and endures the longest afterwards in perfect Goodness of any other Pear.

'Tis good Stew'd or Bak'd, if gather'd before it's full Ripe; but when 'tis come to Maturity, and the Ground good and well cultivated, it will continue Mellow for some whole Months together.

The Pulp eats Short, but Tender enough. Its Taste agreeable, and Juice sugar'd, and a little perfum'd.

It does best against a South-wall? but tho' our Author adviseth to Plant them *Dwarfs* in small Gardens in France; yet the good Success of them in that manner is to be doubted in England

Some Persons make different sorts of *Bon Chretiens*, as the Long, the Round, the Green, the Golden, the Sattin, &c. but they are all one and the same Fruit; only the Difference of Soils, Expositions, Seasons of the Year; and Condition of the Tree, may make great alterations both in Colour, Shape, Goodness, &c.

It should be Grafted on a Quince-stock, because on a Free-Stock the Fruit grows spotted, small, and crumpled. 'Tis in Perfection in February and March.

#### *La Burree.*

*The Burre.* **T**HE Red Butter Pear or *Ambroise*, or *Isambret*, the Gray Butter and Green Butter Pears are all one, only difference of Soil, Exposure, Season, &c. (as mentioned in the *Bon Chretien*) may occasion the Difference; also the Stock they are grafted on, either Free Stock or Quince, causeth great alterations; but it does well on either. It's call'd the Butter Pear, because of it's smooth, delicious, melting soft Pulp.

Its Body is large, and of a beautiful Colour and bears very well commonly every year; in all sorts of



of *Grounds*, and with indifferent usage. It's seldom or never apt to be Doughy, or Insipid, or Mealy. It's Ripe the latter end of *September*, and bears soonest on a *Quince*.

*La Bergamotte.*

It has a tender melting *Pulp*, sweet and *The Autumn* sugar'd, and has a little smack of perfume *Bergamot*. it's a reasonable good Bearer; the middling sort of them are as good as the biggest; it does well either on a *Quince* or a *Free stock*, and on Different Soils, and either for *Wall*, *Dwarfs*, or *Standards*. There is no difference in *Bergamots*, but what consists in the Colour only; but then that difference is indeed real,

The common *Bergamot* is of a Greenish Gray. The *Bergamot Swiss* is strip'd with Yellow and Green Streaks, which appears both in the *Wood* and the *Fruit*; but as to the Goodness of each, there is little Difference. The size of both is alike, being sometimes three Inches in thickness; but usually one and a half, or two Inches. They both have a flat Shape, the Eye or Crown sinking hollow in, the Stalk short and small, the Skin Yellowish, and a little moistish when Ripe.

There are no latter *Bergamots*, as some pretend, only different *Soils*, *Seasons*, &c. sometimes make an alteration. The *Tree* usually grows scabby. If the *Ground* be good and light, they do best on a *Free-stock*; but if cold and heavy, on a *Quince*. Ripe in *September* and the beginning of *October*.

*La Virgoulee.*

The *Virgoulee*, otherwise call'd the *The Virgoulee*. *Bujaleuf*, *Chambrett*, the *Ice-Pear*, *Virgouleuse* and *Virgouleuse*. It's pretty long and thick, being



being three or four Inches long and two or three Inches in thickness ; its Stalk short, fleshy, and bending ; the Eye or Crown indifferently great and hollow ; its Skin smooth and polish'd, and sometimes colour'd ? it's Green on the Tree, but grows Yellow as it Ripens ; and, if gather'd at the proper time, is one of the best Fruits in the World.

The Tree grows very strong, its Pulp tender and melting, with abundance of sweet and sugar'd Juice, a fine rich Taste, and a plentiful Increaser.

It Ripens almost as soon as the *Bergamott*, and the Fruit holds good sometimes from the beginning of *November* to part of the Month of *January*.

It's agreeable to the Eye ; and those that grow well expos'd, have an admirable Vermilion Blush.

It succeeds well either on a *Free* or a *Quince Stock*.

It's pretty long before it bears, and much of the Fruit is apt to fall from the Tree before it's Ripe.

It lasts during the Months of *November*, *December*, and *January*.

#### *La les Chessery and L' Ambrett.*

*The La Chessery and Ambrett.*

The *Le-Chessery*, or or *Besidery-saudry*, compar'd with the *Ambrett*. These Two Pears have a Resemblance with each other ; their Shape roundish in both, tho' the *Ambrett* be a little flatter, and has its Eye or Crown hollower and deeper sunk.

The *La Chessery* has its Eye or Crown quite jetting out, and some of them resemble a Limon in shape.

Their bigness is much alike, of a middle size, about Two or Three Inches extent every way. They are alike in Colour, which is Greenish and Speckled ; tho' the *Ambrett* is commonly the deeper Colour, and the *La-Chessery* lighter and yellower, especially when Ripe. Their Stalks are both streight and pretty long,



long, but the *Le Chessery* thickest of the Two; they Ripen and Mellow together in *November* and *December*, and sometimes in *January*. Their Pulp fine and butter-like, their Juice sugar'd and a little perfum'd, but their Perfume is agreeable and very delicious; the *Le-Chessery* has more of it than the *Ambrett*, and the Pulp of the *Ambrett* is a little more Greenish, its Kernels blacker, and its Skin feels usually a little rougher. The *Le-Chesseries* are pretty often bunched and warty; they differ very much in their Wood; for the *Ambrett* is very Thorny, resembling a wild Tree; the *Le-Chessery* is pretty slender, and shoots out some points, but not sharp. The *Ambrett* on a bad Soil has its Fruit of a faintish Taste, and a secret dry Rotteness in many of them. The *Le-Chessery* loves a dry Ground. The *Ambrett* is long before it comes to bear. They are both in Perfection in *November*, *December* and *January*.

*L' Epine D' Hyver.*

This is a very fine *Pear*, and comes nearer to a *Piramid*, than a round Figure; tho' no part of it is small; of a bluntish point towards the Stalk, which is short and small. This *Pear* is almost all over of the same bigness, being about two or three Inches thick towards the Head. It's much bigger than an ordinary *Bergamott*, or *Ambrett*, or *Le Chassery*. It has a Satin Skin, its Colour between Green and White, ripens usually with the *Le-Chessery* and *Ambrett*. It has a fine tender Butter-like Pulp, an agreeable Taste, sweet Juice, and admirably Perfum'd. It succeeds well either on a *Free* or *Quince Stock*, it loves a Soil rather Dry than Moist. It's pretty long before it bears. Ripe in *November*, *December*, and *January*.



*La Rouffelette.**The Ruffelets.*

The great and small *Ruffelets* are all one; but the middle size are the best: Those of the product of a Fat Soil are of a middling size, handsome shap'd, more long than round, pretty thick Stalk, and somewhat long, Gray Colour, reddish on one side, and dark red on the other, with some greenish interlaced, which grows Yellow when Ripe. Its Pulp tender and fine throughout, Juice moist and agreeably perfum'd: it's good either Raw, Bak'd, Stew'd, or Preserv'd, or in liquid or dry Sweet-Meats; will prosper in any Ground, and may be planted either against a Wall, or as a Dwarf or Standard; bears larger and fairer Fruit, and in more abundance, against a Wall: It's no long laster, but soon grows soft and pappy: Ripe at the end of August and the beginning of September.

*La Robine.**The Robine.*

The Robine, or Pear Averat, or Muscat Pear of August, or Pear Royal, as it's call'd at Court. It's of the bignets and shape of a little Bergamott, between round and flat: Its Stalk pretty long, straight, and sunk pretty hollow into the Pear; also its Crown or Eye is a little hollow or sunk in. Its Pulp breaks short in the mouth, but not hard; it has an excellent sugar'd and perfum'd Juice, and much admir'd by the French King. Its Colour Yellowish white, Skin gentle, and hardly grows soft at all, as almost all the Summer Pears do. It's excellent either Raw, or Bak'd, or in Sweet-Meats. The Tree Thrives every where, but its Wood sometimes Cankers, and is hard to be brought to bear.

Ripe in August and September.



*La Crasanne.*

The *Cressan*, or *Bergamot Crasanne*, is of *The Cressan* the Nature and Colour of the *Beurre*, tho' differing in shape; being nearer like the *Monsieur Jean*, of different sizes, of Colour Greenish; growing Yellow when Ripe, and speckled almost all over with red spots; its Stalk long, pretty thick, bent and hollow set; Skin rough, Pulp extremely tender and butter-like, but not always fine; full of Juice, but sometimes accompanied with a biting sharpness. It will keep a Month and not grow Pappy, and perisheth very leasurely: May be Grafted either on a *Pear* or a *Quince Stock*. Ripe in November.

*La St Germaine.*

The *St. Germaine* is very long and *The St. Germaine* pretty big; some of them Green and a little Spotted, some pretty Red; but all of them grow very Yellow as they Ripen; Stalk short, pretty thick and bending; Its Pulp is very tender, and not gritty; full of Juice, but of a little Limonish tartness, which pleaseth some and displeaseth others. It's supposed that a *Quince Stock* and a dry Soil gives it this flavour; the Tartness is usually in those that are first Ripe: It does best on a Soil moderately Moist, and on a *Free Stock*. Continues good during the Months of November, December, and January.

*La Marquise.*

The *La Marquise* or *Marchioness*. On *The La Marquise* a dry Ground it resembles in bigness and shape a fine *Blanquet*, or a middling *Box-Christien*, but on a fat and moist Ground it grows very large; it's of a handsome shape, flat Head, little Eye, Crown sunk inwards,



wards, pretty big Belly, and handsomely sloping towards the Stalk, which is indifferent long, thick, bent and hollow set; its skin pretty rough, green Colour, flourished with flakes of Red like the *Beurree*; the Green grows Yellowish in ripening; the Pulp tender and fine, Taste pleasing, full of Juice, and much sugar'd, but somewhat Stony at the Core. It does best on a dry Soil. Ripe in October.

*La Colmar.*

*The Colmar.* The *Colmar*, otherwise call'd the *Manna Pear*, or *Latter Bergamot*. This *Pear* does much Resemble a *Bon-Chretien*, and sometimes like a fair *Bergamot*; Its Head flat, its Crown pretty great, and sunk very hollow; its Belly little bigger than the Head, moderately lengthening, and grossly loosening it self towards the Stalk, which is short, pretty thick, and bent downwards; it's of a spotted Green Colour like the *Bergamot*, sometimes a little Reddish on the Sunny side, comes a little Yellow in *December* and *January* when Ripe; and sometimes lasts till *February* or *March*. Its skin is gentle and smooth, its Pulp tender, Juice very sweet and sugar'd: It's an excellent *Pear*; but bad Soils and Seasons some times causeth its Pulp to be Gritty and Insipid. The Fruit falls easily off by Winds, before its Ripe. Its Maturity is not to be taken from its turning Yellow, but when it yields to the Thumb. It's pretty long before it comes to Bear. It's in perfection in *December*, *January* and *February*.

*Le Petit Oin.*

*Le Petit Oin.* This *Pear* is call'd by the People of *Anjou* *Bouvar*, or *Russelet Anjou*; by others, the *Winter Marveil*. Its of the bigness and shape of the *Ambret* or *Le chassery*, of a clear Green, a little spotted, and has a little touch of Yellow when Ripe, resembling a Mid-ling



ling *Bergamor*, but not so flat: It's very round, and has its Eye or Crown jetting outwards, its Stalk small, pretty long, and a little bending and shallow set; its Skin between rough and soft; its Body uneven and full of Bunches; its Pulp extremely fine and melting, and not gritty; its juice very sweet, and very much sugar'd and perfum'd: But notwithstanding these good Qualifications, it sometimes grows doughy and insipid, by accident of Weather, or moist Ground. Ripe in November and December.

*La Louis Bonne.*

It's shap'd much like the *St. Germaine*, and also resembles the *Vert Longue*, but not quite so narrow pointed; some are much bigger and longer than others, but the least are best; its Stalk is short, fleshy, and bent; its Crown small and even with the Body; its skin smooth, speckled, and greenish, growing whitish afterwards; which happens not to the large ones: Its whiteness and yielding to the Thumb, argues its Ripeness; it's very fruitful, its Pulp tender, full of juice, sweet, and rich of Taste, and grows not pappy, provided the Ground be good; but a watery Soil makes the Fruit large and bad, and the Pulp oily: Its Pulp generally hangs not together; the Fruit easily falls off. It does best on a dry Soil. It's in Perfection in November and December.

*La Vert Longue.*

The *Vert Longue*, or *Moule Bouche*; the Name describes its Colour and Shape; an old Pear and agrees best with a dry Soil; bears very well; its Juice sweet and perfum'd, and delicate fine Pulp, without

*The Vert Longue;  
or, Long Green  
Pear.*



out any grittiness; it has a very thin Skin, and is a good Pear. Ripe the middle of October.

*La Lansac,*

*The Lansac.* It's call'd also the *Lichefrion*; it's about the bigness of a *Bergamot*; the middle size are best; its shape is between round and flat towards the Head, and a little longish towards the stalk; of a pale yellow Colour, sugar'd Juice, and a little perfum'd; smooth Skin, yellowish Pulp, tender and melting; its Eye or Crown big and even with the Body; Stalk streight, long, thick, and fleshy. The Tree on a dry Ground produceth its Fruit of a Cinamon Russet Colour, and very good; but on a wet Ground proves doughy and insipid. In Perfection about the end of October.

*La Martin Sec.*

*The Martin sec.* It has an *Isabella* red on one side and a high colour'd red on the other; its Pulp eats short, and pretty fine; sugar'd Juice, and a little perfum'd. It may be eaten Skin and all, and as soon as gather'd. It's a great Increaser, and keeps pretty long, and agrees well enough with any Soil. Ripe about the middle of November.

*Le Messieur Jean:*

*The Messieur Jean.* The white and the gray *Monsieur Johns* are both one: It's subject to be stony or gritty, and therefore disliked by some; also its Pulp is rough and gross, it loves a Soil moderately moist, and a mild Summer, and tho' it grows large and fair, encreaseth mightily, and succeeds almost as well on a *Free*, as on a *Quince Stock*,  
flat



flat shap'd, the Skin of the gray ones are rough, but the white ones smoothen; its Pulp short Juice sugar'd, but somewhat gritty. Ripe about the middle of October.

*Le Portaille.*

This Pear is famous in the Province of *The Portaille Poiteau*. It's accused that its somewhat hard, stony, and gritty, and seldom comes to good but in that Province, and not eatable till it begins to rot; and that of many of them, but few prove good: Succeeds best on a *Free-Stock*; Its Juice is sugar'd and perfum'd; in Bigness, Colour and Shape, it resembles a *brown Monsieur John*: Mellow in January, and February.

*La Saint Augustine.*

It's about the Bigness and Shape of a fair *Virgoulee*, indifferent long and pretty big, *The St. Augustine.* its Belly and lower part round, but somewhat lesser on that side and towards the Stalk; the Stalk is rather long than short, in some streight, in others bent, not hollow set, its Eye or Crown big and a little sunk inwards, of a fair *Limmon* Colour a little speckled, with a blush of red on the Sunny side; its Pulp tender, but not buttery, has more vice than it seems to have: Some have a smack of Jowrishness, which gives an agreeable Relish; but others have none at all, or very little. Ripe in December.

*Le Petit Muscat.*

It's a good Pear when pretty large and, *The Little Muscat.* when it has time to grow to mellow and ripen well; it proves better being planted against a *Wall*, than a *Dwarf*, and would be more esteemed



esteemed were it not so small; ripens almost the first of any. Ripe in July.

Le Gros }  
Le Petit } Blanquet, } ou Blanquet Muske.

La Blanquet Longue Queue.

The Great, the  
Little, and the  
Long-tail'd  
Blanquets.

The Great Blanquet, differs much from that call'd the little Blanquet, and ripens Fifteen Days before it. It's the true muskt Blanquet; it's larger, and not so handsomly shap'd as the lesser one; colours a little upon a Dwarf, has very short thick Stalk, and hollow set, its Wood small, and in Leaf and Wood resembling the Cuisse Madam: but the Little Blanquet has its Wood thick and short.

The Long-tail'd Blanquet is a handsom Pear, its Crown pretty big and standing out, its Belly round, and pretty long towards the Stalk, which is also long, fleshy, and bending; its skin smooth, white, and sometimes a little colour'd on the Sunny side, its Pulp between short and tender, very fine and full of Juice, sugar'd and pleasant, but somewhat gritty, and grows doughy when too ripe.

The Gros Blanquet }  
The Petit Blanquet } Ripe { beginning of July,  
The Blanquet Longue Queue } { end of July.  
{ July.

La Cuisse Madam.

The Cuisse Ma-  
dam, or Ladies  
Thigh.

It's a kind of Russelet in Shape and Colour, its Pulp between short and tender, very Juicy, and a little muskt, very pleasant when full ripe; this and the Blanquets are the first Pears that are reasonably good; it's pretty long before it bears, but afterwards produceth abundance. Ripe the beginning of July.



*La Cassolette.*

This Pear is also call'd the *Friolett* or *Muscat verd*; it's a long Grayish Pear, near as good as the *Robine*, both for Pulp and Juice and other Qualities, save only that it's apt to grow soft; it's ripe about the middle of *August*.

*The Cassolett.**Le Muscat Robert.*

It's also call'd the *Queen-Pear*, *Maiden-pear*, *Amber-pear*, *Maiden of Zantoigne*, &c. its Pulp is tender, and Juice indifferently Musk'd, and much Sugar'd; it's a very handsome Pear, it's about the bigness of a *Russelet*; its only fault is, to have a little Stony or Gritty substance, and lasts but a little while; it's a great Increaser, and ripe the middle of *July*.

*The Muscat Robert.**La Poire de Vigne.*

The *Vine-pear*, or *Damsel pear* by some falsely call'd, the *Petit Oin*; it's Gray, Reddish, Round, and pretty big; has a Stalk extream long; its Pulp is neither Hard nor Buttery nor Tender; and herein differs from all other Pears, having a flattish, glewy Pulp, and often doughy: Ripe in *October*.

*The Vine Pear.**La Poir sans Peau.*

This is also call'd the *Guine flower*, and *Hasty Russelet*; it's longish shap'd, and Russet-color'd; it's a pretty Pear; Juice Sweet, tender Pulps, and not Gritty. It's a good Pear, and usually Ripe about the Twentieth of *July*.

*The skinless Pear.*

Ls



*La Muscat Fleuri.*

*The flowering Muscat.* This is also call'd the *Long-tail'd Muscat* of *Autumn*; it's an excellent, round, reddish *Pear*, of indifferent bigness; it's Pulp tender and fine, rich Taste, and may be eaten greedily like a *Plum*, or a *Cherry*. Ripe about the middle of *October*.

*Le BonChretien d' Este Musque.*

*The Musk-ed Summer Bon-Chretien* This *Pear* seldom comes to good, but on a *Free Stock*, and makes a fine *Tree*; the Fruit is excellent, of agreeable shape, and reasonable bigness, about the largeness of a fair *Bergamot*; its Colour is White on the one side, and Red on the other; its Pulp between short and tender, full of Juice, and perfum'd: Ripe the latter end of *August* and *September*.

*L'Orange Vert*

*The Green Orange Pear.* It's pretty big, flat and round, its Eye hollow its Colour Green, and fring'd with *Carnation*; its Pulp short, Juice sugar'd, accompanied with a particular Perfume; bears abundantly on a *Dwarf*: Ripe in *August*.

*La Doyenne, Or, St. Michel.*

*The Deans Pear, or, St. Michel.* It's about the bigness and shape of a gray *Beurre*; its Stalk thick and short, very smooth skin'd, greenish Colour, which becomes Yellow when Ripe: It is a right melting *Pear*, its Juice sweet, but of no very good relish, tho' it be a little perfum'd: Its Pulp easily grows



grows, and as it were sandy; it should be gather'd pretty green, and eaten before it's quite Yellow, and then it may be reckon'd a reasonable good *Fruit*. It's fruitful in all Soils; beautiful when ripe, and bears soonest if Grafted on a *Quince*: Is in perfection the latter end of *September* and *October*.

*La Bess de la mote*

This is a new *Pear*, and resembles pretty near a large *Ambret*, only that it's spotted with red. Ripe at the end of *October*.

*The Bess de la mot.*

*Le Bourdon.*

This *Pear* much resembles the *Muscat Robert* in Bigness, and in the Nature of its Pulp, Taste, Perfume, and time of Ripening; which is about the end of *July*. and beginning of *August*.

*The Bourdon, or, Humble Bee.*

*L' Espargne.*

It's a red *Pear*, indifferent big, and very long, and (as the Translator expresseth it) a little vaulted in its shape, its Pulp tender, but a little sourish; is more beautiful than good. Ripe at the end of *July*.

*The Espargne, or, Reserve Pear.*

*La Magdelene.*

It's indifferent large, greenish, and pretty tender, shap'd almost like a *Bergamot*; must be gathered before it grows yellow, otherwise it grows Doughy. Ripe the beginning of *July*.

*The Magdelene, or, Maudlin.*



*Le Sucre Verd.*

The Name describes its Juice and Colour; it much resembles in shape the *Winter Thorne*, but smaller; its Pulp is very buttery, Juice sugar'd, and Taste agreeable; the only fault is, that 'tis a little strong towards the Core. Ripe the end of *October*.

*Le Bugi.*

In Colour and Bigness it somewhat resembles an *Autumn Bergamot*, but not so flat towards the Eye or Crown, and a little longer towards the Stalk; It's greenish, speckled with little gray Specks, which come yellowish in ripening; its Pulp is both tender and firm, and eats pretty short, but sometimes grows doughy when too ripe before it's gathered; 'tis very juicy, and has a smack of Sowrisshness, but a little Sugar will remedy that defect. Ripe in *February* and *March*.

*La Double Fleur*

It's very beautiful, large and flat, Stalk long and straight, Skin smooth, blush-colour'd on the sunny side, and yellow on the other; If it be much handled, it turns black after a few Days. Some Persons love it raw, and like its Pulp and Taste; but it's the best for *Compotes*, or *wet Sweet-Meats*, and therein excels any other *Pear*, it has a marrowy Pulp, and not gritty at all, abundance of Juice, and colours well over the Fire. It's in Perfection in *March*.



*Le Franc Real*

Is large, round, and yellowish, speckled with little reddish Spots, short Stalk; it's a great bearer. Ripe in January.

*The French Royal,  
Winter Finor.*

*L' Angober.*

It's pretty big and long, blush-colour'd on one side, and a grayish *Russet* on the other, the Tree in growth resembles the *Boure*, and the Fruit much like it.

*The Ango-  
bor.*

*La Besideri.*

Is indifferent round, about the bigness of a large Tennis Ball, of a yellowish and whitish green Colour, the Stalk pretty streight and long; it's a bakeing Pear, and but an indifferent Fruit. Ripe in October and November.

*The Besi-  
deri.*

*Le Gros Oignonett.*

Is also call'd the *Amtré Roux*, and *Red Wonder*, and *King of the Summer*; it's pretty red colour'd, round and indifferent large, Ripe in July.

*The great Onion.*

*La Poir de Ronville.*

In Bigness and shape is much like a fair *Russelet* or *Russetin*; its Eye or Crown pretty hollow, and sunk in, the belly usually bigger on one side than the other, but yet every where pretty big; handsomely sloping towards the Stalk, which is of a midling thickness and length, and not hol-

*The Ronville*



low set, the Colour lively on one side, and very yellow on the other; when mellow, the Skin is slick and Satin-like, its Juice sug ar'd and agreeably perfum'd, and the Pulp eats short. It's faults are that 'tis small, somewhat hard, and a little gritty. Ripe in *January*, and *February*.

*Le Bon Chretien d' Espagne.*

*The Spanish Bon Chretien.* Is a great thick long *Pear*, of a handsome *Piramidical* Form, resembling here-in a *Winter Bon Chretien*; it's of a bright red Colour on one side, speckled with little black Specks; on the other side of a whitish yellow: Its Pulp eats very short, Juice usually sugar'd, and indifferent good when on good *Ground*, and when it arrives to perfect Ripeness, which it continues so to be sometimes from the middle of *November* 'till *January*? it would be more esteem'd if other melting *Pears* were not then in prime. The Author, after *Twenty Years Experience*, found its Pulp to be harsh, gross, and stony, especially in moist Summers, or cold *Ground*; 'tis but an indifferent *Pear*, but looks well in adorning *Piramids*. In Perfection in *November*, and *December*.

*Le Salviati*

*The Salviati.* This *Pear* much resembles a *Besideri* in Shape, but not in Colour; It's pretty big, round, and indifferent long, small Stalk, which is set in a little hollow, its Eye or Crown a little hollow; the Colour is of a yellowish *Russet* white: Those that have great red Streaks, have a pretty rough Skin: but those that have none of that red, are soft enough; Its Pulp is tender, but not fine, the Juice which is but little, is sugar'd and perfum'd, resembling the *Robine*



in Taste. 'Tis an indifferent good Pear. Ripe in August, and September.

*Le Blanquet Musque.*

It resembles pretty near the *Muscat Robert* in Bigness and Shape, has a fine Skin, of a pale yellowish Colour a little ring'd with red on the Sunny side, the Pulp is a little firm, and not without some earthy and stony matter, its Juice very sweet and sugard, Ripe the beginning of July.

*The musk'd Blanquet, or, white musk'd Pear.*

*La Pastourelle.*

Is much of the Bigness and Shape of the *St. Lezin*, or of a fair *Russelet*; its Stalk bent, and hollow set, and of a midling length and thickness, the Skin is between rough and smooth, growing a little moist as it Ripens, its Colour on one side yellowish, cover'd with *Russet* Spots; having on the other side a little blush of red, its Pulp very tender and melting without any Grittiness, but the Juice a little sowerish: 'Tis but an indifferent Pear. Ripe in December, and January.

*The Pastorel, or, Shepherd's Pear.*

*Le Beurre d' Angleterre.*

Is more long than round, resembling in Shape and Bigness a fair *Vert Longue*, tho' not in Colour, its Skin smooth, and of a greenish grey Colour, full of russet Specks, the Pulp very tender and Butter-like, and full of pleasant Juice; but is commonly mealy, and easily grows soft, even upon the Tree; and because it comes in with the *Vert Longue*, *Petit-Oin*, and *Langsac*, (being better Pears) it's less esteem'd. Ripe in November

*The English Beurree, or, Butter Pear.*



*La Citron d' Hyver.**The Winter  
Limon.*

It resembles in Shape and Colour a middle fil'd *Limon*; its Pulp very hard, stony, and gritty, but full of Juice, and extremely musk'd. Ripe in *January*, and *February*.

*Le Chat Brule.**The Catburnt  
Pear.*

It resembles in Shape and Bigness the *Martin Sec*, but differs in Colour, being on one side very russet, on the other pretty clear, its Skin smooth, Pulp tender, but a kind of wildish Tenderness, inclining to be Doughy, has but little Juice; in taste resembling the *Bessdery*; it has a very strong Core: A Fruit of little value. Ripe in *October*, and *November*.

*La Ruffelet d' Hyver.**The Winter  
Ruffelet.*

This *Pear* differs very little or nothing from the *Martin Sec*; but there is another sort of a greenish Colour, growing yellow as it ripens, its Pulp between tender and short, but full of Grittiness, is very juicy, and sweet enough, were it not for its greenish, wildish Taste. Ripen *February*.

*La Poir de Livre.**The Pound  
Pear.*

Is a very big weighty *Pear*, the Skin pretty rough, and of a dark Russet Colour Stalk short, and its Eye or Crown hollow, makes excellent *Compotes*, or *Sweet-Meats*, either stew'd, or done any other way. Ripe in *November*, and *December*.



*La Rouffeline.*

Is in Shape like the *Rouffelet*, of a very light *Isabella* Colour, like the *Martin Sec*; *The Rouffeline* its Pulp tender and delicate, Juice very much sugar'd and perfum'd. Ripe in *October*.

*La Bouche,*

Is large, round, and white, like the *Besidery*; some are about the bigness of a midling *Bergamot*; others are bigger than a large *Cassollet*, its Pulp fine and tender, and Juice sugar'd. Ripe about the middle of *August*.

*La Pendar.*

In Pulp, Juice, and Shape, is like the *Cassollet*, but a little bigger; its *Wood* also differs. Is ripe about the end of *September*. *The Hanging pear.*

*La Poir Chat.*

Is shap'd very like a Hen's Egg, or almost like the *Martin Sec*, its Stalk is *The Cat Pear*. different long and thick, the Skin very smooth, fat-tin'd, and dry; the Colour a very clear or light *Isabella*, its Pulp tender and buttery, and Juice indifferent sweet; 'tis a pretty good *Pear*. Ripe in *October*.

*La Bes de Cuiſſo.*

It's a little *Pear*, about the bigness of the *Blanquet*, yellowish, and all over full of *Russet Spots*; its Pulp tender but doughy, mixt with much earthy and stony matter, the Juice not very pleasant, and in Taste re-



sembling that of *Services*; 'tis but an indifferent *Pear*.  
Ripe in *December* and *January*.

*La St. Francis*

*The St. Francis.* Is good only baked or preserved;  
it's indifferent big, and very long, yellowish, and has a very thin Skin.

*L' Orange Musquee.*

*The Musk'd Orange Pear,* Is indifferent large, flat, and pretty  
much ting'd with red, Stalk long, its Skin  
usually spotted with little black Spots,  
the Pulp pleasant enough, but a little gritty, Ripe  
the beginning of *August*.

*Le Gros Fremont.*

Is indifferent big and long, and of a yellowish  
Colour, Juice sweet, and a little perfum'd, it's good  
only bak'd or preserv'd. 'Tis in Perfection in *December*,  
and *January*.

*La Carmelite.*

*The Carmelite.* Is large and flat, gray on one side,  
and a little ting'd with Red on the other,  
and in some places full of pretty large Spots. It's ripe  
in *March*.

*La Poir Rose.*

*The Rose Pear.* Is indifferent large, flat, and round,  
its Stalk very long and small, and Pulp  
eats short. Ripe in *August*, and *September*.



*La Callio Rosat.*

Is almost of the Colour, Bigness, and Shape of an ordinary *Monsieur Jean*, but a little rounder, has a very short Stalk, and set hollow like an Apple; it's Pulp eats short. Ripe in August and September.

*The Callio Rosat, Rosie Peble, or, Rose-water Pear.*

*La Villaine d' Anjou.*

It's large and flat, of a yellowish gray Colour, and has a short eating Pulp. Ripe in October.

*The Villain of Anjou, &c.*

*Le Gros Queue.*

Is stony and dry, and therefore slighted; tho' by some esteem'd, because it is much perfum'd; it's yellowish of Colour, and of competent Bigness. Ripe in October.

*The tail'd Pear.*



---

---

OF  
FRUIT-GARDENS,  
AND  
Kitchen-Gardens.

---

VOL. I. PART. III.

---

CHAP. III.

*Monsieur de la Quintinye's Description of  
Peaches, Plums, and Cherries.*

---

*La Pêche de Troy.*

*The Troy Peach.* **I**S a very good little *Peach*, but not very constant in Bearing, and is subject to be pester'd with *Ants*; it's round, having a little Teat at the end; the colour very much ting'd with red, the *Flower* pretty large, tho' the *Tree* is but small.



*La Violet Hasting.*

Is an excellent *Peach*, has a most delicious and perfum'd Pulp, a vinous and noble Taste; its only fault is that 'tis not large enough.

*The Violet Hasting, or, forward Violet.*

*L' Admirable.*

This *Peach* has almost all the good Qualities which can be desired in a *Peach*, and has no bad ones; it's very round and large, and of a lovely Colour; a firm, fine, and melting Pulp, a sweet and sugar'd Juice, a vinous, rich, and exquisite Taste, is not subject to be doughy, remains long on the Tree, a great Increaser, its Stone is but small, those that ripen last on the Tree are best, for 'tis very subject to drop its Fruit half ripe, greenish and all downy, and then it loseth all its goodness; to prevent which, the Tree may be prun'd and cut very close so the Branches which shoot out will be fairer and sounder, and the Fruit better.

*The Admirable*

*La Mignon.*

Is the most beautiful of *Peaches* that is, it's very large, very red, sattin skin'd, and round; ripens the first of those of its Season, has a firm and a very melting Pulp, a very small Stone; but the Taste is not always the richest nor briskest, being sometimes a little flat and faint.

*The Mignon.*

*La Belle Chevereuse*

Is a beautiful *Peach*, and ripens next after the *Mignon*; it's hardly inferior to any in Largeness, beauty of Colour, and

*The Bell Chevereuse, or, Goat Peach.*

good



good Shape, which is a little longish; its Juice is abundantly sugar'd, and well relished, and is a great Increaser: But sometimes it grows doughy, when suffer'd to be too ripe on the Tree, or when it grows on a cold moist Soil.

*La Nivet.*

Is a very fair large *Peach*, of a fine Colour both within and without, which renders it most agreeable to look upon; its Pulp and Juice are very good, a small Stone, and the Tree is a great bearer; 'tis not quite so round as the *Minion* and *Admirable*, but pretty near it when the Fruit grows on a sound Branch, otherwise it's a little horned and longish. Ripe about the Twentieth of September.

*La Purpree.*

The Tree bears in great abundance (and for that respect, may be preferr'd before the *Burdine*, tho' that be the better *Peach*) one may know the Colour thereof by its Name, it's of a brown dark red Colour, which penetrates much into the Pulp, which is of a very vinous-Taste; it's very round and indifferent large, and the Pulp pretty fine, Taste rich and exquisite.

*La Magdelene Blanche.*

It's an admirable *Peach* when planted in a good Soil, and well expos'd, but very subject to be injur'd by Ants. Some Gardeners believe that there are two sorts of them because some bear well, and others but little; but the Flower of each is alike, which is large, and has a little blush of red; also the Leaf of both agrees, being



ing large, and very much indented; they also ripen at the same time, which is towards the end of *August*; and agree also in Colour, Bigness, Shape, Juice, Taste, and Stone: Both of them are large, round, and half flat, very much painted with red on the Sunny side, and not at all on the other; a fine Pulp, a sweet and a sugar'd Juice, a rich Taste; no red about the Stone, the Stone in both of them is short, and almost round; they both produce goodly *Trees*, and the difference is Judged to proceed only from the more or less Vigour of the *Stock* they are buded.

*La Persique.*

Is a marvellous Increaser, and of an admirable Taste; it's longish, and has all the good Qualities that can be wisht for when the *Tree* is healthy, and in a good Soil, and well exposed and as generally *Peach* Stones resemble the shape of the Fruit, so this of the *Persique*, is a little longish, and the Pulp next thereto is but very little ting'd with red; it ripens just after the *Cheveruse*, and a little before the *Admirable*.

*The Persique  
Peach.*

*La Violette Brugnon.*

Is an admirable *Fruit* when it comes to such Maturity as to grow a little shrivell'd and wrinkled, the Pulp is reasonably tender, or at least not hard, it's pretty much painted with red about the Stone, the Juice and Taste extremely delicious.

*The Violet  
Brugnon, or  
Nedron.*

*La jaune tardive Admirable.*

Is a *Malecotoon*, but it wholly resembles the *Admirable Peach*, both in Shape and Bigness, so that it may well be call'd the *yellow*

*The yellow  
later Ad-  
mirable.*

*Admirable,*



*Admirable*, from which it differs in the yellow Colour both of its Skin and Pulp; they are both colour'd red on the Sunny side, and the red pierceth a little more about the Stone of the yellow one, than about the white; it's of good Taste, but a little subject to be doughy.

*La Violet Tardive, ou, Marbrée.*

*The later Violet, or, marbled Peach-*

It has a vinous and delicious Taste, and when it ripens well, it surpasses all the rest; it requires very much Heat, is a little bigger than the ordinary *Violet Peach*, and not so much colour'd all over with red as that, and borrows the Name of *Marble*, because it's usually whipt or strip'd with a violet red. It's apt not to ripen well, and to chap and burst all over, when the *Autumn* proves too cold or moist.

*La Bourdine.*

*The Bourdine.*

It's an admirable good *Peach*, not inferior to any of the former, only it's not quite so large as the *Magdelens*, *Mignions*, *Chevereuse*, *Persiques*, *Admirables*, *Nivets*, &c. tho' sometimes it comes very near them. The new-planted *Trees* are a little tedious before they come to bear, but when once they begin, they are extremely loaden with *Fruit*, which occasions its *Peaches* sometimes not to be so big as they should be; but if some of them are taken off about *Midsummer*, and only a reasonable number left on, they will grow large enough; they are the roundest, best colour'd and most agreeable *Peaches* to look on, that we have, and their inside is as good as it appears outwardly.



*L' Avaunt Peach.*

It begins to ripen a Month before other Peaches, and comes to Maturity at the very beginning of July; it's small and roundish, with a little Teat at the end; is so very pale that no Sun can colour it red, tho' it shine on it never so warm; the Pulp is fine enough, but very subject to grow doughy, and has not so brisk and rich a Taste as most of the others have; is better for *Compotes* or *Sweet-meats*, than raw; its Flower is large, and of a pale yellow, makes no handsome Tree, and the most pester'd with Ants of any.

*The forward,  
or, white  
Nutmeg.*

*La Pêche d' Italy.*

Is a kind of hasting or forward *Perfique*, and resembles in all things the *Perfique*; its Bulk is noble, the Figure longish, with a little Teat at the end, the colour a fair deep Carnation, its Taste good; but it ripens about Mid-August, which is full Fifteen days before the other.

*The Italian  
Peach.*

*La Pêche Royal.*

Is a kind of *Admirable*, but comes later, and of a darker red without, and a little more ting'd with red near the Stone than that, otherwise it's perfectly like the *Admirable*; and is an excellent *Peach*.

*The Royal  
Peach, or  
later Admirable.*

*La Rosanne.*

It resembles the *Bourdine* in Shape and Bulk, and differs from it in the colour of its Skin and Pulp, which in this latter are yellow; both of them take a strong Tincture of red from

*The Rosanne  
Peach.*



from the Sun, viz. a very dusky red; this *Peach* is very fruitful and well tasted, the only fault is, that 'tis apt to grow doughy when too ripe.

*L' Alberge rouge.*

*The red Al-  
berge.* Is one of our prettiest *Peaches*, for its vinous and rich Taste, if ripe enough; otherwise its Pulp is hard; 'tis no bigger than a *Troy Peach*, and much like it, but seems to be more colour'd with red; the only fault is, that 'tis not large.

*La Magdalena rouge.*

*The red Mag-  
delen, or,  
double Troy  
Peach.* Is round, flat, and sinking, very much colour'd with red without, and pretty much within; it's indifferent large, and apt to grow double and twin-like, which hinders it from producing fair Fruit; the Flower is large and high colour'd, its Pulp not very fine, but Taste good enough, but not near so good as those before mention'd, tho' in some places it improves both in Bigness and Taste extremely.

*La Belle de Gardé.*

*The Bell-gard  
Peach.* Is a fair *Peach*, a little sooner ripe; and less tinctur'd with red both within and without than the *Admirable*, its Pulp a little more yellowish, but the Taste not quite so rich; otherwise in Bulk and Figure it might be taken for an *Admirable*, but produceth not so good a Tree as that.



*La Pavie Blanch.*

In the outside it differs not at all from the *white Magdelene*, only in opening it we find *The white Pavie.* it a *Pavie*, ( viz. cleaving to the Stone ; ) it has a firm Pulp, and a good brisk Taste enough, when full ripe.

*La Pavie Rouge de Pompone.*

It's prodigiously large, being sometimes Twelve or Fourteen Inches about, of a very lovely red Colour ; and nothing is more delightful to behold, than when a good *Wall-Tree* has a good quantity of them ; when they come to ripen well, and in fair weather, a *Garden* is much honour'd in being adorn'd with them, the Hand well satisfied to hold them, and the Mouth exquisitely pleas'd in eating of them. *The Red Pavie of Pom-pone, or monstrous Pavie.*

*La Blanche Andille.*

Is a great increaser, fair to the Eye large, round, and flat, takes a lively Colour in the Sun, but no red within ; it's indifferent good, when not suffer'd to ripen too much on the *Tree*, for then it grows doughy. *The white Andille.*



*A Catalogue of good Peaches, as they Ripen successively  
in course.*

|                             | Time of Ripening              |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>P</b> etit Avant Peach   | Beginning of July.            |
| Troy Peach                  | End of July, and beginning of |
| Yellow Alberge Peach        | (August.                      |
| Little Yellow Pavie Alberge | } a little after.             |
| Red Alberge                 |                               |
| White Magdelen Peach        |                               |
| Red Magdelen Peach          |                               |
| Minion Peach                | } Middle of                   |
| Italian Peach               | August.                       |
| White Peach                 |                               |
| Little violet Alberge Peach |                               |
| Little violet Pavie Alberge | } End of August.              |
| Bourdine Peach              |                               |
| Drousel Peach               |                               |
| Cherry Peach, yellow Pulp   | } End of August.              |
| Cherry Peach, white Pulp    |                               |
| Chevereuse Peach            |                               |
| Rosanne Peach               | } Beginning of                |
| Pavie Rosanne               | Sep.                          |
| Persique Peach              |                               |
| Violet hasting Peach        |                               |
| Bell Gard Peach             |                               |
| Violet Brugnou, or Neclarin | } A little after the          |
| Purple Peach                | beginning of Sep.             |
| Admirable Peach             |                               |
| Nivet Peach                 |                               |
| Pau Peach                   |                               |
| White Andille Peach         | } A little after the          |
| Narbon Peach                | middle of Sep.                |
| Great yellow backward Peach |                               |
| Royal Peach                 |                               |
| Backward violet Peach       |                               |
| Yellow smooth Peach         |                               |
| The great red               | } October.                    |
| White <u>Pavie</u>          |                               |

*These*



*These are condemn'd by the Author as the worst of Peaches.*

Niple Peach  
 Yellow smooth *Brugnon*  
*Sanguinole*  
 Bloody Peach  
 White *Corbeile*  
 Double *Flour*  
 Nut Peach

Ripe at the end  
 of October.

### *Of Plumbs.*

THERE are almost infinite sorts of *Plums*. A good *Plum* should have a fine, tender, and melting Pulp, a very sweet and sugar'd Juice, a rich and exquisite Taste, which in some is perfume'd; they are to be eaten raw, and without Sugar.

A Catalogue of his best *Plums*.

Blew *Perdrigon*.  
 White *Perdrigon*.  
*St. Catharine*.  
 Apricot Plum.  
*Roche Corbon*.  
 Empress.  
 Latter *Perdrigon*.  
*Reine Claud*,  
 Imperial,  
 La Royal.  
 Blew }  
 Red } damask  
 White }  
 White *Mirable*.



Plums distinguished according to their several Qualifications;  
as to their Taste, Figure, Colour, &c.

|                                           |                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Plums, whose Pulp is doughy<br>and mealy. | { Perdrigon of Cernay.<br>White double Blossom<br>Black Damask Hasting                   |
| Of a sharp, and so wrieth<br>Taste.       | { Date Plum.<br>Moyen, or, Pitch Plum.<br>Brignole.<br>Musk Damask.                      |
| Dry.                                      | { Moyen.<br>Amber Plum.<br>Bull Plum<br>Brignole.                                        |
| Hard.                                     | { Date Plum.                                                                             |
| Wormy.                                    | { Imperial.<br>Many of the Damask.<br>Diaper Plum.                                       |
|                                           | { Imperial,<br>Date Plum.                                                                |
| Plums very long.                          | { Illust.<br>Rognon de Coq;<br>Perdrigon.<br>St Katharine.<br>Diaper.<br>Mirabel.        |
| Longish shap'd.                           | { Long Violet Damask.<br>Dittle Date.<br>Mignion.<br>Burgundy Moyen.<br>Rhodes Plum, &c. |
|                                           | { Reine Claud.                                                                           |
| Round, and almost square<br>and flat.     | { White<br>Violet<br>Gray<br>Green<br>Musk'd                                             |
|                                           | { Damask.                                                                                |

Round



|                                       |   |                          |
|---------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| Round, and almost square<br>and flat. | { | Little Cherry Plum.      |
|                                       |   | Cernay Perdrigon.        |
|                                       |   | Royal.                   |
| Pretty large Plums.                   | { | Pigeons Heart.           |
|                                       |   | Brugnoles.               |
|                                       |   | Drab d' Or.              |
|                                       |   | Perdrigon.               |
| Extreme large Plums.                  | { | St. Katharine.           |
|                                       |   | Apricot Plum.            |
|                                       |   | Damask, &c.              |
|                                       |   | Bullock's Heart.         |
| Little.                               | { | Cernay Perdrigon.        |
|                                       |   | Imperial, white and red. |
|                                       |   | Mirabels.                |

*Colour of Plums.*

|                                 |   |                  |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------|
| Of a yellowish<br>white Colour. | { | White Perdrigon. |
|                                 |   | White Damask.    |
|                                 |   | St. Katharine.   |
|                                 |   | Apricot Plum.    |
|                                 |   | Minion.          |
|                                 |   | Reine Claud.     |
|                                 |   | Drab d' Or.      |
|                                 |   | Great Date.      |
| Of a Violet red Co-<br>lour.    | { | Imperial.        |
|                                 |   | Blew Perdrigon.  |
|                                 |   | Roche Corbon.    |
|                                 |   | Empress.         |
|                                 |   | Imperial.        |
|                                 |   | Long             |
|                                 |   | Round            |
|                                 |   | La Royal.        |
|                                 | { | Damask.          |
|                                 |   | Violet Diaper.   |
|                                 |   | Cœur de Bœuf.    |



|               |   |                                    |
|---------------|---|------------------------------------|
| Violet black. | { | <i>Brugnole.</i>                   |
|               |   | Great Violet Tours Da-<br>mask.    |
| Black Plums.  | { | <i>Rhodes Plum.</i>                |
|               |   | Late                               |
|               |   | Forward } Damask.                  |
|               |   | Musk'd Damask.                     |
|               |   | Pigeons Heart.                     |
| Green Plums   | { | <i>Ilvert.</i>                     |
|               |   | Green Damask.                      |
|               |   | <i>Castellan.</i>                  |
| Red.          | { | Gray Damask.                       |
|               |   | Cherry Plum.                       |
|               |   | Prune <i>Morines.</i>              |
|               | { | <i>Datilles</i> , or little Dates. |

As for the sticking to the Stone in *Plums*, 'tis not worth minding, provided the *Fruit* be good.

Most *Plums*, whether good or bad, quit not their Stones. *Damask Plums* quit their Stones easiest. The Pulp in all *Plums* is yellow.

### Of Cherries.

**A**BOUT the middle of *June* Red Fruits begin to come in, and hold at least 'till the end of *July*; among which are reckon'd *Cherries*, *Griots*, and *Biggaroes*, or *Heart-Cherries*, to be the most principal; we may have *Dwarf-Trees* of them, but *Standards* are better. They are Fruits so well known every where, that they need no Description; none of them are so priz'd as the large latter *Cherries*, which are call'd *Montmorancies*, and next them the *Biggaroes* or *Heart-Cherries*, and in the third place, the *Griots*, or *Agriots*.

The *Guignes*, or *Gnigns*, of which there are white, red, and black, or indeed early ripe, but they are



too fleshy and insipid, and are not much eaten by any Persons of Quality: The *Cherries* which are call'd *forward Cherries*, but are not the early ones of all, or true *Hastings*, succeed the *Guignes* or *Guigns*; they are fair enough to the Eye, are long stalk'd, and of a sharpish and bitterish Taste, and therefore are valu'd but little, unless it be for the making of some of the first *Compotes*, or *wet Sweet-Meats*.

The truly good and fair *Cherries*, commonly call'd *preserving Cherries*, are those of *Montmorancy*; some of them grow upon *Trees* that shoot out great and upright *Branches*, and those are the largest sort of them; but that sort of *Tree* bears but few of them. They are otherwise call'd the *Clouardy Cherry*.

The right sort of good common *Cherries* produce small *Branches*, bending downwards, and bring great store of Fruit, which is very sweet and pleasant to the taste; one and the same *Tree* bears both long and short stalk'd ones; and it's chiefly of this sort we are to plant most *Trees*.

The *Bigaro*, or *Heart-Cherry*, is a Fruit both firm and crackling, longish, and almost square, but always very sweet, and very agreeable; the *Tree* shoots out thick *Branches* that are luxuriant enough: Its *Leaf* is longish.

The *Griot* or *Agriot* is a sort of Blackish *Cherry*, of a pretty firm Consistence, and very sweet and excellent; it blossoms mightily, but withal is very subject to miscarry in the Blossom: It produces a thick *Dwarf-Tree*, with a Top compos'd of *Branches*, keeping close and tight together, and its *Leaf* is broad and blackish; none of the kinds of *Merises*, or common black *Cherries*, deserve to be admitted into an artificial Garden, being properly *Forest Trees*, or *Wildings*, yet may they serve us at least for Stock to receive the Grafts of the choice sorts of *Cherries* before mention'd.



## Of Apricots.

**A** *Pricots* are good only for *wet* and *dry sweet Meats*, not being delicious to be eaten raw in any large quantity,

*Standard Apricots*

There are pretty good ones that grow upon *Stand-ard Trees*, which are all tann'd and speckled with little red Spots, they are pleasanter to the Eye and Pa-late than those against a Wall, and of a more exquisite Taste.

*Apricots against a Wall.*

The Wall makes *Apricots* larger, gives them an admirable Vermillion colour, and causes them to bear more certain; both sorts are good for Preserving. the best of them are a little sugar'd, but usually a little doughy.

*Time of Ripening, and Description.*

*Apricots* ripen at the beginning of *July*, especially the halting or early *Apricot*, whereof the Pulp is very white, the Leaf round and greener than the others, but no better than they

The ordinary *Apricots* are more large, and their Pulp yellow, ripe about the middle of *July*.

When too great a number of them knit upon the Tree, a great many must be pluckt off, and they will make excellent green *Compotes*, or *wet Sweet-Meats*.



*The Anjou sweet kernell'd Apricot.*

In the County of *Anjou* there is a small *Apricot* with a sweet Kernel, almost like a *Philbert*, and accordingly the Stones are usually crack'd to eat them. It has a white Pulp, very good, and usually grows a *Standard*.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of Apples

*La Reinette Grise, and La Reinette Blanch.*

*The Gray  
and White  
Pippins.*

THE two sorts of *Pippins* are distinguished by the two Names of *Gray* and *White* which they bear; being in other respects of an equal Goodness; good *Compotes* and *Wet Sweet Meats* may be made of them at all times. They being to be eaten *Raw* towards the Month of *January*; before which time they have a little point of Sharpness, which is somewhat disagreeable and unpleasant to some People; but when they are intirely freed from that, they contract a *Smell* that is much more disagreeable, when the *Smell* of the straw upon which they laid to Mellow, intermixes therewith. They are very Profitable, because of their being made use of almost all the year long.

*La Callville d' Automne.*

*The Autumn  
Callville*

The *Callville Apple* is shap'd longish, and of a very Red Colour both within and without, especially the Best of them, viz. Those that have the most agreeable *Violet* smell that



that renders them so considerable. These most Excellent ones have always their Pulp more deeply ting'd with Red, and are also more beautiful than the others. They keep most commonly from *October*, the time of their coming in, till *January* and *February*; It's a most excellent Fruit to eat Raw; and no less excellent to use in *Compotes* or *Wet Sweet Meats*. It sometimes grows dry and Meally, but that is not till it is very old.

*Le Fenouillet, ou Pome d' Anis.*

The Fennel;  
or, Anis Apple.

It is of a Colour not well to be express'd; 'tis Gray, over-cast with something of a *Russet*, coming near the Colour of the Belly of a Doe; never taking any lively Colour. It never grows very big, and seems to incline to a longish Figure. The Pulp is very fine, and the Juice much sugar'd, and Perfum'd with a little smack of those Plants from whence it derives its name. It begins to be Good at the beginning of *December*, and keeps till *February* and *March*. It's Certainly a very pretty Apple, but is apt to wrinkle and wither, as the *Cour pendu*, which follows next.

*Le Cour pendu.*

The Short hung;  
or, short Stalk'd  
Apple.

Is perfectly of the regular Figure of an Apple, and of reasonable bigness; of a Gray *Russet* Colour on one side, and Dyed with *Vermillion* on the other; the Pulp is very fine, and its Juice very sweet and Pleasant. They are eaten with pleasure from *December*, till *February* and *March*. We must not give it time to grow wrinkled; because then it is insipid, and loses the taste. 'Tis a very pretty Apple.



*La Pome d' Api*

This *Apple* is of an extraordinary piercing and lively Colour, It begins to be good as soon as it has no Green left, neither towards its Stalk, nor towards its Crown; which happens pretty often in the Month of *December*, and then it may be eaten greedily at a Chop, with its Coat all on; for among all other *Apples*, there is none that has so fine and delicate a Skin as this; for its scarce perceivable in the eating, and contributes much to the agreableness found in them. It lasts from *December* till *March* and *April*. And is wonderful good all that time without any manner of disagreeable smell; but on the contrary has a certain little touch of a most delicious Perfume. The Pulp extraordinary fine. It's a great increaser, and certainly may be commended for a very pretty *Apple*; it has likewise this farther Advantage; that it never wrinkles, nor loses its charming Colour.

*The Ladies  
Apple.*

*La Violette.*

Is of a whitish, Ground Colour, a little speckled in those parts which are from the Sun, but marked, or rather striped with a good lovely deep Red on the Sunny side. The Colour of its Pulp is very white, and very fine and delicate, having a Juice extremely sweet and sugar'd, leaving no Earthiness or Lees behind it; so that assuredly 'tis an admirable *Apple*, to be eaten as soon as 'tis gather'd, and continues good till *Christmas*, beyond which time it will not reach.

*The Vio-  
lent Apple.*

*The*



*The black Ice Apple.*

This is of the size and shape of an ordinary *Pippin*, of a shining dark red Colour, it keeps till *April*, and has always a tang of a Green taste.

*The Cosmetts.*

Are a sort of *Calvils*, which keep till *February*. Their Juice very sower, Stalk long and small.

*Of Vines,*

*The White Muscat ; or, Muscattel. Also the Red and the Black Muscat.*

**T**H E *White Muscat* is clear, firm, yellow, hard and crackling, Juice sweet, sugard and perfum'd ; it's an excellent Fruit, its Berry round and middle size. There is also the *Red* and the *Black Muscat*, but the *White* is the best.

*Chasselas ; or Bar sur-Aube : Three sorts of them.*

This is otherwise call'd the *Bar-sur-Aube*. It's a very sweet *Grape*, produceth large Clusters, and its Grain or *Berry* is large and crackling ; it keeps longer than any other *Grape*, and gives great satisfaction when all others are gone. There are Three sorts, the *White*, the *Red*, and the *Black*, whereof the *White* is best.

*The Long Muscat.*

The *Long Muscat*, or *Pas Musque*, requires more heat of the Sun to bring it to perfection, than the *Muscats* before mention'd. Corinthian



Corinthian. *Two sorts.*

The *White Corinthian* is a very sweet Grape, the Bunches are small and long, and its Grains or Berries small and sticking close together, and have no Stones. There is also the *Red Corinthian*, in shape like the former, but does not excel it in goodness.

*The Bourdelais, call'd at Paris the Verjuice Grape.*

Is a large white longish Grape, grows in great large Clusters, and almost never comes to Maturity; and consequently good only for *Sweet Meats*, or to make *Verjuice* with. Its Leaves are us'd much to garnish Dishes with in October.

*The Cioutat.*

The Fruit very much resembles the *Chasselas* in Colour, Bigness, and Taste, only the Leaf of the *Cioutat* is dented all about the edges, like *Parsly*, and seems to bear more fruit than the *Chasselas*, but the *Chasselas* is better.

*The early, or, forward Grape.*

It's a sort of a black *Morillon*, and takes Colour very early, which makes it seem to be ripe long before it is. The Skin is very rough, and when 'tis ripe, the Grape is very sweet. It ripens commonly at the very beginning of July. It's but little worth.

There are many other Varieties of Grapes, as the *Anana Grape*, which ripens in the *Indies*, and the *Pergolese*, The *Passe Musgue*, and all other principal sorts of Grapes, ripen even in the open Air in *Italy*; but it's not so in *France*, where none of them arrive to any tolerable Ripeness,



## Of Figs

**F**IGS bear twice a year viz. first in *July* and *August*, and are usually call'd *Fig-Flowers*; these are worth little, because they have gone through all the Cold, and all the Rain in the Spring, which spoils their delicious and excellent Taste.

The other are ripe in *September* and *October*, which being form'd in the best Season of the Year, and nourished with a Juice well concocted, renders them far more excellent than the former.

There are several sorts of *Figs*, but there's only Two of them that are really good, viz.

*Great white long Fig.*

The *great white long Fig* is in Perfection about the end of *Autumn*, has an exquisite Taste, and does not easily chap.

*Great white round Fig.*

The *great white round Fig* is a greater Bearer than the former, and almost as good, but apt to chap and gape towards the Head with wide Clefts, and thereby looseth much of its Sweetness and Perfume; it's the great Rains that occasion it to crack. Ripe with the former.

Some other Varieties of *Figs*.*Black Fig.*

It's very long, and pretty big, of a dark red Colour, but not quite so red within as without; it's



very much sugar'd, but somewhat dryer than the White ones.

*Great yellow Fig.*

It's a little Red and Flesh-colour'd within; bears much Fruit in *Autumn*, but not very delicate.

*Great Violet Fig.*

There are two sorts, the long and the flat; but their Pulp is close, and good for little.

*Green Fig.*

It has a very long Stalk, a Vermillion Pulp, pretty sweet, and well sugar'd, but produceth very little Fruit.

*La Medot.*

It's Yellow within and without.

*Black Fig.*

This differs from the *Black Fig* before mention'd, its Pulp being red.

*Small white Fig.*

Its Taste is rather faint than sugar'd; 'tis call'd also the *Hasting* or *forward Fig*, because it ripens a short time before the others.

*Little Berjassotte.*

It's of a dark Violet Colour, very delicate, but bears little Fruit.

*Angelique*



*Angelique Fig.*

It's of a Violet Colour, and long, but not very big, the Pulp red, and reasonably good.

## CHAP. V.

*How to make the best use of the Walls in every Garden.*

**A**Mong the *Fruit* and *Kitchen-Gardens* which are treated of, there are some that are entirely inclosed on all sides with *Walls*, and some that are so but in part; some again that are without any at all; as for these last, they are to be pitied: But the Condition of the *Gardens* we have to do with, for many good reasons require to be wall'd quite about,

As for the first, they have at least three Expositions, it being not possible they should have fewer; and regularly they have four: Those which have but three, are *Gardens* that are Triangular, which are pretty rare: that being a cramp'd and forc'd Figure, which ought to be avoided. As to those that have four *Walls*, they are of a square Figure, which is the commonest, as well as the fairest and most convenient.

There are likewise some that are *Pentagonal* and *Hexagonal*, which are not very disagreeable for the planting of *Wall-Trees*; yet are not very accountable, they being attended with many Inconveniencies; and perplex *Gard'ners*, who are thereby hindred from forming any sightly Squares in their *Kitchen-Garden's*. And besides, the making of *Gardens* into those unusual Figures, is much more chargeable, than to make them simply and plainly square; and yet, when all's

done,



done, tho' they may have more *Walls*, yet they can have no more distinct *Exposition* than a plain Square; for let us do what we can, it's impossible to produce any more than these four, viz. *East, West, North, and South.*

Now in Terms of *Gard'ning*, we call *Expositions*, every Wall that enjoys the *Aspect, Aspect*, and kindly Reflection of the Rays of the Sun, during a certain time of the Day, in a different manner from another *Wall* not in the same Position: Thus we call an *Eastern Exposition*, a Wall that is eyed by the Sun the half of the Day; that is, from its rising 'till Noon; and that a *Westerly Exposition*, upon which the Sun shines the second half of the Day, which begins immediately after Noon, and continues 'till Sun setting. That which we call a *Southern Exposition*, is that which the Sun constantly shines upon longer than either of the Two former; and there are some *Gardens* that are so advantageously turned, that one of their *Walls* is almost all the Day cherished with the Sun Beams.

Having explained the Three good *Expositions*, it's no hard matter to conclude, that the unhappy *Northerly Exposition*, is that which enjoys the Sun only during that little time in which the *Southerly* one has him not; the Portion of those of the *North* then, is to enjoy from the Equinox of *March*, to that of *September*, the earliest Rays of the Sun that appear above our Horizon; that is to say, to be shin'd upon betimes in the Morning, and that sometimes for an Hour or two, and sometimes for three or four, and sometimes they have a short view of the Sun towards the Evening, but very often none at all.

It follows from thence, that there is no *Wall* that has not at least some little glance of the Sun once a day, and that is a Favour not to be undervalued.



The Sun never begins to shine upon one *Wall*, but he shines upon two at the same time. When he rises, he ordinarily shines at once upon the *Northern Wall*, and part of the *Eastern*; and as soon as ever the progress of his Course carries him out of sight of that of the *North*, he insensibly extends his Beams to that of the *South*, yet so, as not for a good while to quit that of the *East*, but shining upon both at once. In the same manner also, he leaves not off shining on the *Eastern Wall*, but in order to advance himself by little and little towards the *Western Exposition*, and to continue in the mean while his favourable Aspect to the *Southerly Wall*: So that those two *Walls* are likewise at the same time gratified with his cherishing Rays.

Thus having explain'd what is meant in Terms of Gardening, by *Expositions*, any Person may easily judge of those he has in his own *Garden*, whether it be wall'd quite about, or only in part.

The better the *Ground* is, and the higher the *Wall*, the greater number of *Trees* may be applied to them; that is, we may place them nearer to one another, and by this Means order them so, that between two which we may reserve to garnish the lower part of the *Wall*, there may be always one to shoot up and garnish the upper part, that so the upper and lower parts of our *Fruit Walls* may be both garnished at once, and consequently yield us *Fruit* so much the sooner, and in greater Quantity. So on the contrary, the lower the *Walls* are, so much the farther the *Trees* are to be placed one from another, and those Distances must still be more enlarged where the *Ground* is very rich, than when it is but indifferently qualified.

Our Design in planting *Wall-Trees*, is indeed to have so much the fairer *Fruit*, but still more cheifly to secure the greater Store of it; but *Trees* do not infallibly yeild *Fruit*, unless it be upon feeble *Branches*;

and



and therefore we shall have no *Fruit* upon our *Wall-Trees*, unless we contrive it so, that we may have some feeble *Branches* on them : And if the *Trees* be vigorous, as they are commonly in good Soils, they cannot produce any *feeble Branches*, unless they be allowed a great deal of room, to spread out to the best advantage all those that are fit to bear, because that supposing they be planted too near one another, and the *Walls* not be high enough, they must necessarily be *prun'd* short, or else they will shoot above the *Wall*, and consequently will cease to be *Wall-Trees* ; or else they will so entangle their *Branches* one with another, that they will make a very disagreeable Confusion. So that if then they be curb'd in that manner, if we leave them not *Branches* of some considerable Thickness and Length, all the young *Shoots* they produce will be always thick, and bear no *Fruit*.

As no *Walls* of Inclosure ought to be less than seven or eight Foot high, so likewise it is not convenient to desire *Walls* in a good *Exposition* of above fifteen or sixteen Foot high.

Reader, you are desired to observe, that what is material in *Monsieur La Quintinye*, from the end of his second Book, to the end of the Fifteenth of this Part, consisting of *Pears, Apples, Peaches, Plums, Figs, Apricots, Cherries, &c.* is now comprehended in the precedent Chapters of this Part ; the Abridgers thinking it most convenient for good Order, and Method's sake, to place all the *Fruits* successively We proceed now to the sixteenth Chapter.



## CHAP. XVI.

*What good Conditions are required in each Fruit-Tree, to qualifie it to be chosen and preserv'd to some good place in a Fruit Garden.*

**O**UR Garden being form'd, dunged, accommodated, divided, and, in fine, ready for *Planting*, and every Gentleman knowing what number of *Trees* he needs, according to the bigness of his *Garden*, and having also resolv'd upon the Choice of the Kinds, and what proportion of each kind he is to plant, with respect to the quality of his *Ground*, and to the several Seasons of the Year; it is now our business to chuse such Stocks of *Trees* as are fair, and so well qualified as to deserve to be planted, because of the hopeful Promises they make us of answering our Expectations.

And here we ought to have to do with *Gard'ners* that are in Reputation, to be knowing, exact, and faithful; for otherwise we run a great Danger of being grossly deceiv'd in the kinds of our *Fruit*, and especially of *Peach-Trees*, because they all much resemble one another, both in *Leaf* and *Bark*, excepting the *Troy-Peaches*, the forward or *Avant-Peaches*, which are distinguished by some more visible differences: For which reason it is not advisable to take any *Trees* of suspicious or unknown *Gard'ners*, or that are of ill Reputation, how cheap a Bargain soever they may offer them; such an Error as that being of two great a Consequence to be ventur'd on at what rate soever.

*Tree-Stocks* then are to be chosen, either whilst they are yet growing in the *Nursery Gardens*, or after they are pull'd up, and brought from thence: In both cases we must consider first the Figure of each *Tree*; Secondly, its Bigness, or Thickness; Thirdly, in what



what manner they are fashion'd and compos'd; and if they be already pull'd up, we must take special notice of their *Roots*, and of the *Bark*; both of their *Bodies* and *Branches*.

---

## CHAP XVII.

### *How to Choose Trees as they stand in the Nursery-Gardens.*

**I**F we chuse our *Trees* in the *Nursery Gardens*, which 'twere always to be wished we could; and that about the middle of *September* to mark out the *Trees* we chuse and pretend to carry off. Which cannot be always done, because of the too great distance we are sometimes from the places where the *Choice Nurseries* are. Yet if we can go to the places, we must only fix upon those that have shot vigorously that year, and that appear sound, both in their *Leaves* and at the end of their young *Shoots*, and by their smooth and shining *Bark*; so that if any *Trees* have no *Shoots* of that year's growth, but what are very feeble, or perhaps have none at all; if any before the Season, or the fall of the Leaf, have all their *Leaves* lesser, and more starv'ing than they should be and the extremity of their young *Shoots* black and mortified, or their *Bark* rough and wrinkled, and full of Moss; and if *Pears*, *Apples*, or *Plum-Trees* be Canker'd, if they be *Stone-Fruit*, and are found to have Gum either about their *Body* or *Roots*, all these are so many Marks of those which are to reject.

As to the manner how *Trees* should be fashion'd; that is for all sorts of *Dwarfs*, or *Wall-Trees*, it is better they should be straight, consisting only of one *Stem*, and one *Graft*, than to be compos'd of two or three *Grafts*, or several *Branches*. The new *Shoots* that will shoot out, round about the single bo-



dy of the *Tree*, when top'd and new planted, being more fit and plyable to be turn'd as we would have them to make a fair *Tree*; than if they consisted of two *Sticks* or *Branches*; because we cannot be assur'd, from what part of those old *Branches*, of the new-planted *Tree*, the new *Shoots* will sprout; and because commonly they grow so confusedly and interwoven one among another, that we are forc'd to cut them quite away, which is time lost, both for the *Advancement* of the *Beauty* of it, and of its producing *Fruit*.

These *Trees* ought to have good *Eyes* or *Buds*, which may promise good *Branches*; and especially in *Peach-Trees*; so that we must never take those whose *Eyes* are seemingly put out; because it's very rare that any issue does proceed from such: Likewise if there be *Grafts* or *Inoculations*, it will be best to take away the weakest, and to preserve that which is strongest and best plac'd.

As for *Standards*, which are planted in the full open *Air*, they require no regular exactness in their *Beauty*, and therefore may be planted with some *Branches* about their tops, which may be shortned when they are planted.

## CHAP. XIX.

### *How to prepare a Tree for Planting.*

Here are two things to be prepar'd in planting of a *Tree*, viz. The *Head* and the *Root*.

As to the *Head*, there is but little mystery in ordering that, either in *Standard* or *Dwarf Trees*; it being needful only to remember these two *Points*.

*First*, As we prejudice a *Tree* when we pluck it up, by weakning it thereby, and abating its vigour and



activity for some time; so we must therefore disburthen its *Head*, proportionable to the strength and activity we take from it by recovering it to a new place, and retrenching some of its *Roots*.

*Secondly*, We must be mindful to leave its *Body* no higher than is Convenient for the use the *Tree* is design'd for: Some being to produce their Effect very low, as *Dwarfs* and *Wall-Trees*, which must be kept pretty short; and others to produce theirs very high, as *Standards*, which therefore must be left of a suitable height,

As to the *Roots*, cut of all the *Fibres*, as near as you can to the place from which they sprung; unless it be a *Tree* that is to be planted again the very moment it is pluckt up, without leaving it the least time that may be out of the Ground; otherwise the Air turns all the young *Roots* or *Fibres* black, and consequently spoils them. But this can never be done, except we pull a *Tree* up, and *Plant* it again in another place in the same *Garden*. And for the better preservation of it, we may take along with the *Root* some of its former *Mould* that hangs next about it; taking care in planting it, to place and spread out well that hairy or fibrous part.

As to those that have been taken up some time, the *Fibres* being all taken away, we shall be the better able to see the bad ones, to take them quite off; and to discern the good ones to save them, and to regulate the cutting them their exact length; and when we find the *Roots* of any *Tree* a little or ought too much dried, they may be steeped seven hours in water before they are planted,

In speaking of good and bad *Roots*, it may be thought, that the meaning of these is only such as are broken, or unbarked; rottten, or dry: But yet there is something of greater Consequence, which



is, that every *Nursery Tree* shoots out sometimes ei her all good *Roots*, or bad ones, or both good ones and bad ones at the same time; which comes to pass as follows.

A *Tree* planted with the preparations recommended, if it takes, must *Shoot* forth new ones, or else it dies; all its old *Roots* being of no service to it: And of those new ones some are fair and thick, and some are feeble and small: but of these *Roots* we are only to esteem those which are fresh and new, and well plac'd.

All these young ones are to be kept short, proportionable to their length; the longest in *Dwarfs*, of what bigness soever it be, which is commonly not very big, never exceeding above eight or nine Inches; nor much above a foot in *Standards*. We may leave a greater length to the *Roots* of *Mulberries* and *Almonds*; because those of the first are very short, and those of the second dry and hard, and therefore will be in danger of perishing if they be cut too short.

After we have fixed the length of our biggest *Roots*, the length of two, three, or four Inches will serve for the lesser and feeble ones, proportionably to the bigness of each, the least always to be the shortest; for this is to be done contrary to the method of *Pruning Branches*.

One single rank or story of *Roots* is enough; and two or three good *Roots*, when they are well plac'd round the foot of the *Tree*, are better than twenty middling ones.



## CHAP. XX.

*When and how to Plant Trees, when ready fitted and prepared for it*

**A**T the Season for *Planting*, which is commonly from the end of *October* to the middle of *March*; in order to *Plant*, we must always chuse dry and mild weather, without any regard to the age of the Moon; rainy weather being apt to reduce the Mould to a Mortal-like consistence, which causes it not to settle so well about the *Roots*, leaving some hollownes between the *Earth* and some parts of the *Roots*.

And though all these Months are equally fit for planting, so that it may seem the sooner it be done the better; yet as it is best to *Plant* in a light Soil presently after *Michaelmas*, so it is safest in a cold and moist Soil to *Plant* at the end of *February*, because the *Trees* in these last can do nothing all the Winter, and may more likely be spoil'd there, than be able to preserve themselves; whereas in lighter *Grounds* they may begin even at that very same *Autumn* to shoot out some small *Roots*, which is a great advancement to them the following Spring,

Having opened the holes, and laid every *Tree* to its place, we must take care to sink our *Trees* about half a foot, that is, the extremity of the lowest *Root* of the *Tree* is to be but half a foot deep in the *Earth*; because the *Ground* will sink at least half a foot, and it is better to plant too high than too low. At the end of some Months the *Trees* will be sunk to the depth of about a foot into the *Earth*, which is the justest measure we can assign them in that respect. *Trees* planted deeper almost always dying in a few years.

We must likewise be mindful to turn their principal *Roots* as much as may be to the good Soil, And tho'



tho' all *Trees* design'd for *Dwarfs* ought to stand upright upon their feet after they are planted; yet if the Disposition of their *Roots* naturally incline to spread round, and require that the *Tree* should be a little flooping, to give that good Situation to its *Roots* which they ought to have, it must be allow'd.

If we are to plant *Trees* along by the side of a Walk or an Alley, we must take care to avoid turning the principal *Roots* towards the Alley? as also in planting of *Wall-Trees* to have the like care in placing the *Roots*; not that any of them may spend their Vigour in vain against the Walls.

*Standard Trees* must be planted a little deeper than others; that is, about a full foot deep in the Ground; and whereas trampling is not good over small *Trees* to make them sink too deep, so it may be requir'd to press the Ground against the feet of these *Standards*, to fasten them, and make them the firmer to resist the violence of the Winds.

After the Planting of every *Tree*, if you have the conveniency of a Dung-hill, it will be of very good use to put a bed of three Inches thick of *Dung* over every *Tree*, and cover it over at the same time with a little Mold, to hide it from being seen, it being no handsome sight.

This bed of *Dung* is not so much to improve the Ground, which we suppose may be already prepar'd, as to hinder the burning heat of the Months of *April*, *May*, and *June*, from penetrating to their *Roots*.

But if *Dung* cannot be had, we may content ourselves for those first dangerous Months to cover the feet of our *Trees* with a bed of Green Weeds, Fern, &c. hindring any thing from growing there that may shade or cloud the young *Shoots*; and if it be a great Drought, as it often happens, a Pitcher of Water may be given to the *Root* of each *Tree* every fifteen days, during the three or four hot Months, making first a Circular Trench round the *Tree*, that  
the



the Water may pierce quite down to the *Roots* of the *Tree*; and when the Water is all imbib'd, fill up the *Trench* again, as it was before, with the rest of the *Ground*; but if the Season proves rainy, these waterings will not be necessary.

---

## CHAP. XXI.

### *How to order Trees planted for Reserves, in Ossier Cases or Baskets.*

**B**ECAUSE some *Trees* may happen to die, and yet as far as 'tis possible it is to be desired our *Plantation* should be completed the very first Year, therefore it will be requisite to prepare a greater number of *Trees* than we have actually need of, that we may always have some as 'twere in a *Body of Reserve* for that purpose, as we are filling up our *Plantations*, to plant some supernumerary *Trees* of every kind in *Ossier Cases* or *Baskets*; but more of *Stone* than of *Kernel-Fruit*, because the former most commonly are in greater hazard of dying than the others.

Accordingly we must chuse some good shady Place in our *Garden* to plant these *Trees* in *Baskets*, well ticketted, or at least set down carefully in our *Book*, according to the other both of their *Ranks*, and of the respective places allotted to them in those *Ranks*; that we may have recourse to them, if any *Tree* should happen to dye, or languish in its place; being desirous, if it be possible, to have our *Plantation* finish'd and completed according to our first modelling of it.

In order to which, we should keep a leaning Posture in the *Reservatory Baskets* that are design'd for the *Wall*, and in a streight and upright Posture in the said *Baskets* for those that are intended for *Dwarfs*; So that when we have occasion for either of them,  
we



we may the more commodiously remove and place them, *Basket* and all, so as the *Tree* may be every whit as well situated, as if it had been first planted there.

This Transporting of *Reserve-Trees* may be done 'till Midsummer; but before their Removal, we new water those *Trees* we design to transport, which probably will be the fairest we have, moving the *Earth* away neatly round about the *Basket*, for fear of breaking their *Roots*; in case they have shot any beyond the compass of their *Basket*. We must chuse rainy Weather to do it in, or at least mild and temperate Weather; and a time when the Sun is low, or a little after he is set, or a little before he rises: We must likewise be very careful not to shake the *Tree* in removing it, for fear of loosening it, which is very pernicious and often mortal.

When in removing of these *Trees* we perceive any of the *Roots* to be struck thro' the *Baskets*, we must in placing it be very careful to preserve the Points of those new *Roots*, place them well, and support them with good *Mould*, cover them immediately, and ram the *Earth* close against the *Basket*, and then water the *Ground* plentifully round the *Basket*, to make the *Earth* next to it cleave the closer against the *Basket*, so as there may remain no hollownells between.

On those Days when the Sun shines hot, we must cover the *Head* of the *Tree* with Straw *Skreens*, 'till such time as it begins to sprout, and then we may begin to take them off at night; but this last Precaution is not necessary, but when we see any new *Roots* sprout out of the *Baskets*, or when the *Tree* has been shaken and loosen'd. We must take great care not to expose any of the new *Roots* to the Air, otherwise they will presently grow black and die.

The Bigness of the *Baskets* must be in proportion to the *Roots* of the *Trees*, that about three Inches distance may be between the *Basket* and the longest  
of



of the *Roots*, in order to put good *Mould* therein.

The *Baskets* for *Standards* must be greater than for *Dwarfs*, and those for *Dwarfs* bigger than those for *Walls*.

A little cost will put our *Minds* at ease in this respect, and for want of that we lose much *Time* and *Pleasure* too.

Let us now proceed to the Master Work of Gard'ning, which is *Pruning*.

---

OF

---



---



---

O F  
FRUIT-GARDENS,  
A N D  
Kitchen-Gardens.

---



---

V O L. II. P A R T. IV.

---

CHAP. I.

*Definition of the Pruning of Trees.*

**P**RUNING is an Operation of Gard'ning for three Things which are to be done yearly to *Trees*, from betwixt the beginning of the *Month* of *November* to the end of *March*.

First, to take away all those *Branches* that are nought, or might be prejudicial either to the Abundance or Goodness of *Fruit*, as also to the Beauty of the *Tree*.

Secondly, To *preserve* all those that may be of good use to those *Trees*. And,

Thirdly, Prudently to *clip* those that are found too long, and not to cut any thing off those that have not too much *Length*.

And



And all this in order to make a *Tree* lasting, to beautify it, and at the same time dispose it soon to bear a great deal of fine and good *Fruit*.

By *Branches* that are nought, are meant those that are of *false Wood*, those that are decay'd by having yielded much *Fruit*, and those that are too small, or have no disposition to produce either *Wood* or *Fruit*.

By *Branches* that may be prejudicial either to the Beauty of the *Tree*, Abundance or Goodness of the *Fruit*; are meant, such as cause a Confusion, or shadow the *Fruit*, as well as those that take part of the *Sap* of the *Tree*, when it is over-charg'd with *Wood*, compar'd to it's Vigour.

By *Branches* that may be of good use, are meant all those that are so well condition'd, as to be fit to contribute to the Beautiful Figure of the *Tree*, and infallibly to produce *Fruit*.

By *Branches* that are too long, are meant such as exceed nine or ten Inches in length, and so consequently want to be shortned; such are all the thick *Branches* which we call *Branches* for *Wood*; and some of the small ones, which we call *Branches* for *Fruit*.

By *Branches* that have not too much length, are meant certain little *Branches*, which being of a moderate thickness, have *Buds* at the ends of them, or are in a disposition of having some the following Year, and yet are strong enough to bear the *Fruits* they are to produce without breaking.

This so material distinction in point of *Branches*, shall be more particularly explain'd in the Chapters that treat of the manner of *Pruning*.



*Of the Reasons, and Time of Pruning.*

**T**HE Reasons for which *Pruning* is us'd are two; the first and cheif is, the speedy getting of a bundance of fine and good *Fruit*: The second informs us that *Pruning* serves to make *Trees* in all Seasons appear more agreeable to sight, than they would do if they were not *prun'd*.

The Satisfaction of this last Point depends wholly upon the well understanding, and well proportioning the *Figure* which a skilful hand is capable of giving to each *Tree*: And as to the abundance of fine and good *Fruit*, it depends, First, upon the knowledge the *Gard'ner* is to have of every Branch in particular, to know those that are good from those that are not.

Secondly, It depends upon the judicious Distinction which is to be made among the *Branches*, wholly to take out all those that are bad or useleis, and carefully to preserve all the good ones.

It's very good to prune at the end of *February*, and at the beginning of *March*; tho' one may begin to *prune* as soon as the *Leaves* are fallen off the *Trees*, at the end of *October*, at at least about the middle of *November*, which may be continued afterwards for the whole Winter, And having commonly three sorts of *Trees* to prune, one too weak, the other too vigorous, and the others that are in as good case as can be desired, it will be proper to prune some sooner, and others later; for the weaker and more languishing a *Tree* is, the sooner it ought to be *prun'd*, to ease it of those *Branches* that are noisom and useleis: So likewise the more vigorous a *Tree* is, the longer the *pruning* of it may be deferr'd.

But it is not advisable to stay 'till the end of Winter, 'till *February* or *March*; because that is the greatest



est time of hurry, for all manner of Works relating to *Gard'ning* all comes at once, at the entrance of Spring, the Tillage of the whole *Garden*, the sowing of most *Kitchen-Plants*, the budding of *Artichokes*, the making of different *Beds*, the cleansing of the *Walks*, so that it would be a strange Confusion to have at the same time the most considerable of all Works to do : it being the only one in which no small Faults can be committed,

The Author here speaks of extreme hard Frosts, such as have not been since the Memory of Man, and in those Seasons he *prun'd* his *Peach Trees* before the great Cold came on, without finding the least Inconveniency by it.

The proper times being regulated for *Pruning*, we shall now proceed farther.

'The fourth Chapter treats of nothing material, more than what's spoken of in the second : Therefore we proceed to the fifth.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the Idea of Beauty which Dwarfs require.*

THE Beauty of *Dwarfs* consists in a low *Stem*, an open *Head*, free from thick *Branches* in the middle, round in it's Circumference, and equally furnish'd with good *Branches* on the sides.

The height of the *Head* of these *Dwarfs* depends on the Age of the *Trees*, being low in those that are young and rising in all according as they grow, but not to exceed above six or seven Foot ; it being better those *Trees* should grow in extent of Circumference and Breadth, than to let them rise high : The pleasure of Sight, which dreads whatever limits it too much, particularly in *Gardens* ; besides the Per-



secution of the Winds, which easily beats down the *Fruit* of *high-Trees*, is a Rule to fix to that Measure.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Idea of Beauty which Wall-Trees require, together with the Maxims of Palisading.*

**A**S Fulness is the greatest fault in *Dwarf*, so is Thinness the greatest Imperfection in *Wall-Trees*.

But tho' the *Wall-Trees* are to be full, it is not meant that they should be full of ill *Branches*, old, worn, or useless: So on the orther hand in desiring the *Dwarfs* to be open in the middle, they should not be empty, like the inside of a Glass.

In the Beauty of *Wall-Trees*, 'tis very disagreeable to see their *Branches* crossing one another, which must be avoided as much as is possible; but to cure the defect of Thinness, it may be allowed to cross some particular great *Branches* which are alone the foundation of the Beauty of the *Tree*; but not to cross one great *Branch* over another, for that would occasion *Barrenness*; but to cross a great *Branch* over a small one, or a small one over a great one, since the small ones are suppos'd to be those for bearing *Fruit*; and therefore when they have yielded their *Fruit*, they are look'd upon but as worn out *Branches*; by which means the defect of Crossing may be remedied



First Branches produced  
nearly plain

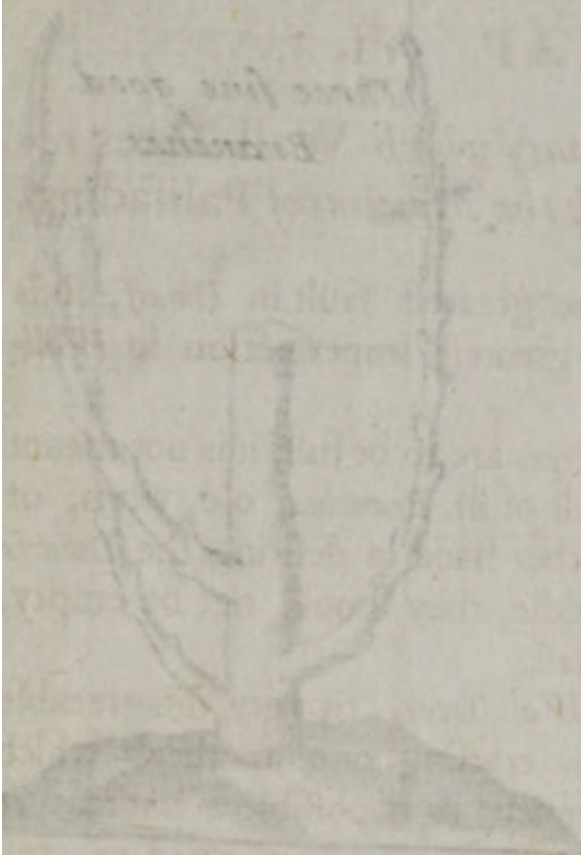
2



Two fine good  
Branches

continued by a tree

3



Three fine good  
Branches

5



Five fine good branches  
with some small ones





*Different Situations of the first Branches produced newly planted*

*sometimes by a Tree*

1



2



3



4



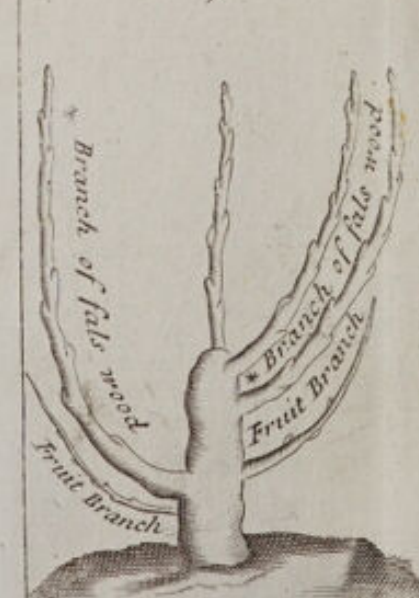
5



6



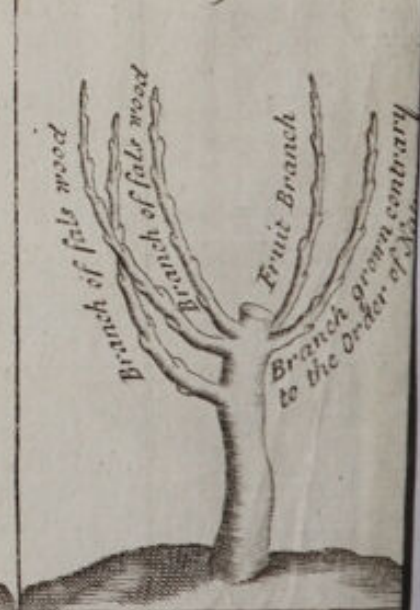
7



8



9





## CHAP. VII.

*Of Branches in General.*

**R**ightly to understand *Branches*, Five material things must be observ'd.

*First*, They compose a considerable part of the *Tree*, they sprout out of two parts of it; some shoot directly out of the main *Body*, which are the first, and may be call'd the *Elders*, or *Mockers*; their Number is but few. And the other afterwards are produced by them. The Number of the last are infinite, for successively in their turns they become every one *Mother Branches* to many others.

*Secondly*, From the *Body* of every *Branch*, when the *Tree* is in a good case, there yearly grows new ones on the Extremities of it, more or less according to the strength or weakness of that *Branch*, which is call'd a *Mother Branch* in Relation to the new ones it produceth.

*Thirdly*, Observe that these new *Branches* grow in two different manners; the one in a *Regular Order*, which is the best, most common, and most frequent; the other in an *Irregular Order*, which is the least common, and least frequent.

That order which is most common, and best for the Production of the new *Branches*, when they produce more than one, is that tho' both the one and the other at the same time issue from the extremities of one that is more ancient, whether *Prun'd* or not, they are notwithstanding regularly all of a different thickness and length.

For every one of the highest, are both thicker and longer than those that are immediately under them, drawing nearer to the body; that is when it produces more than one, for when the *Mother Branches* bring forth but one, the *Daughter* or its production at th



end of Summer proves as large as the *Mother*, and is very good; when the *Mother* yields two, that which is grown from the extremity which is call'd the first, or highest, is thicker and longer than that which is immediately beneath it, which is call'd the *Second* or lower. In the same manner, when the *Mother branch* produces three, four, five, &c. As the first, that is the highest, is thicker and longer than the second; so the second in the same manner exceeds the third; the third the fourth, and so by the Degrees, what ever quantity of new *Branches* the *Mother branch* may produce; as it appears by the Figures.

This being granted, 'tis easie to judge, that the order which is least common, and worst in the production of new *Branches*, is, when the common order is inverted. So that there are *Weak ones* in the place where there ought to be *Thick ones*, and on the contrary there are *Large ones* where they ought to be *Weak*, and whereas perhaps there ought to be none; as it appears by the Figure of *Branches* mark'd with a \*.

*Fourthly*, It is requisite to know, that as that greater or smaller Number of *Branches* depends upon the force or weakness of the *Mother-branch*, it will be fit to call those *Strong* which are *Thick*, and to call those *Weak* that are *Small*.

*Fifthly*, This is the most Material point; that among all the *Branches*, whether strong or weak, there are some which have the real Character of *Good*, of which a great many must be Preserv'd; there are likewise some which have the real Character of *Good*, of which a great many must be Preserv'd; there are likewise some which have the real Character of *bad ones*, most of which ought to be expell'd. Let us now observe how to distinguish the one certainly from the other.



First Branches produced sometimes by a  
 Tree newly planted

2



3



5



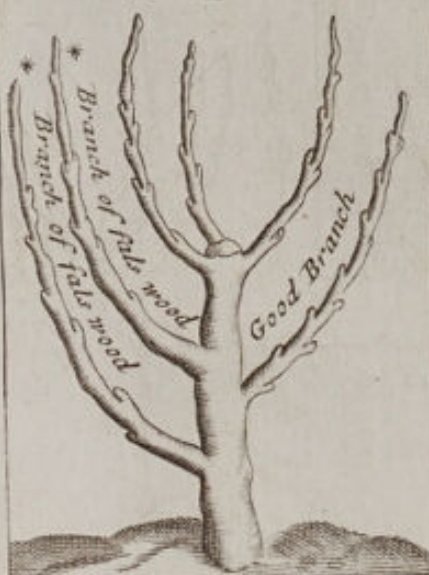
6





*Different Situations of the first Branches produced sometimes by a Tree newly planted*

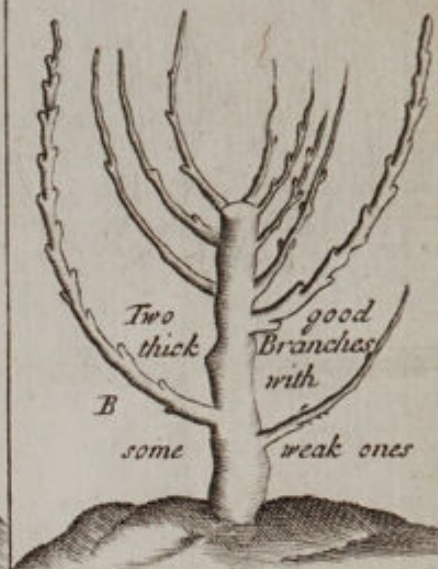
1



2



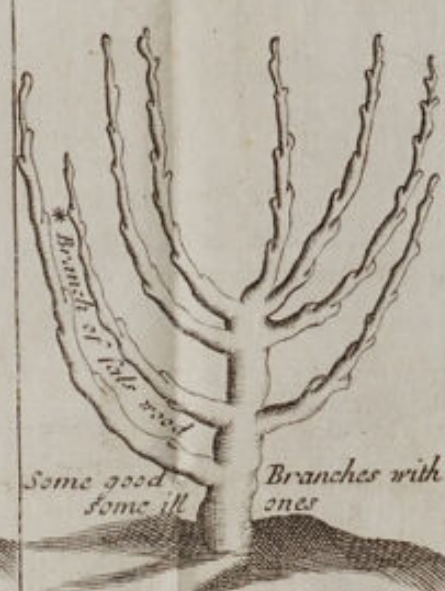
3



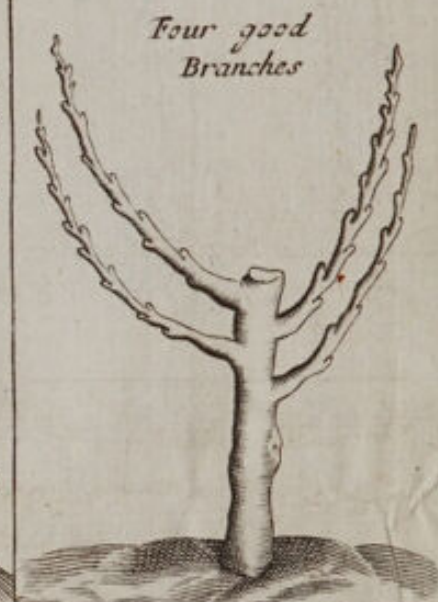
4



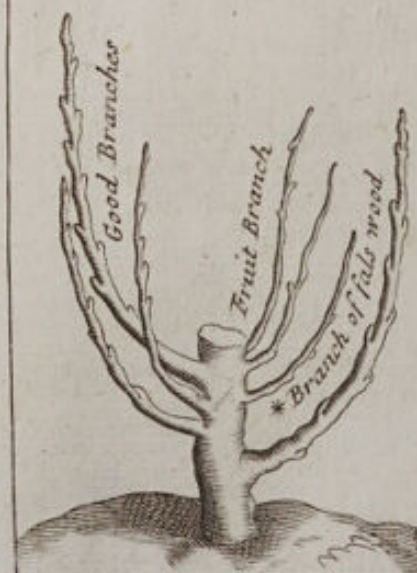
5



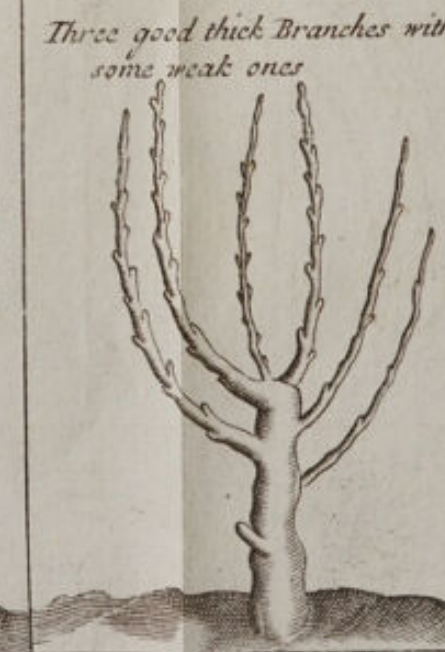
6



7



8



9





## C H A P. VIII.

*To know the difference of good and ill Branches.*

THE mark of *Good Branches* requires that the *Eyes* in the whole extent should be *thick*, well fed and very close one to another; whereas the mark of the *bad ones*, is, that in the lower part of the *Branches* their *Eyes* are flat, ill fed, and hardly form'd, and very distant the one from the other; as you will see by the Figure A B in which the ill ones are marked \*

There are likewise small weak *Branches*, which are term'd as *bad ones*, which are sometimes so excessive weak, that like sapless *Branches* they are incapable of bearing *Fruit*, or at least of nourishing and sustaining the weight of their *Fruit*; they must be wholly taken off our *Fruit-Trees*, and especially from the *Dwarfs*; for which *Branches* there is no occasion, for to do well we must suffer nothing there that is not *Good*.

The good weak *Branches* are those, which being well plac'd, and of a mean thickness and length, are proper and certain Instruments to produce speedily, beautiful, and good *Fruit*; provided the Frosts spoil nothing, either while they are in *Blossom*, or soon after they are knit, For such *Branches* seldom fail of producing *Blossom-buds*, and cannot serve to any other end but yielding *Fruit*, unless they happen to have certain over-flowings of *Sap*, to thicken them in an extraordinary manner, and convert them into *Branches* for wood; which happens sometimes in all manner of *Trees*, particularly to such as have been ill *prun'd*.

The good strong *Branches*, of which the principal use is, first to begin, and then to continue to give the *Trees* a proper Figure, are particularly employ'd in producing yearly on their extremities other good



new *Branches* ; some strong, and others weak ; as appears by the Figure As.

To that end it is very material to preserve the good weak ones for *Fruit* ; it is likewise very necessary to manage prudently the strong ones ; to which purpose it is requisite to preserve on the extremities of every old *Branch*, some of those new strong ones that are grown there ; but that commonly extends to those a small number, as to one only ; but sometimes the *Mother-Branch* being extremely vigorous it may extend to two or three.

There is chiefly a great deal of Skill requir'd to take away intirely all the useless *Branches*, whether it be because they are worn or spent, or because they have no good qualifications : And the same concerning that those are to be preserv'd, to know how to regulate their length proportionable to their force, and vigour of the whole *Tree* ; so that afterwards, every one of them may be able to produce on its extremity, just as many good *Branches* as are necessary either for the *Fruit*, or for the perfecting the beauty of the *Tree*, or for preserving it when it is establish'd : And this is what we call *Pruning*.

---

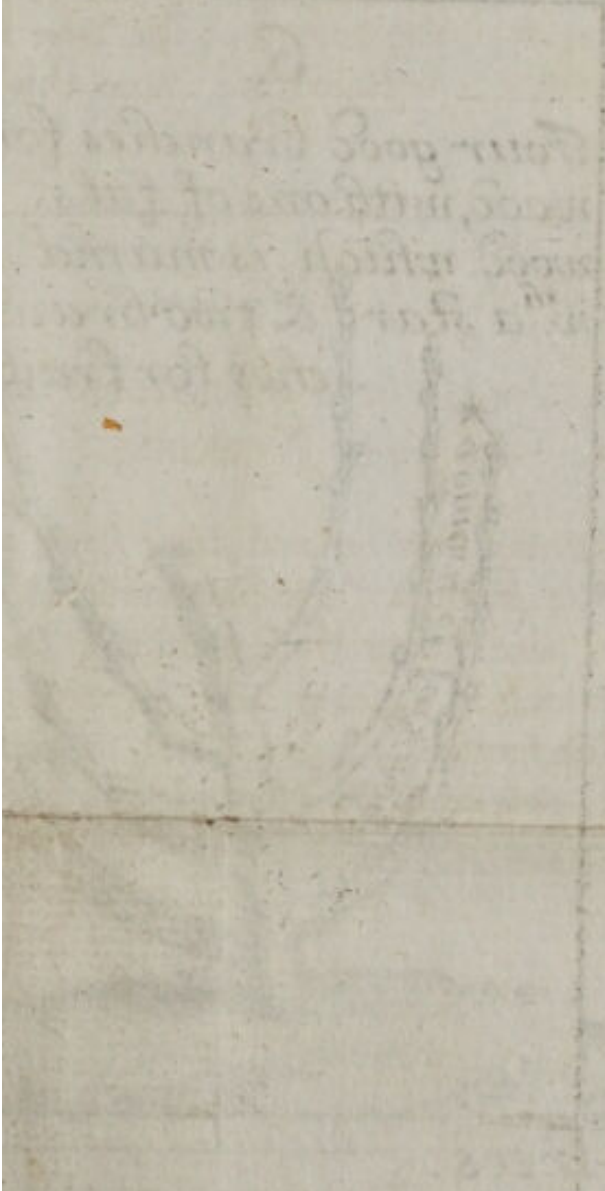
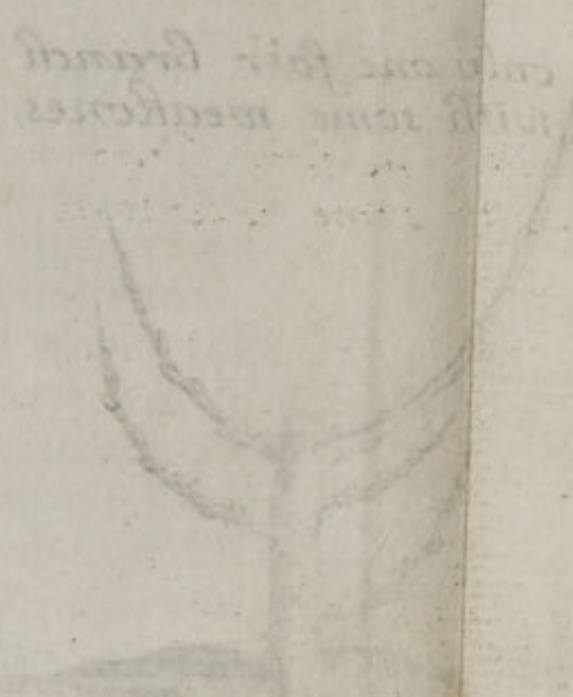
## CH A. P. IX.

### *Of the explanation of the Words Strong and Strength, Weak and Weakness.*

**I**N speaking of *strong Branches* and *strong Roots*, are meant those that are thick ; and likewise speaking of *weak Branches*, are meant those that are small. Moreover in speaking of a *strong Tree*, is meant a *vigorous Tree* ; and in speaking of a *weak Tree*, is meant a *languishing Tree*, that is, a *Tree* that yields but very few *Shoots*, and for the most part are all small.

The







The Different Situations of the first branches Planted sometimes makes.

which a tree newly

1.

Three weak branches



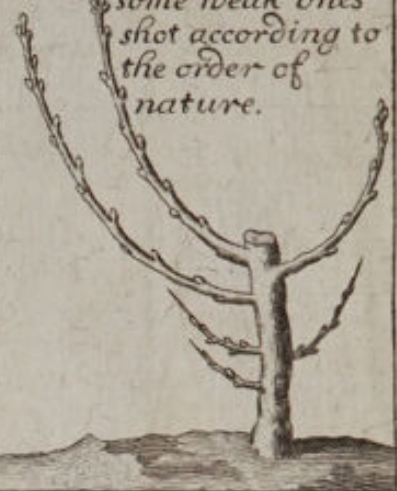
2.

only one fair branch with some weak ones.



3.

Three fair branches with some weak ones shot according to the order of nature.



4.

Three fair branches of the first year with two weak ones according to y. order of nature.



5.

Three fair & good branches with three small ones fit to yeild fruit.



6.

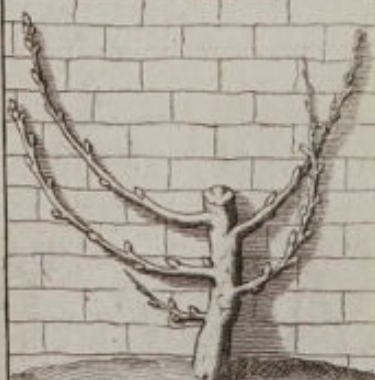
Four good branches for wood, with one of false wood, which is marked w. a star & two branches for fruit



Espaliers or Wall-fruit-Trees.

7.

Three fair branches with two weak ones



8.

Three fair branches with weak ones.



9.

Three fair & good branches with five weak ones





The Tenth Chapter is only of the *Tools* that are necessary for *Pruning*, and the manner of using them; and therefore may be omitted.

---

## CH A P. XI.

*Of the manner of pruning Trees, in the first Year of their being Planted*

A *Fruit-Tree*, of what kind soever, *Pear*, *Apple*, *Plum*, *Peach*, &c. which seem'd to promise all the good Qualifications requir'd in order to be plant-ed, and has been planted with all the Skill and Con-sideration which we have heretofore explain'd; this *Fruit-Tree*, from the Month of *March*, until the Months of *September* and *October* following, will ne-cessarily perform one of these four things: Either it will not shoot at all, or little, or it will shoot reason-ably, that is, one fine *Branch* or else it will shoot much, that is, two or three fine *Branches*, and perhaps more, as it appears by the *Figures*. We must exactly explain what is to be done in these four particulars.

---

## CH A P. XII, XIII, XIV, XV.

*Of the pruning of a Tree that has planted one Year.*

1 *st.* IF it has not sprouted at all, perhaps it may be dead, tho it does not seem to be so, by reason of some Greenness which discovers it self in cut-ting with the Knife; for it may seem alive at the *Head*, and yet be dead at the *Root*; however part of the *Head* may be dead, and the *Root* living; which is the principle of Life; but when it is perfectly dead,



there appears a Dryness or Blackness about the Graff. Such a *Tree* must be removed when you find it to be dead, and another put in its Room, at the first shower of Rain, provided it be not after the Month of *May*, or beginning of *June*, after which time it will not be safe to plant, 'till the return of the Season. For this design you should have *Trees* always in Baskets. In the mean time let us examine how this *Tree* happen'd to dye, that we may prevent it for the future.

If by violent Frosts, to cover the *Foot* in the Winter, as is heretofore explain'd in the Treatise of Plantations.

If by Heat in Summer, to cover it with short Grass, green Weeds, &c.

If for want of *Water*, the new one must be well water'd.

If for want of good *Mould*, put the fresh *Mould* there.

If by being shaken or loosen'd at the first sprouting, by waggish People, to set a *Fence* about it.

If by being planted too low in moist Ground, plant the other higher, and raise the Ground to it.

If from being shaded with large *Trees*, or by their *Roots* exhausting all the goodness of the *Earth*, these large *Trees* must be removed; and the worn out *Earth* taken away and fresh put in, without thinking to better it with *Dung*.

If Moles have shaken them, or Worms have gnawn them, they must be look'd for, and destroyed.

' If the *Stem* appears to be green, and the *Root* still alive, there may be some hopes, but not to recompence our Culture; therefore it may be order'd as a dead *Tree*, it being a great hazard whether ever it will complete our desire.

2dly. If this *Tree* shoots weak, small, and yellowish *Branches*, and sometimes accompanied with some *Fruit-buds*; and after have examined the *Roots* find some



of them defective, it's no more valuable than the former.

3<sup>dly</sup>. If it has produced one fine *Branch*, sufficiently thick, attended with some weak ones, we are to consider three things.

Whether it has shot from the extremity of the *Stem*, from the middle, or from the lower part.

If from the extremity, shorten the *Stem* of that Tree an Inch or two.

Thus in losing the Pleasure of a Year, we avoid the dissatisfaction of having a Tree too high in the *Stem*, and consequently it affords us a fine Figure.

But if this fine *Branch* has shot from the middle of the *Stem*, cut the *Stem* to that *Branch*, and shorten that *Branch* to four or five Eyes ; it being certain 'twill produce in the second Year, at least two fine *Branches* opposite to each other ; but this care must be taken to nail that *Branch* upright.

If this *Branch* has shot from the lower part of the *Stem*, it's very well plac'd, provided care be taken to keep it upright, which if it is not, the Tree grows awry, and never makes a beautiful Figure.

This *Branch* being cut at the same length which the *Stem* of the Tree was left at, undoubtedly it will produce fine *Branches*, towards the attaining of a beautiful Figure.

4<sup>thly</sup>. When this Tree has produced two fine *Branches*, or three or four, or more, with some weak ones among them ; it engages us to these Considerations.

1. To know whether that number of *Branches* be produc'd to our likeing ; that is, whether they grow round about some part of the *Stem*, whether at the top, in the middle, or in the lower part.

2. To know whether all those *Branches* are grown on one side, all above one another ; or whether in degrees, at a great distance one from another, tho' round about the *Stem* ; or if they are all grown from one



one and the same *Eye*, and likewise whether it be on the top, middle, or lower part of the *Stem*.

*Lastly*, To know whether all those *Branches* of themselves are dispos'd to open and spread, or all of them to keep close together in a confused manner.

These are almost all the different ways in which the first *Shoots* of every *Tree* new planted do form themselves, when it strikes Root.

In desiring of fine and good *Trees*, the great *Branches* are only to be preserv'd in this respect? as the only ones that can serve for the first Foundation, in case they be well plac'd

---

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the first pruning of a Tree that has produc'd two fine Branches, and both well plac'd.*

**W**HEN a *Tree* new planted has vigorously produc'd more than one fine *Branch*, with some weak ones among them? if it has on the top of the *Stem* two almost equally strong, and well plac'd, one on one side, and another on the other, nothing can hardly be desired better? the only thing is to shorten them all equally within the compass of five or six inches in length: But above all, you must take care that the two last *Eyes* of the extremity of each of these *Branches* so shortned, look on the right and on the left, upon the two bare sides, to the end that each of them producing at least two new ones, those four may be so well plac'd that they may be all preserv'd: And in order to that, If it be a *Dwarf*, they must all contribute to form the thin round which we desire; and if it be a *Wall tree*, to form the flat, and full round, which we likewise design.

It would be ill *Pruning*, if these two last *Eyes* look either on the inside of the *Dwarf* to fill it up, or on the



The different situations of the first Branches sometimes made by a Tree new planted

1

Only one fair Branch with many small ones



2

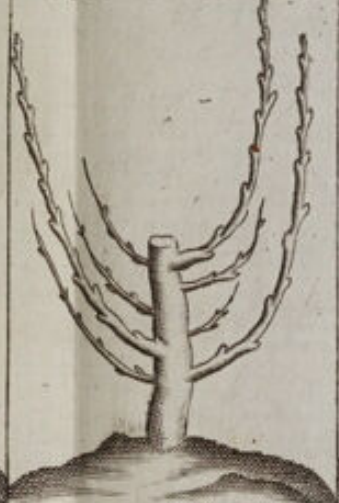
Two large Branches ill plac'd with some weak ones



Dwarfs

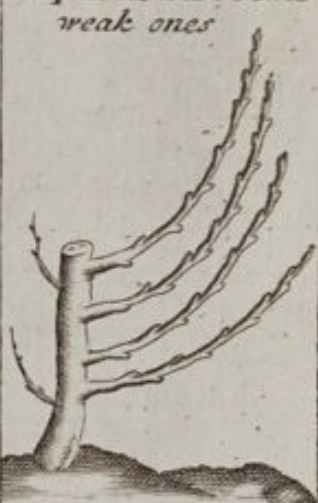
3

Three fair Branches with some weak ones



4

Four large Branches ill plac'd with some weak ones



5

All weak Branches



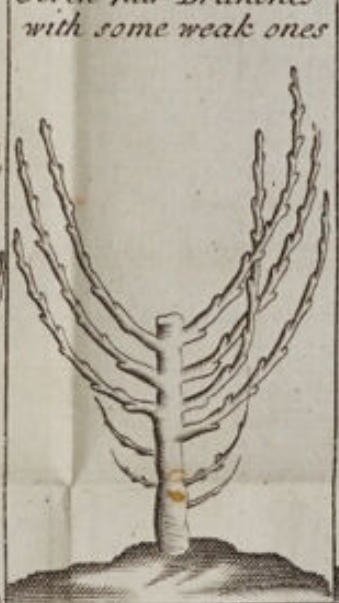
6

Six fair Branches with two weak ones



7

Seven fair Branches with some weak ones



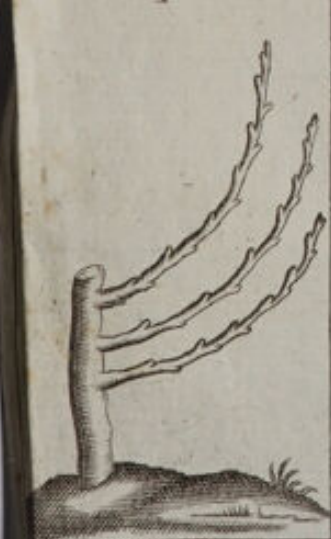
8

Eight fair Branches with two weak ones shot according to natural Order



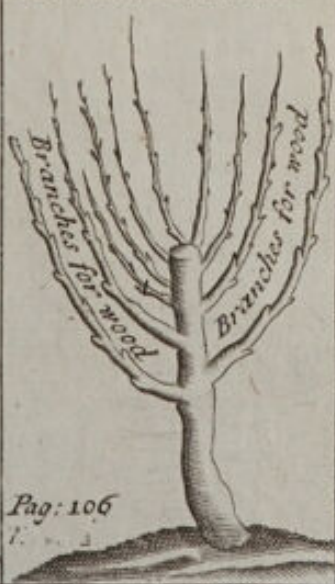
9

Three large Branches ill plac'd



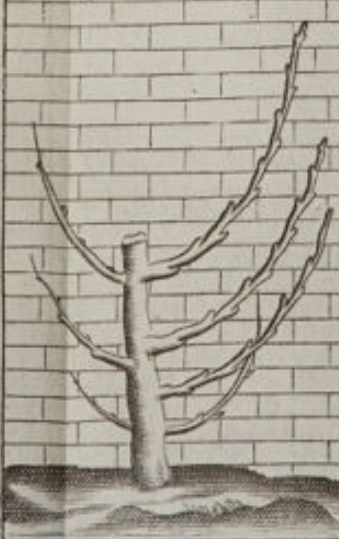
10

Six weak Branches



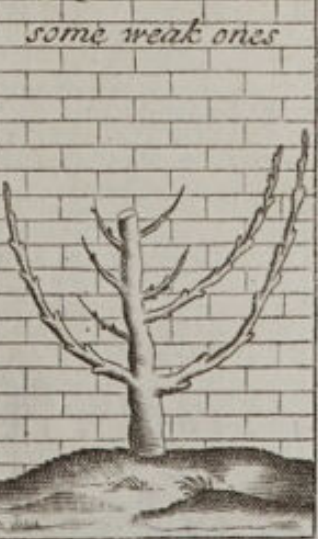
11

Three fair Branches with four weak ones

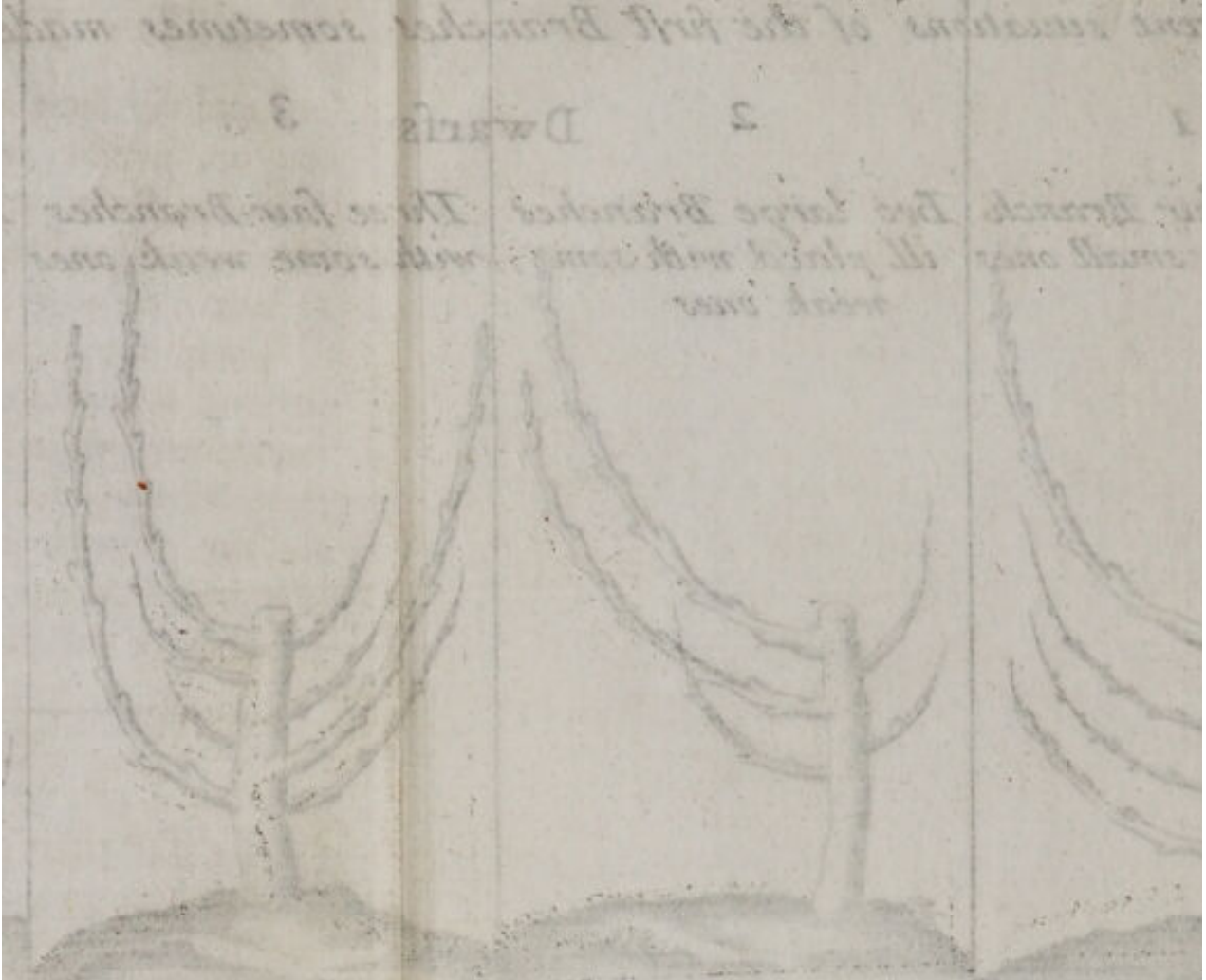


12

Three fair Branches well plac'd with some weak ones









The Pruning of  
the second year

Pruned from the first year  
and according to  
the order of Nature

The Pruning of  
the third year



8

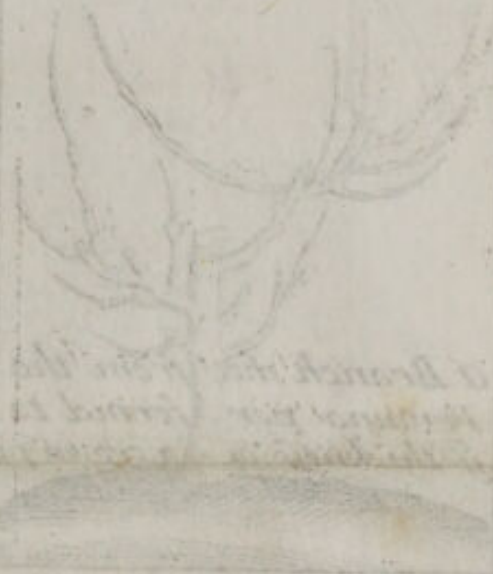
7

6

The Pruning of  
the fourth year

The good small  
branches that grow  
the Pruning of  
the fourth year  
of a Crown piece

The Pruning of  
the fifth year



11

10

A Branch of  
the

The Pruning of the

12



One and the same Tree differently Prund according to the different Branches it has Shot four years one after another

1

Two fine Branches with some weak ones of y<sup>e</sup> first year



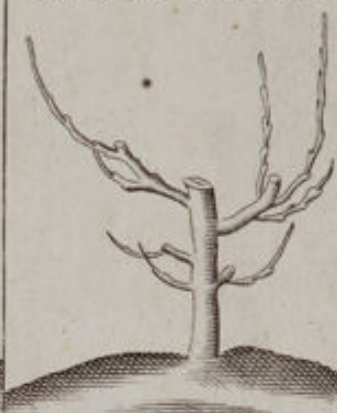
2

A Tree Prund as it ought to be the first year



3

Branches grwn from the first Pruning according to the order of Nature



4

The Pruning of the second year



5

Three good Branches

Two good Branches



Three fruit Branches

6

The Pruning of the third year

Branches cut with in the thickness of a Crown Piece



A Branch cut for wood slantingly

7

Two good small Branches shot from the Pruning performed to the thickness of a Crown piece



a Branch shot from the Pruning performed to the thickness of a crown piece

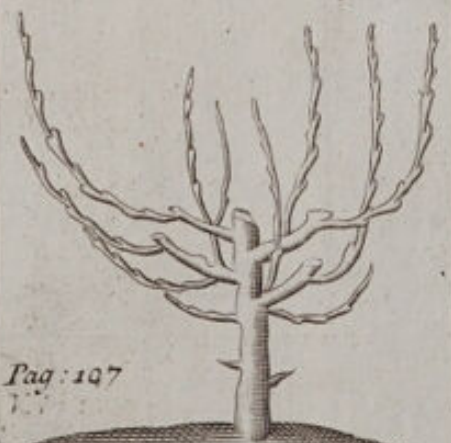
8

The Pruning of the fourth year



9

Good Branches shot from the first Pruning



Page: 107

10

The Pruning of the second year



11

A Branch cut slantingly



A Branch cut to the thickness of a Crown piece



the outside to open it too much, it being requisite well to establish the first Beauty of the figure of that *Tree*, which is to open in a round equally garnish'd: So likewise in *Wall-Trees* the *pruning* would not be well perform'd, unless it were order'd so that the two *Eyes* on the extremities of the two *Branches* that are to be shortned, should shoot upon opposite sides the new *Branches* they are able to produce; for it's necessary that those very *Branches* should have of themselves, and without the least Violence, a natural disposition to place themselves well upon those parts of the *Wall* that we would cover.

If one of those two *Branches* has any advantage in Thickness over the other, so that in probability the one may produce two other thick ones, while the other can yield but one, care must be taken, that as well the two of the thickest, as the single one of that which is not so thick, may come forth so, that all three together may be preserv'd, as fit and necessary for the composing of the beautiful Figure; otherwise if there should be a necessity of removing some, being ill-favour'dly grown, it would be a loss,

If a *Fruit branch* should chance to be join'd with the two *Wood branches*, it may be preserv'd.

---

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the first pruning of a Tree that has only produc'd two Branches, both beautiful and thick, yet both ill plac'd.*

IF one of these fine *Branches* which this *Tree* has produc'd be considerably lower than the other, or perhaps both on one side, or it may be one on one side on the top of the Extremity, and the other quite at the bottom of the opposite side, you must preserve but one, the fittest to begin a fine Figure, cutting off



the other so close that it may never be able to produce any thick ones in the same place; it being certain, that if both were preserv'd, it could never form a *Tree* of any agreeable Figure.

If the lower *Branch* be equally good, or better than that above, it will be most proper to leave the lowermost, being fittest to contribute to the Beauty of the *Tree*.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of a Tree which has produc'd three or four fine well plac'd Branches, or else three or four ill ones, and those all on the extremity, or a little beneath it.*

**I**F they are on the Extremity of the *Stem*, and in a proper place at first to form a fine *Tree*, they must be prun'd with all the same regards we have explain'd, for the *Pruning* of the two first which were by themselves. If these three or four *Branches* be all of an equal thickness, they must be all us'd alike. If one or two of them be somewhat less in thickness, but still fit to be *Wood-branches*, or at least half wood, and capable of contributing to the Figure, those must only be prun'd with a prospect of getting one only new *Branch* from them, taking care to have it on that side that shall be found most empty; and to that end they must be shortned to an *Eye* that looks on that side, and care must be taken that the two last *Eyes* of the others which are stronger, may look towards the two opposite sides, in order to begin to fill them up the more.

If those three or four fine *Branches* shoot out a little below the Extremity, 'tis but shortning the *Stem* to them.

When



When the *Branches* that are produc'd are most of them ill ones, and cannot all conduce towards the forming a fine *Tree*, nor cannot all be preserv'd, examine whether among the three or four, there are not at least two pretty well situated, the one on one side, and the other on the other, and whether they are not too far distant to frame some Foundation for your *Figure*, and that being so, these may very well answer the cutting of the others; the two that are preserv'd, must be *Prun'd* with the same regard heretofore explain'd for the *Pruning* of the two fine *Branches*.

Care must be taken, that those two being *Prun'd*, may be found afterwards of an equal height, though of a different length, to the end that those that may shoot from them may begin our *Figure* happily.

Good weak *Branches* must be carefully preserv'd for *Fruit*, only shortning them a little on the extremity, when they appear too weak for their length, not failing to take away all the sapless *Branches*.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the Pruning of Trees that have produced the number of five, six, or seven fine Branches.*

**I**F our *Tree* has produced the number of five, or six, or seven fine *Branches*, or more, it will be sufficient to preserve three or four of those that a skillful *Gard'ner* shall think fit, both by their situation and strength, to be fittest for our *Design*; this being so, we must wholly cut off all the others, if they happen to be higher than those that are preserv'd, especially if they be thick, for if they are weak, that is fit for *Fruit-branches*, they must be preserv'd until they have perform'd what they are capable of doing.

If



If among the thick ones there chance to be a great many small ones, preserve two or three of those that are best plac'd, breaking off the extremity of the longest a little, and not meddling with those that are naturally short; and consequently you must take away all those that may cause a confusion.

"The twentieth Chapter, tho' it be of the second Years Pruning, is much to the same effect of that of the first, which is fully treated on in the preceding Chapter.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the second Pruning of a Tree, that on the first Year had produced two fine Branches for Wood*

"**T**HERE is little to be inserted in this Chapter, only that a Tree, of the first Years *Planting*, having produced two thick *Branches* for Wood, and one or two small ones for *Fruit*; if on the second Year, the *Sap* has alter'd its Course from the thick *Branches* to the small ones, then the small ones become *Wood Branches*, by the unexpected *Sap* they receiv'd.

In this case, the Productions of these *Branches* must, be cut quite off into the *Mother-Branch*, which will undoubtedly, the second Year, conduce to a beautiful Figure. The Production of those thick *Branches*, that shot the first, being us'd as *Fruit-Branches*, by reason of the less abundance of *Sap* they receiv'd than what was promis'd.

"The twenty second Chapter mentions nothing material to be inserted.



## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the second Pruning of a Tree, which had produced the first Year four fine Branches of Wood, or more.*

**I**F a *Tree* from the first Years *Pruning*, has produced four fine *Branches*, or more, 'tis certain it has a great deal more *Vigour* than any of the rest we have mention'd; therefore it's necessary sometimes to preserve some *Branches* upon it, which at that time are no ways conducing to the *Figure* of the *Tree*, but to serve for a time to consume part of the *Sap*, which might be prejudicial to the *Branches* that are to yield *Fruit*. These superfluous *Branches* may be left long, and pruned without Consequence, since they are to be wholly taken away, as soon as the *Tree* is formed, and produces a reasonable quantity of *Fruit*.

As for those that are essential to the *Beauty* of the *Tree*, prune them all a little longer than those of the preceding *Trees*, that is about two or three *Eyes* at most, as well to avoid Confusion, as to make an Advantage of the *Vigour* of such a *Tree*, which, without such a Precaution, would not yield *Fruit* in a long time; because the great abundance of *Sap* might convert into *Branches* all the *Eyes* that should have turn'd into *Fruit buds*, had their nourishment been more moderate.

Such a *Tree*, at the end of the second Year, appears in a manner quite form'd, by means of all the new *Branches*, that every one of the old ones, being *Prun'd*, have produc'd on their extremities; and among the new ones, care must be taken to chuse those that conduce to the *Beauty* of the *Figure*, to *Prune* them again partly of the same length as those which had been *Prun'd* for the first time; from which they proceed,

en-



endeavouring to distinguish whether the *Branch*, that has been *prun'd*, may at least produce two, in order to preserve them both, if they are fit for our Design; or if one must be quite taken away, let it commonly be the highest, for the lowest being preserv'd, is fittest for the Form, or to preserve the Beauty we look for, and by that means not only the place that is cut shall be quickly covered again, but besides it will make no Wound upon the *Branches* that shall be preserv'd, and consequently the *Tree* will be thereby much handsomer and sounder.

But if the Vigour of that *Tree* be observ'd to continue, as it is very common, and even to augment visibly, in such a case confusion is to be fear'd, either in the Heart of a *Dwarf*, or in respect to a *Wall-Tree*, of what kind soever, as *Pears*, *Apples*, *Plums*, *Peaches*, *Cherries*, &c. Therefore that second *Pruning* must be perform'd yet a little longer than the first, particularly if the *Tree* inclines to be close, and that length must be about a large Foot, or a little more, to employ that abundance of *Sap* which we judge must not be restrain'd, nor contain'd in a small space.

When from the second *Pruning* other good *Branches* shall be grown, which shall begin to open the *Dwarf* reasonably well, or to fill sufficiently our *Wall-Tree*, especially the *Tree* beginning to yeild *Fruit*, then we must return to our ordinary way of *Pruning*, of six or seven Inches upon the most vigorous *Branches*, and four or five upon the moderate ones.

This great fury seldom fails of diminishing at the end of the first five or six Years, if the *Tree* has been well govern'd, and then all those little *Bronches* which we have endeavour'd to procure in a great number at the bottom, and have afterwards preserv'd with care, begin to give us an ample Recompence for all our Pains; and pretty often on such Occasions we come to *Prune* over again, here and there, some of the old  
*Branches,*



*Branches* which the great vigour of the *Tree* had oblig'd us to leave of an extraordinary length, aiming still at extending, by way of overture, on the sides, there to employ usefully the vigour of that *Tree*, and to preserve its agreeable Figure.

In those vigorous *Trees*, we must leave upon them, without any use, some *Branches*, cut Stump-wise, and even some thick ones, tho' of false Wood, in which, for some Years space, that furious *Sap*, of which we have too much, may lose it self in vain, which otherwise might disorder some of our principal Parts, and even, if upon those sorts of *Trees* any *Branches* of false Wood be found, in a place where they may serve towards the Figure of the *Tree*, they must be preserv'd and us'd as such; being certain, that as they will take up the greatest abundance of the *Sap*, the good *Branches* that have produc'd these false ones will receive less, and consequently will bear *Fruit* the sooner; these false *Branches*, in the mean time, performing the same effect, as to the Figure, as the good ones could have done.

Such *Branches* may likewise be left wherever the Overture of the *Tree* shall not be prejudiced by them, from whence the *Tree*, bearing *Fruit*, they may, at pleasure, be taken away without any prejudice to the Figure, provided, always, they cause not the least confusion, that being the greatest harm that can happen to a vigorous *Tree*. To moderate the great fury of such a *Tree*, and to make it bear the sooner, two things are required besides the Overture.

1<sup>st</sup>. The length and multitude of good weak *Branches*, when they are placed so as to cause no Confusion.

2<sup>dly</sup>, A considerable number of out-lets upon the thick *Branches*, thro' which that abundance of *Sap* may perform its effect.

If some *Branches* prun'd the preceeding Year, have produc'd three or four, all pretty thick ones, you  
K need



need not cut them short, or retrench them, so that having one or two of the best plac'd, preserve one or two of the others for the *Pruning* of the next Year, and leave them reasonably long; besides if you preserve the lowest, cut the highest *Stump* wise, and when you preserve the highest, leave under them, either upon the outside, or upon the sides, one or two *Stumps* of the thick *Branches*, form'd like the Hook of a *Vine*, each about two Inches in length.

There happens in those *Stumps*, or *Hooks*, a discharge of *Sap* which produces some *Branches*, either for *Fruit*, when they are weak, or to become, in time, fit *Branches* for the *Figure*, when they are strong.

The best way is to take away the highest *Branches*, and preserve the lowest for the *Figure*, being one of the Advantages we reap by spreading the *Tree* with ease to the bottom of the *Wall*, which cannot so well be done in taking away the lowest, and preserving the highest.

## CH A P. XXIV

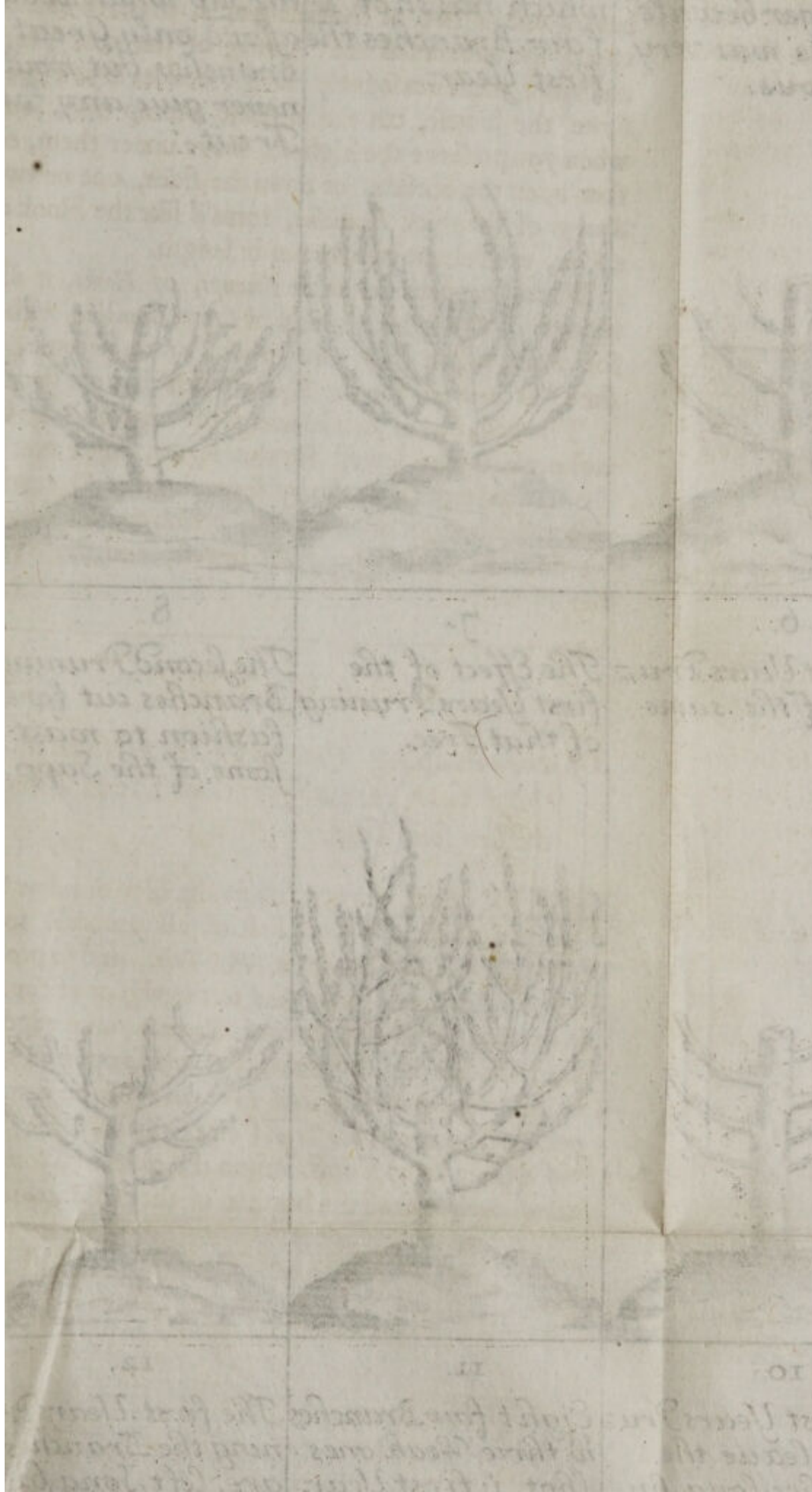
*Of the Pruning that must be perform'd the third Year upon all sorts of Trees Planted within four Years.*

**W**E must always follow the Idea of a fine *Tree*, which we have first of all propos'd to our selves, either in a *Dwarf* or *Wall Trees*, and to proportion the burthen of the *Head* to the vigour of the *Root*, in leaving more and longer *Branches* on a vigorous *Tree*, and less and shorter on that which appears weak.

And whereas many old *Branches* must be carefully preserv'd on a vigorous *Tree*, (especially for *Fruit*) provided there be no Confusion; on the contrary, you must ease a weak *Tree* of the burthen of the old *Branches*, as

well







1.

Four fair Branches  
with some weak  
ones shot the first  
Year.



2.

The first Years Pruning  
I leaue the branches  
the longer because  
The Tree was very  
Vigorous.



3.

The Effect of the  
Pruning of a Tree  
which has shot 4  
fair Branches the  
first Year.



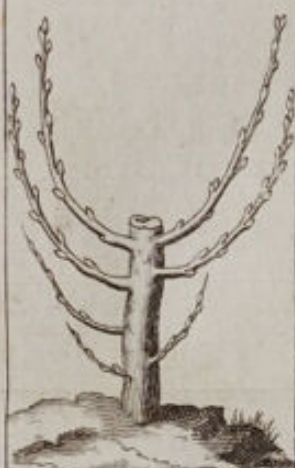
4.

Branches left Long  
to wast some part of  
the Sap which would  
afford only Great  
Branches but would  
never giue any for  
Fruit.



5.

Four fair Branches  
with some weak ones  
shot the first Year.



6.

The first Years Pru-  
ning of the same  
Tree.



7.

The Effect of the  
first Years Pruning  
of that Tree.



8.

The second Pruning  
Branches cut fork  
fashion to wast  
some of the Sapp.



9.

Six fair Branches  
shot the first Year  
with thrie weak  
ones.



10.

The first Years Pru-  
ning I leaue the  
Branches long by  
reason of y. great  
Vigour of the Tree



11.

Eight fair Branches  
w. thrie Weak ones  
shot y. first Year.



12.

The first Years Pru-  
ning the Branches  
are left Long by  
reason of the great  
Vigour of the Tree





well those that are for *Wood*, as those that are for *Fruit*, and cut them short, in order to make it shoot new ones; but if not able to produce the young *Shoots* with vigour, then it must be pulled up, and a better put in its room, after having taken away all the old *Earth*, which may be judged to be either *Ill* or *worn out*, and putting new in its room.

In *Pruning*, provision must be made for those *Branches* that may proceed from those which you are *Pruning*, in order to prepare some that may be proper for the *Figure*, with this assurance, that when a high *Branch* is taken down over a lower, this being strengthened by all the nourishment that would have gone to the highest, which has been taken away, this low *Branch* will produce more *Branches* than it should have done, had it receiv'd no reinforcement.

It seldom happens that all the *Trees* of the same *Garden*, tho' order'd alike, prove equally vigorous, for *Trees* are subject to an infinite number of *Accidents*, that can neither be foreseen nor avoided; but it is certain, that all the *Trees* of a *Garden* may be form'd agreeably in their *Figure*, which is one of the principal things to which the *Gard'ner* is oblig'd.

Here the Author advises every body not to be obstinate in preserving *Pear Trees*, which yearly, towards the end of the Summer, grow extreme Yellow, without having produced fine *Shoots*, nor those of which the extremities of the *Branches* die every Year.

They are commonly *Trees* grafted upon *Quince Stocks*, of which some of the principal *Roots* are dead or rotten; they are *Trees* that produce but small *Roots* at the upper part of the Foot, and consequently *Roots* that are expos'd to the Injuries of the Air and the Spade.

The same thing may be said of the *Peach Tree*, that appears the first Years to gather Gum at the greatest part of their *Eyes*, and of those that are extremely at-



tack'd with certain little Fleas and Pismires ; such *Peach-Trees* have certainly some rotten *Roots*, and will never do well.

Those *Trees* that shoot on all sides an infinite number of little, weak, sapless *Branches*, with some thick ones here and there, both the one and the other for the most part, of false Wood, in which case, a great deal of time may be lost upon ill grounded hopes. so that it will be best to remove them as soon as may be ; and when they are not too old, or the *Roots* spoil'd, venture to plant them again, in some other place, in good *Ground*, after having cleansed them of all their rottenness and canker, in order to see if they will come to any thing, to make use of them, elsewhere ; which happens sometimes with *Pear Trees*, but very seldom with *Stone Fruit*, especially *Peach Trees*, still putting better in the room of them, with all the conditions heretofore explain'd.

## CHAP. XXV.

*Of the first Pruning of Trees that have been Planted with many Branches.*

**T**H O' it is not advisable to Plant little *Trees* with many *Branches*, yet if any have done so, observe these Rules. First, cut off what ever may cause a confusion, or is not proper for the *Figure*. And Secondly, those *Branches* we preserve upon them, leave them at six or seven Inches in length, and observe the foregoing Rules in *Pruning*.

*Trees* planted with many *Branches* upon them, are not so easily turn'd to a fine *Figure*, as young ones chose out of the *Nursery* ; they generally produce their young *Shoots* disorderly, and consequently must be often cut and wounded, before what's desired can be effected.

And



And when *Trees* have been *Planted* with a great many more and longer *Branches* than should have been, and there appears no manner of disposition towards the *Figure* we ought to wish for, we must immediately reduce them.

In a great *Plantation* where other *Trees* are dead, and supposing the *Ground* to be good, and other good *Mould* put into the hole ; in such a case, *Trees* with some *Branches* may very well be *Planted*, especially those which are difficult to fructifie.

## C H A P. XXVI.

*Of the Pruning of Tall Standards, or high-bodied Trees,*

**H**igh *Standards* planted against *Walls* do all require the same precaution as the *low* ones, but those that are planted in the open *Air*, they need only be touched once or twice in the beginnings ; that is in the three or four first *Years*, in order to remove some *Branches* from the middle, or to shorten a side *Branch* which grows too high, or too long, or bring in another nearer, that extends beyond his bounds and refer the rest to Nature.

“ Our Author speaks very rightly of high *Standards*,  
 “ not being *Prun'd* with all the *Circumstances* us'd in  
 “ lower *Dwarfs* or *Walls* ; yet so far must be observed,  
 “ yearly to cut and clear out all such *Branches* which  
 “ grow in the middle of the *Tree*, together with all the  
 “ canker'd *Shoots*, otherwise being overburthen'd 'twill  
 “ cause a confusion, and too much a thickness of *Wood*  
 “ will deprive the *Fruit* of the *Sun* it ought to have.



## CHAP. XXVII.

*Of the first Conduct of Graffs in Slits made and multiplyed upon old Trees, in place, either Dwarfs or Wall.*

SOMETIMES for change of *Fruit*, old *Trees* are grafted, of one Head, two, three or more, and some of them with one *Graff* or more in each Head, in pruning these observe the former directions; and where there are many *Shoots*, cut off such as grow inward, or are too thick: Both for number and length respect must be had to the quantity of *Sap* that is to supply, so as not to check it too much, tho' afterwards you cut off or shorten some of them, always taking care to do it so as the Figure you design may be best accomplished, and the lower part kept thick enough,

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of what is to be done in cases not foreseen, and pretty common to all sorts of Trees, even to those that have been manag'd according to all the Rules of Art.*

WHAT has been already said, may give a sufficient knowledge in this matter, yet Nature answers not all our Intentions. Times and Seasons, or Grounds, and the different temper of *Trees*, and the particular Kinds of *Fruit*, which may produce Inconveniencies which we could not foresee. For after we have pruned and manag'd our *Trees*, according to all the Rules of Art and Discretion, yet Nature will produce disorderly and confus'd *Branches*, which when they come to pass ought to be remedied.

Stone



Stone *Fruit*, especially *Peaches* and *Apricots* greatly require a second, and sometimes a third *Pruning*, besides what's done at the end of Winter; those last *Prunings* must be perform'd towards the middle of *May*, when the *Fruit* is either knit or blasted; at which time they are not only advantageous, but very necessary: At the same time you must likewise *Trim* the *Buds* and useleſs *Branches* of ſome others, which is no leſs neceſſary than thoſe kinds of *Prunings*.

Theſe laſt operations, *viz.* The ſecond and third *Prunings* of *Stone Fruit*, and the *Trimming* of the *Buds* and uſeleſs *Branches* of all manner of *Trees*, are neceſſary both to ſtrengthen certain *Branches* which may be of uſe for the future to make *Branches* for *Wood*, and to take away ſome that are grown uſeleſs.

All theſe are laid down in four *Claules*.

1. Remarks generally common for all ſorts of *Fruits*, *Trees*.

2. Remarks that are peculiar in every Year to the firſt *pruning* of *Stone-Fruit*, eſpecially *Peaches* and *Apricots*.

3. To the ſecond and third *pruning* of *Stone-Fruits*, as well *Eſpaliers* as *Dwarfs*.

4. For trimming of *Buds* and uſeleſs *Branches* of both.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*Common Remarks for certain ſingular caſes relating to the Pruning of all manner of Trees.*

THIS Chapter ſhall be without Order or Connexion, every caſe being ſingular, and ſo collected.

1. *Observation.*

When a *Branch* well plac'd, either againſt a *Wall*, or in a *Dwarf*, hath ſhot ſome falſe *Wood*, neither pro-



per for the Figure or *Fruit*, let them be cut off within the thickness of a Crown piece, or slopingly ; tho' it's best done at the first appearance in the Summer, by breaking off the *Bud*.

2. Cut off all *Branches* that shoot from a hard knob, upon which the Stalks of *Pears* did grow.

3. Do the like by those which proceed from a short streight *Branch* like a *Spur*, tho' the *Spurs* are common and good to be preserv'd, yet the *Branches* growing from them, will never be good for any thing ; if it produce more, cut off the *Spur* it self.

4. *Pruning* some weak *Branches* may be as well perform'd by breaking them only at the end, as cutting them with a Knife.

5. The *Cock spur*, or dry dead parts of *Branches* that remain where a *Branch* was shortned above the next *Eye* or *Shoot*, should be cut off always, tho' in *Peach trees* it may sometimes be hurtful.

6. When a *Tree* in its first Years hath produc'd *Branches* of moderate vigour, and afterwards puts forth strong ones well plac'd, tho' of false *Wood*, these latter may be us'd as the foundation for the figure of the *Tree*, and the other suffer'd a time for bearing *Fruit*, but if they come not well placed, cut them off, in hopes next Year of new ones better.

7. When an old *Tree* shoots stronger *Branches* towards the bottom than the top, and the top be in an ill case, cut it off, and form a new Figure from those lower ones ; but if the Top be vigorous, cut off the lower, unless well plac'd to continue for the benefit of the *Tree*.

8. When little and weak *Branches* shoot from the like, and the third *Shoot* is strong, yet use them as *Branches* of false *Wood*.

9. The order of Nature in production of *Branches* and *Roots*, is to send forth a lesser than the *Branch* of which it comes ; if such prove thicker than the *Stem*  
out



out of which it ariseth in *Branches*, use them as false *Wood*; in *Roots* it's not material, the thickest being the best; and in *Branches*, if the Scituation favour the Figure, you may preserve them.

10. Consideration must be had ( in *Pruning* ) of the place from whence *Branches* proceed, as to be good and fit to answer the end.

11. Likewise regard must be had to the effect of former *pruning*, in order to correct the defects of it, or continue its Beauty.

12. *Dwarf Trees* not being supported by a *Wall*, if they are likely to bear more *Fruit* than they can sustain without breaking the *Branch*, care must be had to lessen the weight, by taking off some bearing *Buds* or *Fruit*.

13. If a large old *Branch* of a *Peach* or *Plum Tree* be shortned, it will not be apt to put forth young fresh *Shoots*, the *Sap* not easily penetrating a thick hard *Bark*; however other *Branches* which are left, may be better supply'd with nourishment. But *Apricot Trees*, or young *Peach Trees*, are apt enough to put forth fresh ones.

14. In vigorous *Trees* the weaker *Branches* are the *Fruit-bearers*: In weak *Trees*, the stronger chiefly; therefore in the latter prune off the feeble and small.

15. In vigorous *Trees*, three *Branches* ( which are good ones ) may put forth at one *Eye*; generally the two side *Branches* are proper to be preserv'd, and the middlemost cut off, and that in *May* or *June*.

16. The *Branches* of *Wall-fruit trees* may be easily dispos'd, if tack'd while young; if they be grown too stiff and unfit, cut them off, and expect others that may do well.

17. Tho' it be disagreeable ( either in a *Wall-tree*, or *Dwarf*, ) to see a thick *Branch* crossing the middle of the *Tree*, yet if it be apply'd to fill up an empty side, it may be permitted; Niceties of Position are not-much to be observ'd in *Fruit bearing Branches*.

18. It's



18. It's difficult to strengthen weak *Branches* without cutting away others that are superior to them, even the upper part of that from which it shoots, tho' Nature sometimes doth it her self.

19. As to the *pruning* vigorous *Peach Trees*, it's necessary to defer the first *pruning* until they are ready to *blossom*, the better to know which may be most likely to bear *Fruit*, and then to shorten them as they may require.

20. *Fruit-buds* that are nearest the ends of *Branches* are commonly thicker, and so better fed than others, therefore for weak *Trees* it may be best to prune them early, that the *Sap* may not waste it self on such parts as must be retrench'd.

21. A *Wall-fruit-tree* should be quite untack'd before you begin to prune it, for hereby you may order it to a better Figure than if the old *Tacks* remain.

22. It is often necessary to untack, both in order to make the Figure equal, and to remove *Branches* that are crept behind the Props or Stays; visit therefore your *Trees* often in *May*, to prevent such disorders, and to remove languishing or other *Shoots* that would cause confusion.

23. A multitude of *Branches* in the first Year is not always a sign of Vigour; but if they prove weak, an ill Omen, and token of Infirmary in the *Roots*.

24. When either a *Dwarf* or *Wall-tree* is great and old, it seldom shoots green *Branches*, and therefore faults are not so easily committed in *pruning* it, if the *Dwarf* be but kept open, and the *Wall-tree* have a good Figure, faults arise most where the *Tree* is vigorous, and produceth more than is expected.

25. We can only judge of the Strength or Weakness of *Branches* by comparing them with others on the same *Tree*, the part on which they grow, and the nature of the *Tree* making difference; the neighbourhood of one very thick renders another, that is not so thick, weak;



weak; as many weak ones render another that is not so weak, thick.

26. This Rule is considerable, for sometimes there is an extraordinary length and pretty thickness, which yet ought to be look'd on as weak or small.

27. When *Branches* are very slender towards the ends, 'tis a certain sign of Weakness, and ought to be shortned; and if thick there, the contrary is as sure.

28. The farther a weak *Branch* is distant from the *Trunk*, the less nourishment it receives, and is therefore to be shortned; thick *Branches* the more distant from the Heart, receive the more, and are therefore to be removed, that the Vigour may extend it self to the middle or lower part of the *Tree*.

29. From some *Trees*, especially *Pear Trees*, sometimes proceed *Horizontal Branches*, admirable to be preserv'd, either shooting inwards or outward.

30. Some *Branches* may seem proper for Wood, to establish the figure of the *Tree*, yet if they prove of no better growth than *Wood-branches*, they must not continue. So that if better can be produc'd to supply their places, they are not to be relyed on.

31. When a *Tree*, especially *Peach* and *Plumb-tree*, ceases to put forth new *Branches*, they must be look'd upon as decaying *Trees*, and another prepar'd for its place; in the mean time cutting off all that are sapless.

32. A *Branch* for Wood must never be prun'd without occasion require it: As when a low *Standard* is hurt by a Neighbour that overgrows him, in such case some *Branches* that annoy the other may be prun'd and left to bear *Fruit* at greater height than otherwise they ought, that you may receive some *Fruit* before they are quite cut off.

33. Thick *Branches* that grow from the ends of others tollerably thick and long, must be cut off short, that others may put forth in their stead; for if they were continued and pruned according to ordinary method, they would grow long and naked. 34. The



34. The cutting thus short and stump-wise is generally used, where a *Branch* that was weak and long is grown vigorous, and puts forth at its end two or three strong *Branches*; it should have been shortned while it was weak, and it must be serv'd so yet.

35. If the *Branch* cut stump-wise hath produc'd no *Branches* for *Wood*, but a thick *Branch* at or near the place of the *Stump*, it must also be cut stump-wise, unless the old one were left too long, which then ought to be cut again.

36. If an old well liking *Tree* be disorder'd with false *Wood*, by ill *pruning*; take it lower by cutting off a *Branch* or two yearly, 'till it is sufficiently shortned, if it be a good Kind worth preserving; otherwise graft on it a better sort.

37. Some *Trees* put forth so vigorously, that they cannot the first year be reduc'd to a small compass, such must be allow'd to extend themselves, or else they will produce false *Wood*; afterwards you may reduce them.

38. A vigorous *Tree* can never have too many *Branches*, if well order'd nor a weak *Tree* too few.

39. The *Branches* of false *Wood*, or *Suckers*, as to *Peach-trees* and other *Stone Fruit*, are not so defective of *Eyes* or *Buds*, as those that grow on *Kernel Fruit Trees*; If there be a small number, manage them as *Pear-trees* in the like case; but if many and those on the lower part of the *Tree*, some of them may be prepar'd to renew the *Tree*.

40. All *Trees* have a *Branch* or two if not more, predominant; where the *Vigour* is equally divided, it's best; but if it incline to one side more than another, it's very faulty.

41. A *Wood Branch* on the inside of a *Dwarf* is welcome, if favourably plac'd to supply a thin side.

42. *Fruit-buds* of *Pear* and *Apple trees* sometimes form themselves the same Year in which the *Branch* they



they are adherent to is form'd, as generally all the *Buds* of *Stone Fruit* do; but for the most part it's two or three Years or longer, before the former come to perfection.

43. *Shoots* put forth in *Autumn* are always bad; and must be taken off.

44. It is in the *Gard'ners* power to make *Fruit-buds* grow where he pleaseth, but not when he pleases.

45. If a thick *Branch*, being prun'd, shoots forth three, respect must be had to their thickness and fitness for *Fruit*, and to maintain the Figure, and accordingly to be retain'd or cut off.

46. *Wall-Stone-fruit-trees* do well in putting forth side *Branches* on *Shoots* of the same Year, for most *Trees* are too apt to shoot upwards.

47. Never preserve sapless *Branches*.

48. A *Dwarf tree* of the *Beurre Pear*, when it bears must be prun'd shorter than others, lest the plenty and weight of its *Fruit* cause it to spread or open too much, which is no pleasing Figure.

49. In *May* take care that good *Branches* of *Wall-fruit* creep not behind the Supporters or Lettice frame.

50. A languishing *Pear-tree* may be restor'd by pruning and removal in better Ground, but never a *Peach tree*, especially if Gum appear.

51. If a young *Dwarf-tree* have been spoil'd by Pruning or Accident, that it's thinner on one side than another, on which it chance to put forth a *Branch* (tho' of false *Wood*) it may be allow'd to be continued of greater length, than otherwise the general Rules do admit.

52. When a *Tree* forms many *Branches*, some strong, others weak, it may soon produce *Fruit*; but if few, and those strong, it produceth no *Fruit*, 'till in time it's grown fuller of *Branches* that abate its vigorous *Shoots*.

53. When *Trees* (by reason of their Vigour in growth) do not bear *Fruit*, leave upon them a great deal



deal of old Wood, avoiding Confusion as well as vacuity.

54. It's good to review presently after *pruning*, to amend some faults that probably may be committed.

55. When a *Tree* puts forth much stronger *Shoots* on one side than the other, a great part of the strong *Branches* must be cut off close to the *Body*, or some of them stump-wise.

56. In all sorts of *Trees* allow less length to the weak than strong *Branches*.

57. It is common upon all *Trees* ( especially the more ancient ) to find weak *Branches* which want nourishment, therefore at the grand *pruning*, or oftner, shorten some, and diminish others ; or sometimes a superior *Branch* that is too vigorous, whereby the weak may be better replenisht.

58. When an upper *Branch* requires shortning, cut it close to another, that it may heal over ; but when a lower is cut off, do it sloping, or at a little distance, that a new one may grow out of it.

59. When a strong *Branch* is cut pretty close, and produceth nothing but weak ones towards its end, 'tis not likely to make a good Figure.

60. If a young crooked *Tree* produce a fine *Branch* below the crook, cut the Head off close to that *Branch*.

61. If a thick *Shoot* put forth on a *Wall-tree*, it may better be preserv'd on it, tho' ill plac'd, than on a *Dwarf*, because by nailing *Ligatures*, it self, or those that grow from it, may be turned often to a convenient place, which cannot be so well effected on *Standard Dwarf-Trees*.

62. Tho' five, six or seven Inches be usually the proper length to leave *Wood-branches* at ; yet very often they must be left longer or shorter as occasion requires, upon the consideration of the vigour or weakness of the *Tree*, thickness or smallness of the *Branch* to be cut, the fullness or vacuity of the place  
of



of its position, and the height of other *Branches* upon the same *Tree*.

63. The Objections against skilful *Pruning* deserve not an Answer.

64. When a fine *Fruit-branch* shoots many others, which seem fit for *Fruit*, if they cause no Confusion, and the *Tree* hath vigour, particularly in *Pear Trees*, they may be preserv'd.

65. It happens sometimes (especially upon *Wall-trees*,) that sometimes a vigorous *Branch*, after it hath put forth the same year of its growth small *Shoots* towards the Head or end, may also shoot stronger afterwards below; these last may be preserv'd for *Wood Branches*, and therefore to be shortned, and the other look'd on as *Fruit-branches*.

66. There's no Scruple to be made, even in old *Trees*; especially *Pear*, *Apple*, and *Apricot Trees*, of abating thiek *Branches* on certain sides, that by ill ordering prove too long and thin; tho' it be not convenient, without absolute necessity, to cut many thick *Branches* which stand over weak ones, shot from the same part, lest the *Sap* which fed the larger, flow so plentifully into the lesser, that it cause them to put forth much false *Wood*, and *Suckers*.

67. *Branches* shot from the ends of others are commonly good *Wood*, yet sometimes it happens otherwise, and then must be corrected.



## CHAP. XXX.

*Particular Remarks for the first Pruning, yearly to be perform'd in February and March, upon Trees of Stone-Fruit, especially on Peach and Apricot Trees, either Dwarf-Standards or Wall-Trees.*

**F***ruit-branches* of the *Trees* above mention'd, are but of a small continuance, many of them perishing the first Year in which they produce *Fruit*, and even without it, if the *Blossoms* were destroy'd; these must be cut off, unless you find they have put forth *Shoots* for *Blossoms* for the succeeding Year.

It is not so with the *Fruit-branches* of *Pear* and *Apple-trees*, and even *Plum trees*.

The Curious ought to be pitied, whose *Trees* are planted in cold ill Ground, or Ground worn out.

*Weak Branches* must be preserv'd with care, (the length proportion'd to their strength) for the visible Hopes of present *Fruit*; and at second *Pruning*, if occasion requires, more boldness may be taken, but little hopes is to be had of them after.

*Strong Branches* are to be look'd upon with relation to the future, and therefore cut short, to produce others of both Kinds, and fill up the Vacancies where those that have ceas'd bearing are cut off.

*Trees* of very vigorous growth, are not apt to bear *Fruit*, so that on such it may do well to leave *Branches* of a moderate thickness, and long, which may produce, probably, *Fruit bearing-branches* the succeeding Year.

When a *Peach-tree* ceaseth to put forth *Branches* for *Wood*, provide one to succeed him.

If an old *Peach tree* shortned, hath put forth several good *Branches*, order it as a young planted *Tree* is already appointed to be, only leave the *Branches* longer.

Where



Where Walls are not above six or seven Foot high, the *Trees* planted against them must be at greater distance than ordinary, and the side *Branches* suffer'd to grow long, if the *Tree* be vigorous, even to a Foot and a half in length.

---

### C H A P. XXXI.

#### *Particular Remarks upon the second and third Pruning of Stone-Fruit.*

**T**His second *Pruning* is to be perform'd about the middle of *May*, and concerns not thick *Branches*, but the weak, that were left at the first grand *Pruning*, in hopes of *Fruit* upon them, which *Branches* produce different effects. As,

1. The most prosperous *Fruit* and fine *Branches*, in the best part of their extent, having *Fruit* that lies so close, as to be likely to obstruct one another in their growth, some must be taken away: And in case the multitude of young *Shoots*, may be likely to bring confusion, some of the meanest and worst plac'd may be cut off.

2. Where there is much *Fruit* and no fine *Branches*, but weak and useless: There some of the *Fruit* should be taken off, leaving that which is fairest and best plac'd and the *Branch* it self shortned: If the *Fruit* grow on the lower part of the *Branch*, cut it off close to them.

3. Where you have no *Fruit*, and yet many fine *Branches*; some of these ought to be preserv'd for *Fruit* next Year, but if any one be more luxurious in its growth than others, especially toward the end of the *Branch*, cut that clear off; but where there's neither *Fruit* nor good *Shoots*, cut off such a *Branch* close to the lowermost *Shoot* it hath put forth.

4. If the *Branch* have only produc'd a single *Shoot* at the end thereof, with much *Fruit* every where, if



it be not so strong as to be likely to become a *Branch* of *Wood*, it ought to be preserv'd, and the small ones among the *Fruit* cut off; but if it incline to be a *Wood Branch*, shorten it.

5. If it be along *Branch*, and hath only two or three *Fruits* towards its End, and a few *Shoots* in its Extent, unless for particular Reason you would preserve the *Fruit*, shorten such a *Branch*, and preserve its best *Shoots*.

6. Such *Branches* as are destroy'd by Cold or Gum, cut off as far as they are dead.

If any thing have hindred the performance of this second *Pruning* in *May*, it may be done till the middle of *June*.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Of the different manners of ordering a Peach-Tree in the Summer time.*

*Gard'ners observe three different ways herein.*

1. **S**OME pull or tear off all young *Shoots* which grow before and behind, and leave but few others: These seem to blame.

2. Others cut off those *Shoots* within three or four *Eyes* or *Buds* of the *Branch* they grow on; which renders the *Tree* ugly and disagreeable.

3. The last manner is, to preserve all the good *Branches* and nail them up neatly, leaving them to the time of general *Pruning*, at which time you may preserve those you like best; which is the Course the Author always took.



## C H A P. XXXIII.

*Of the Trimming of superfluous needless Buds  
and Sprigs.*

**W**Hereas *Pruning* serves only to shorten or take away old *Branches*; that either by their length, scituation, or number, annoy a *Tree*; so this *Trimming* or *Picking*, is entirely to remove young *Branches* of the same Year, either thick or small, growing improperly, or to cause confusion or prejudice to the whole *Tree*, or the *Branch* on which they are grown.

The time for it is all the Summer, as occasion requires; the sooner the better (if it need it) to prevent the growth of those useless *Shoots* that waste a great deal of *Sap*, and this should be perform'd on young as well old *Trees*.

It is not easie to set down precisely what *Branches* must be thus *Prun'd* or *Trim'd*, but a skillful *Gard'ner*, who by the Rules foregoing hath form'd the *Idea* of a fine *Tree*, and concluded what should remain for *Wood* and *Fruit-branches*, will easily perceive what's fit to leave, and what to take off, be it either *Buds* before they are shot, or *Shoots* lately put forth; and observing the *Directions* before mention'd in *Pruning*, he'll need no farther assistance in this matter.



## C H A P. XXXIV.

*Particular Remarks for another material Operation, to be perform'd in the Summer upon some Trees, which is called Pinching or Breaking.*

**P***inching*, in relation to *Gard'ning*, is to break designedly a tender *Sprig* of any *Plant* whatsoever, without the help of any *Instrument*, only using the Nails of two *Fingers*; your *Shoots* so served, are not so apt to die and grow black, as when cut with a *Knife*: It may be practis'd on *Buds* or tender *Shoots* in *April* or *May*, and sometimes in *June* and *July*: 'Tis commonly practis'd on the *Shoots* of *Melons*, *Cucumbers*, &c. not on *Fruit-trees*, but our Author us'd it on *Pear*, *Peach*, *Fig*, and *Orange-trees*; but what's here mention'd concerns only the two first.

This Operation is to be perform'd upon thick new *Shoots*, within two or three *Eyes* of the *Branch* they grow out of; and the Effect is, that instead of one strong *Wood-Branch* (that may be obnoxious) a vigorous *Tree* will put forth two or three at those *Eyes* left; and the *Sap* being now divided, the *Branches* may be lesser and fit for *Wood* and *Fruit*, if they are well plac'd; but it's chiefly to be practis'd upon the thick *Branches* on the top, which would remain useless from their Situation, and yet spend much *Sap*.

This is not to be practis'd on weak *Branches*; for if they put forth more, those probably be weaker than the *Stem* so pinched.



## C H A P. XXXV.

*Of what is to be done to some Trees being extraordinary vigorous, not bearing Fruit.*

SEveral Expedients and Remedies have been propos'd for curing vigorous *Trees*, that produce much *Wood* but little or no *Fruit*, which upon tryal have had no success; As,

To bore a Hole in the *Stem* of a *Tree*, and put a Peg of dry *Oak* into it; to split one main *Root*, and put a *Stone* into it; to *Prune* at the time of the declining of the *Moon*, &c.

The manner of *Pruning*, (as is before directed) may be a great help to bearing *Fruit*; but the most effectual Cure, is to open a part of the *Ground*, so as to come at the *Roots*, and cut off one, two, or three of them on one side, which will put a stop to the great affluence of *Sap*. Some have used to take up the *Trees* and replant them, but this is too violent a Force upon them.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

*Of the Conduct or Culture of Fig-Trees.*

THE difficulty of preserving the *Fig-trees* from the Cold, is the chief Reason why so few of them are propagated in our *Climates*, for in hot Countries they abound, and that to great Profit: But since their *Fruit* is much desired by some Persons, they may propagate and maintain what number they please securely, and to bear *Fruit* well in *Cases* with little difficulty, after these following Directions.

1. For the *Earth*, it need be only common *Garden Mould* mixt with an equal quantity of rotten *Dung*,  
 L 3 which



which must be ram'd hard to the bottom of the *Case*, and the *Tree* set very near the top, with *Mould* more loosely laid about it.

2. Their *Roots*, instead of being hard and thick, are soft, flexible, and slender, easier to be ordered in *Cases* than *Orange-trees*, which yet thrive well in them.

3. The *Fig-tree* puts forth abundance of *Roots*, so that it's easie for them to feed the top and grow vigorous, and that with little Earth, if well watered.

These are nothing so tender as *Orange-trees*, which are Green, and growing as well in Winter as Summer, and therefore an ordinary Conservatory will suit with them, be it Cellar, Barn, or Stable, and they need not be put in till the end of *November*, unless Frosts are earlier than ordinary, and that without any great care, culture, or closeness, unless in extream Frosts, and to be taken out again in the beginning of *March*, or later, as the Season happens, and if it permit, the sooner the better, to inure them to the Air, and that the Sun-beams and Showers of Rain in *March* and *April* may hasten their putting forth: being taken out of the Conservatory, let them be put close under a Wall expos'd to the *East* or *South* Sun, and so continue till the beginning of *May*, in the mean time if Frosts happen, let them have some coverings in the Night, because the *Fruit* hath no *Leaf* to shelter it, and afterwards the open Air is best, so it be not much expos'd to Cold, but favour'd by the help of Walls or other Shelter.

At their first putting out into the Air, let them have a good Watering, and they'll need no more till the middle of *April*; in *May* give them Water once a Week, and towards the middle of *June* frequently almost daily; the Sun having great influence on the *Roots*, by reason of their being thus in *Cases*, causes them to ripen sooner than those against a Wall, and commonly to bear two Crops of Fruit, one in *June* or *July*, another



in *September* ; for the better ripening the later, place the *Cases* again under a warm Wall.

To supply and maintain the *Stock* (for you cannot expect they should be fit for *Cases* above fifteen Years) they are easily cultivated : in the middle of *March* take up young *Fig-Trees*, either *Suckers* from the old, or *Layers* that are *Rooted*, and after having shorten'd all the *Roots* and *Stem*, put them in earthen Pots about four Inches deep, and place these in a hot Bed, after the great heat is pretty well over, let them be watered, and the Bed, refresh'd on the sides to continue the heat ; in two Years time they may require to be shifted into bigger Pots ; which do in the end of the Year, and as they grow bigger let them have bigger *Cases* once in three or four Years ; in shifting remove not the old *Mote* or *Mould* from the *Roots*, but let the like Rule be observ'd as herein is at first directed : After *Cases* are come to eighteen Inches square, the difficulty of removing them will be considerable, if you should yet put them in some enlarged, unto twenty two or twenty three Inches square, otherwise you might continue them longer in *Cases* : When they are grown too big for *Cases* they may serve, having their *Tops* and *Roots* well shortned and *prun'd*, to set elsewhere.

*Fig-Trees*, by reason of their great expence of *Sap* in *Leaves*, *Fruits*, and thick *Shoots*, require watering all the Summer, tho' little or none in the Winter ; this is to be understood of those in *Cases*, for those that grow on main Land will root so deep, that part of their *Roots* may continually have moisture, unless in a very dry Season ; if they want it, the *Fruit* will not fill, but drop off before it comes to Maturity.

The Figure of *Fig-Trees* will in no place answer that of other *Fruit-Trees* ; their Beauty in *Cases* consists in being real *Dwarf-Trees* without a middle *Stem*, if it may be, not shooting too high, not being too much extended, with bare *Branches* which they are subject unto, unless great foresight be had.



As to the *Trimming* and *Pruning* these *Trees*, it's necessary yearly towards Spring to cut off all dead *Branches*, which they are more subject unto than any *Trees*.

As to *Fig-Trees* placed again a Wall : In the Summer time do best to have some liberty from the Wall, and not close tack'd, as other *Fruit-Trees* ought to be, but rather upheld by Poles or Perches fasten'd to the Wall at a little distance, tho' in the Winter some strangling *Branches* ought to be cut off or nail'd closer, the better to place before them a defence of thick Mat or Straw upon a Frame to preserve them from the Cold, the *North-east* Winds; and sometimes the *South* proves Mortal to them, and these are to be continu'd until *April* or very near it.

Another material thing is, every Winter towards the begining or end, to take up all *Suckers* from the *Foot* near the *Root*, and these may be of good use to raise more *Trees*, being *planted* in a Trench near a Wall, and covered in the Winter : And the *Branches* of the *Tree* ought not to be permitted to grow too high, in order to keep them more full, therefore the new thick *Branches* ought yearly to be shortned, to a Foot or thereabout, and the *Bud* at the end of the *Branches* to be broken off in the Spring time, that instead of one single *Branch* it may have two, and it may cause them to shoot out *Figs* the earlier, and so the sooner Ripe, all furtherence thereto is necessary in our *Climates*; the same course of pinching off *End-Buds* is very profitable in Summer also, and weak *Branches* are to be cut quite off; for contrary to most other *Trees*, the thick and strong *Branches* of *Fig-Trees* bear *Fruit*, and not the small; but if for want of others, any weak *Branches* are preserv'd, they must be much shorten'd.

As to *Dwarf-Fig-Trees* out of *Cases*, they are troublesome to be kept, should be covered in the Winter, and ripen later than against the Wall.



## C H A P. XXXVII.

*Of the manner of Pruning pretty old Trees.*

**T**Here are three different states which well grown *Trees* arrive at. First, Vigorous Second Weak; Third, in the Mean.

As to the Vigorous, respect in *Pruning* must be always had to continue or amend the *Figure*, and as the *Figure* will bear it, to leave the strong *Branches* long, viz. a Foot and half, or two Foot, and cut off few but such as grow outwardly, to cut them slantingly within a *Bud* or two of the *Stem*, and inwardly within the thickness of a *Crown* piece.

When old *Trees* are very weak, commonly the best expedient is to *Plant* new ones in their places; but if Persons will preserve them they must disburthen them extreamly, by leaving few *Branches* for *Wood* upon them, and to shorten those to five or six Inches in length, and but very few weak ones, and none that are dry or over much wasted.

As to those that bear and prosper indifferently well, the Rules for young *Trees* are to be observ'd still, wherein the Beauty of the *Figure* is always to be respected, which in a *Dwarf-tree* it is to be low in the *Stem*, open in the Middle, round in circumference, many good *Branches* on its sides, equal in height and thickness. In a *Wall-tree* it is to be equally furnish'd on both sides, not to be let run up only, or too fast in the middle of it, nor yet too thin or sparing.



## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of defects of Pruning, in relation to old  
Dwarfs.*

**W**HERE a *Dwarf-tree* hath been left too high in the *Stem*, if it be old, the inconveniencies would be too many, if it be shortned; but if it be not above three year old, it may be shortned with advantage. If it be too thick in the middle, cut off clearly one, two, or more *Branches* that cause that fulness.

As to the defect in Roundness, a *Tree* is not easily amended, it must proceed from the not shortning those strong *Branches* it put forth first, and Year after Year as they ought to have been done; or else where a young *Tree* puts forth one strong *Branch* and one weak one, which were both left of a like length, (as they ought) but the strong over-growing the weak one, hath made it so unequal; tho' this strong one, by often shortning where it ought to have been, might in time have been conducted to supply the Vacancies, by shooting *Branches* side-ways, which the weak one could not. And this way the fourth defect, viz. of unequal Fulness on the sides, may be corrected.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of defects of Pruning, in relation to old  
Wall Trees.*

**T**HE defects of *Wall Trees* must proceed also from the Negligence or Ignorance of the *Gardiner* in the first Years, by not shortning the top *Shoot*, and maintaining an equal Strength on both sides, The cure is to shorten them at two or three Years growth,



1

*This Tree has Shot all one  
side because tinas ill In'd*



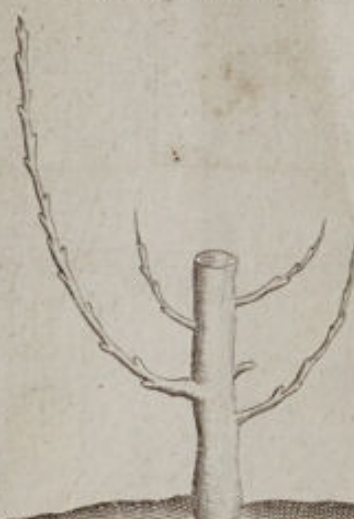
2

*A Tree ill Prun'd the great  
Branch being left to long*



3

*A good large Branch with  
some weak ones*



4

*The second ye  
Pruning*



5

*The effect of a good  
Pruning*



6

*This Tree is well Prun'd  
because the great Branch  
has not bin spared*



9

*The effect of the third  
years Pruning*



8

*The third years  
Pruning*

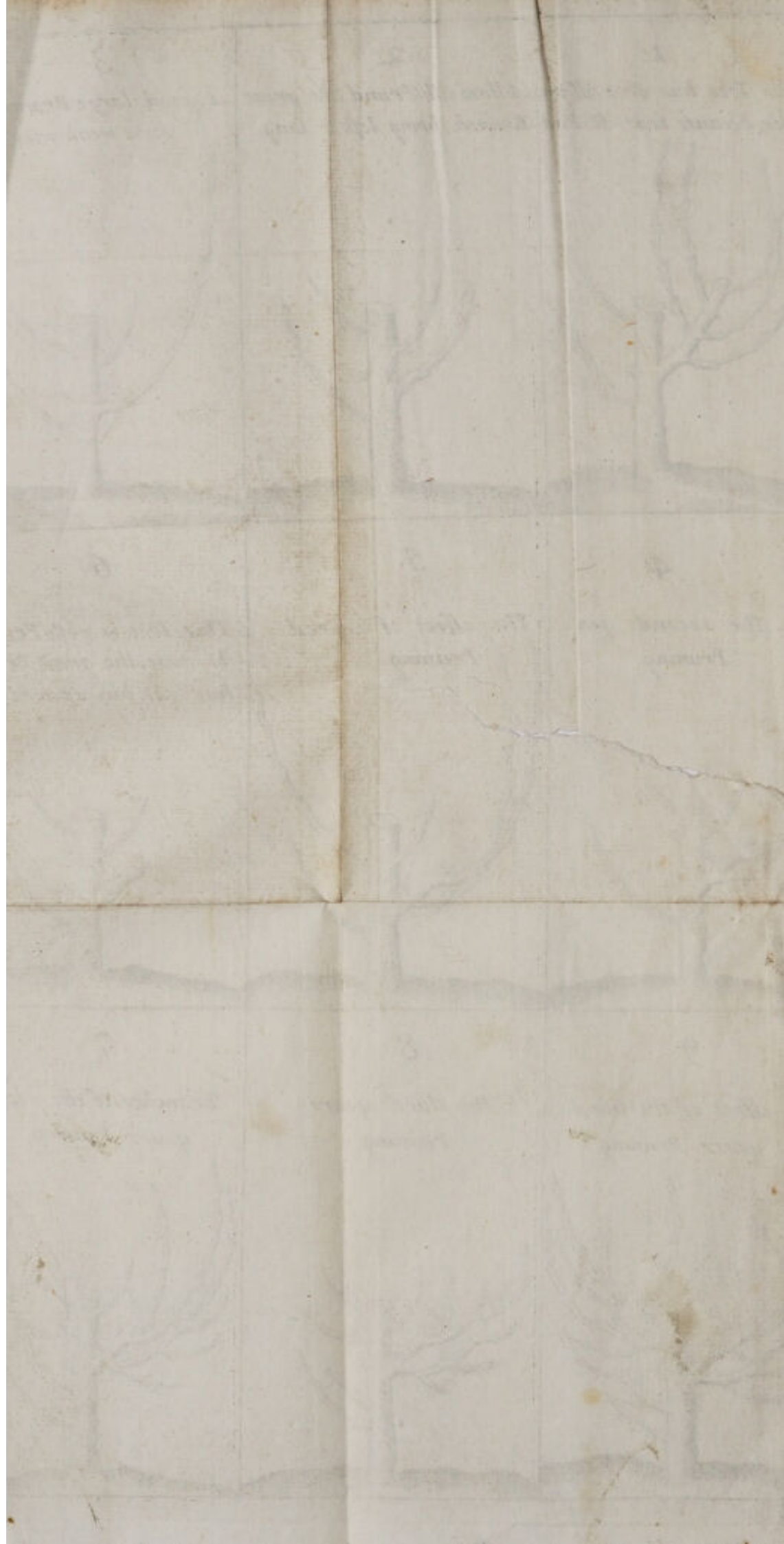


7

*Branches of the second  
years Pruning*

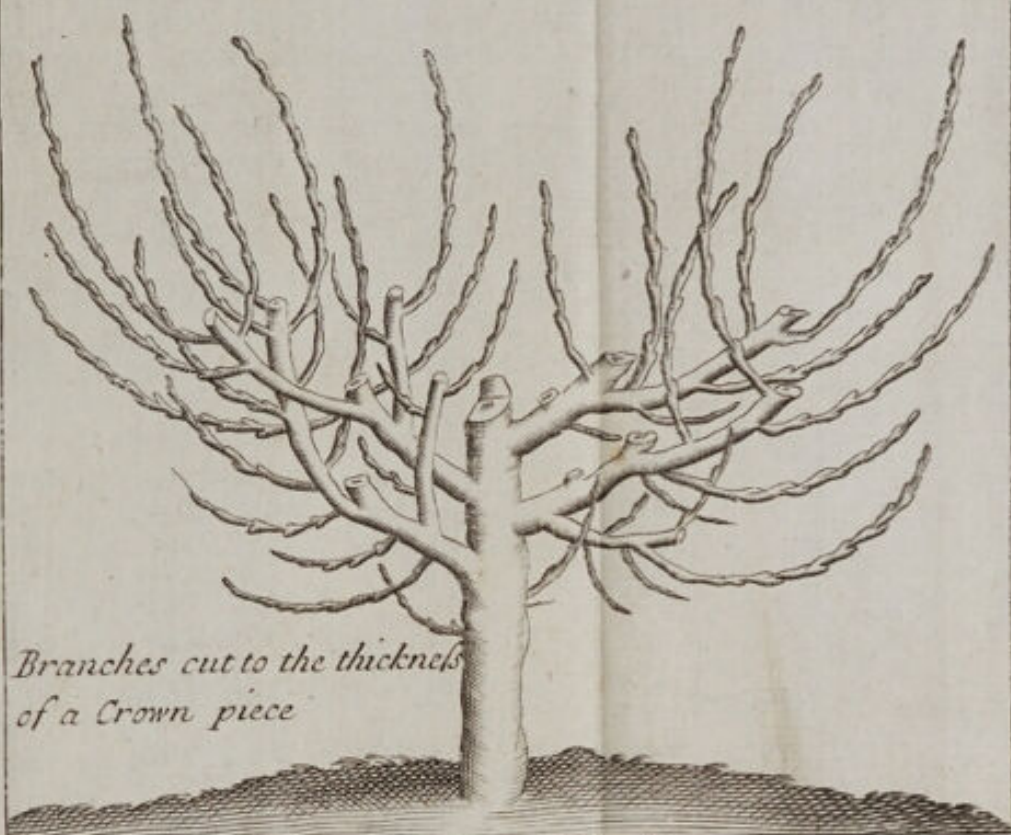








*An old Tree Prun'd as it ought to be after having shot  
with a great deal of Confusion*



*Branches cut to the thickness  
of a Crown piece*

*An old Tree that has shot Branches with great Confusion  
every where and chiefly in the middle*





The old tree found as it ought to be after  
with a great deal of confusion



The old tree found as it ought to be after  
with a great deal of confusion





growth, and tho the *Tree* be old, some thick *Branches* may be taken off, with good effect in all *Fruit-trees*, unless old *Peach-trees* that have been grafted; but if it be a *Peach-tree* that came from a Stone, (tho old) it will shoot again very vigorously, for tho' such be longer than those grafted before they come to bear, yet they recompence it in lasting much longer.

So that for an old grafted *Peach-tree*, the grand Remedy of short'ning may not avail, but the ordinary Rules of *Pruning* are to be continued, and to refresh it with new *Mould*, and cut off some of the old *Roots*, or else Plant a young fresh *Tree* in its place.

For such *Trees* as are short'ned, their young *Shoots* ought to be order'd according to the former Rules touching young *Trees*.

The over fulness of one side more than another, may arise either by permitting too many to grow thereon, or by cutting off several thick *Branches* near one another, whereby the *Tree* is apt to put forth many in their stead, which must needs cause confusion where they are, and likely to cause a defect in other places.

## C H A P. XL.

*Of the Pruning of Vines.*

**N**O *Tree* requires so much *Pruning*, nor is any so easie to be done as *Vines* are; without regular *Pruning*, it neither produceth so good, fine, or well fed *Fruit*, as it would otherwise do.

As the large *Branches* of *Pear-trees*, so the small ones of *Vines* produce no *Fruit*, but are wholly useles, consuming a great quantity of *Sap*, and are therefore to be cut off.

Two things are to be considered in the *Pruning* of *Vines*, the vigour of the *Plant*, and the time; for the latter,



later, nothing need be added touching the time, to what hath been said of the *Pruning* of other *Fruit-trees*.

As to vigour, the number of *Branches* to be left must be proportion'd thereto, so it make not confusion in the most vigorous; and the thickest and best plac'd are to be preserv'd, and ordinarily their length to be limited to four *Buds* or *Eyes* cut off a full Inch above the uppermost *Eye*, and slopewise, the Slope ending on that side the *Eye* grows on. These Directions are for *Vines* against a Wall.

The *Branches* of the foregoing Year are generally to be taken off, unless it happens (as often in old *Vines*) you cut off the old *Stem* (grown useles) unto the young, or have need to encrease the heighth or spreading of the *Tree*, and then they should be shortned to the leaving only two *Eyes*.

In moderate Climates the *Muscadine Grape* requires a *South Wall*, and to grow to ten foot high; the same heighth is proper for *Chasselas*, *Currans*, early *Grapes*, &c. but those not against Walls much lower.

When the preceeding Years *Pruning* hath produc'd three or four *Branches* (if the *Vine* be of the heighth above mention'd) the weak are to be wholly remov'd, and two of the strongest sufficient to be preserv'd, leaving four *Eyes* on the uppermost, and two on the lowermost *Branch*, and the succeeding Year taking the uppermost off close, if the lower have produc'd two good *Shoots*, or else so save what's wanting on the lower upon the uppermost.

When the old *Vines* begin to appear wasted, it's necessary to couch or lay down some young ones into the Earth, to beget new *Wood* from time to time, and also when any diminution of vigour is perceiv'd to refresh the *Roots* with *Dung* or *Soil*.

If the Season be very dry, watering in *August* is of great advantage to the *Fruit*.



If the *Fruit-bearing-branch* be not very vigorous, it ought in *July* to be cut off close to the *Fruit*: In the heat of Summer some *Leaves* are necessary over the *Fruit*, to shelter it from the Sun-beams until it's half ripe, and then bareness is requisite to bring it to maturity.

Birds and Flies of several Kinds, as well as Frosts and Rain, are Enemies to the *Grape*.

Nets may be used upon the *Vines* to prevent Birds eating the *Fruit*, and Vails with Water and a little Honey or Sugar, hung with Pack-thread upon the *Branches*, will induce Flies to drown themselves, which (when a considerable number are in) must be emptied, and renew'd as before.

---



---

---

OF  
FRUIT-GARDENS,  
AND  
Kitchen-Gardens.

---

VOL. II. PART. V.

---

CHAP. I.

*Concerning the care that is requir'd to pick Fruits  
when they are too abounding.*

THE intention of our *Culture* being to promote fine and fair *Fruit*, it follows from thence that there is something else to be done, which is here treated of.

When we neither meet with Frosts nor bliting Winds in the Months of *March*, *April*, and *May*, it's certain that in some parts of the *Tree*, there will remain too much *Fruit* to appear beautiful, and large; as in relation to *Kernel Fruit*, viz. *Pears* and *Apples* every *Bud* commonly produces seven, eight, nine, or ten, more or less: But as to *Stone-fruit*, except *Cherries*, they produce but one *Fruit* upon one *Bud*, but their *Fruit-bearing Branches* are commonly burthen'd with



with a great number of *Buds* close to one another, and upon every one of these *Branches* there may remain an excessive quantity of *Fruit*; so that the more *Fruit* there is upon a *Branch* of *Stone-Fruit*, as *Peaches*, *Apricots*, and *Plums*, the less nourishment they have; the *Sap* distributing it self to all parts alike: The same may be said of *Kernel-Fruit*, which had there been a less number of *Fruit* upon each *Bud* and *Branch*, it would have been larger and better; for it's impossible to have Largeness, Goodness, and Beauty all at one time; therefore there must be a particular care taken to leave no more *Fruit* upon one *Branch* or *Bud*, than what may be judg'd capable to receive sufficient Nourishment, in order to produce beautiful *Fruit*.

In *Pruning* of every *Tree* there must be left as many, if not more *Fruit-bearing Branches*, and more *Buds* upon it, than it seems to be capable of nourishing; having still a Precaution to the Hazards that are to be fear'd before the *Fruits* are safe, and being desirous to have the *Fruit* all beautiful alike; after the *Fruit* is well knit to make an exact view over every *Bud* and *Branch*, in order, as aforesaid, to leave no more *Fruit* than what may be judg'd capable of receiving sufficient Nourishment.

When these superfluous *Fruits* are left upon the *Branches*, Nature is disburthen'd of them by high Winds, which often happen in the Months of *July* and *August*, beating down as well the most beautiful and glorious *Fruit*, as the poor and meanest.

But sometimes these Winds do not happen, then the greatest of our *Fruit* which was knit, remains upon the *Trees*; and thus in the midst of Plenty, we have neither Beauty nor Goodness to recompence our *Culture*.

In this case it may be very proper to disburthen the *Tree* then on this manner, *viz.* to tarry 'till the *Fruits* be pretty large in order to take away the worst, and leave that which appears to be best,  
which



which will be about the end of *May*, or beginning of *June*, at which time the *Fruit* will be large enough to facilitate our choice.

But this picking or culling must be perform'd sooner in *Apricots* than in any other *Fruit*, because they ripen earlier, and in them we have a considerable advantage, in making *Compots* and wet *Sweet-meats* of the *Fruit*, which in other small *Fruits* we have not.

Care must be had to allow to all *Fruits* as much room as their Bigness may require when it approaches to Maturity, and particularly to those kinds of *Stone-fruits* which have short Stalks, as *Apricots*, *Peaches*, *Pavies*, &c. lest they should obstruct each other in growing; for its often seen that the largest destroy the smallest, so that the Nourishment they have receiv'd for two or three Mouths is all in vain; whereas, had these which are worst plac'd been pick'd off betimes, the small ones might have receiv'd the nourishment that was wasted on their Neighbour.

*Autumn* and *Winter Pears*, especially the largest; as the *Beurées Virgoules*, and *Bon-Chretiens*, do likewise stand in need of this picking or culling; for many of them being left upon one Knob, they seldom produce fine and large *Fruit*, but one smaller than the other, and ill favour'd, so that one or two upon a *Bud* will be enough.

As for *Summer Pears*, as the *little Muscats*, *Robines*, *Cassolets*, *Roussalets*, &c. they need not be pick'd, but only to be us'd like *Plums*, and *Cherries*, they being *Fruits* of an ordinary bigness, and are commonly good of all Sizes, provided they be ripe, and not tainted with Worms.

As to *Stone-Fruit*, except they arrive to their Extent and Bigness proper to their kind, they never attain the delicacy they ought to have, the *Peaches* remain shaggy and green, and don't quit the Stone clear; they are sowerish, and bitterish, the Pulp is rough, course, and often mealy, the Stone much larger than



it should be, all which are certain Marks of an ill *Peach*.

As to Winter *Bon-Chretiens*, in the Months of *April* and *May*, when they begin to appear knit, be careful to destroy small black Caterpillers, which are very numerous about them at that Season, gnawing the *Rind* of those *Pears*, which is the reason they are often crooked and uneven.

---

## C H A P. II.

*How to uncover, at a proper time, certain Fruits which require it.*

**F***Fruits* upon every *Tree* being thus pick'd, they thicken by degrees under the *Leaf*, some more some less, according to their Kinds; some sooner and others later, according to their time of Ripening; and as the Red or Carnation Colour, are necessary to certain *Fruits*, which they may have if not hindred, so there are certain others that can never attain it, as the *White Peaches*, *Vert Longs*, *Green Sugar-Pears*, *White Figs*, &c. There is likewise others, tho' never so much covered, always receive their Colour, as *Cherries*, *Rasberries*, *Strawberries*, &c.

As Colour renders certain *Fruits* more valuable, so they can never attain it, without the reflections of the Sun lye directly upon them; therefore it's proper at certain times to remove some Leaves which shade them too much; likewise these *Fruits* which are shaded too much, neither ripen so soon, nor have they the delicacy of Taste as those which are more expos'd. Yet care must be had not to uncover them 'till they have attain'd their proper size, and begin to lose the great Greenness they had 'till then.

They ought to be uncover'd by degrees, at two or three several times, in the space of six or seven Days;



for if they were uncover'd all at once, the great heat of the Sun would certainly occasion a great disorder, the tender Rind not being accustomed to the open Air.

But to render the Colour more bright and lively, it will be very proper to use a kind of Seringe, like unto a watering Pot, to water them two or three times a day during the great heat of the Sun, which softens the Rind, and is of wonderful use to that end, especially for *Apricots* and *Peaches*, and also succeeds well upon *Bon-Chretiens* and *Virgoulee Pears*, being somewhat whitish and having a fine thin Rind, they are apt to receive that fine Colour, which becomes them so well.

### C H A P. III.

*Of the maturity of Fruits, and the order which Nature observes in it.*

**F**INE Fruits having attain'd their Size and Colour, and arriv'd to their Maturity, it behoves us to improve those rich Presents which Nature and our skilful Culture treat us with,

Care must be had to gather *Fruits*, and make use of them when they are entirely ripe, lest they be in danger of perishing; some thro' Rottenness, which happens with most *Apples*; others by growing mealy, as in *Peaches*; some by growing soft first, as many *Pears* do, especially those which grow tender, as the *Beurree*; others by growing dry, as the *Musk Pear*, &c.

Care must likewise be had to know rightly when they are at Maturity; for some are about a Week good, and no more, as the *Rouffelets* or *Russetins*; others not above a day or two, as *Figs*, *Cherries*, and most *Peaches*, &c. and some have a much longer time, a  
*Apples,*



*Apples, Bon-Chretien Pears, &c.* a Month or six Weeks, or more ; which is explain'd more at large in the third Part, where you have the time of Ripening set down in every particular sort of *Fruit*.

As all *Stone Fruits*, some *Summer Pears*, and all *Red Fruits*, are in perfection from the time they are gather'd ; it follows that none of them should be gather'd until they are at full Maturity, by reason that how little time soever their Maturity may last, they preserve themselves much better and longer upon the *Stock*, than they would do being gather'd.

## C H A P. IV.

*How to judge of the Maturity and Goodness of Fruit.*

T H E R E are three Senses which have the Gift of judging of the appearances of Maturity of *Fruits*, viz. Sight, Feeling for the most part, and Smelling for some, but the Taste is the only real judge, as well of the Maturity as of the Goodness ; tho' it's sufficiently known there are some *Fruits* which are neither good nor agreeable to the Palate, tho' actually ripe.

The *Eye* alone is sufficient to judge all *Red Fruits*, as *Grapes, Cherries, Strawberries, &c.* when they are all over painted with that fine lively *black* or *red Colour* which are natural to them, which shew them to be full ripe ; or otherwise when one part of them wants it, or appears green, it shews them not to be at full Maturity : Feeling may serve very well for all tender mellow *Pears*.

Sometimes both Feeling and Sight will be requisite, as for *Figs, Plums, Apricots, and Peaches* ; but it is not a fair Colour that always denotes their Maturity ; but when they are gently press'd, and come off with



ease and leave the Stalk fixed to the Tree, it's a good mark of their being ripe. But as to *Figs*, they ought to be gather'd with the Stalks on them, for it adds to the beauty of their Figure; as also for *Cherries*, *Pears*, and *Apples* to be gather'd with their Stalks on, for it's an agreeable Ornament to them, and their being without it would be a defect.

As Sight and Feeling denote the Maturity of the aforesaid *Fruits*, so smelling with Sight may be admitted to others, as *Mellons*, for after their Colour, Stalk, and beautiful Figure being approv'd, it will be very proper to smell to them before they are cut, to judge of their Maturity and Goodness; yet those that have the best Scent and Savour, are not always the best *Fruit*.

Having thus explain'd all the outward appearances of Maturity of the aforementioned *Fruits*, yet the Taste must decide the Point; for let the outward Marks be never so favourable, yet if the *Fruit* don't please the Palate, the others are render'd useless: But, as is said before, *Fruits* are not all of an agreeable Goodness, that which pleases ones Palate may displease anothers.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Causes of the Forwardness or Backwardness of Maturity in all manner of Fruits.*

**F**RUIT S ripen sooner or later, First, According as the Months of *April* and *May* are in Warmness, or cause the *Trees* to blossom.

Secondly, According to what Exposition they are plac'd, whether *East*, *West*, or *South*, and particularly what Climate they are planted in.

*Fruits* that are knit betimes are ripe the soonest, and those which are planted on a *Southern* Exposure are  
sooner



fooner ripe than those planted on *East* or *West*, or on a *Dwarf* or *Standard*, the Sun casting a greater Reflexion upon them, than upon the others.

So likewise those planted in a light *Earth*, and a hot Climate, are sooner ripe than those planted in a heavy wet *Ground*, or a cold Climate.

But supposing two several *Grounds* of two different Natures, viz. one light and sandy *Earth*, and the other a heavy clayey *Earth*, are so near one another and the *Fruits* of each *Ground* placed to one Exposition equally alike, insomuch that the Reflexion of the Sun can make no difference, yet those planted in the light soil will ripen the soonest. So that to have *Fruits* ripen early, is to plant them in a favourable Exposure, in a hot Climate, and in a light sandy *Earth*; all which renders the *Fruit* to knit betimes, and consequently will arrive to Maturity sooner.

---

#### C H A P. VI.

*Of some particular Remarks of Maturity in every kind of Fruit, and first of the Summer Fruits, which ripen altogether upon the Tree.*

**B**O T H Stone and Kernel *Fruit* ripen sooner upon a sickly *Tree*, than upon a sound one, and are commonly larger than those on a vigorous *Tree*, but that Largeness is only a Swelling, or a kind of Dropsie, which is the reason that the *Pulp* of those *Fruits* are larger than they should be, and is generally insipid or bitter. *Peaches* that drop of themselves are commonly past Maturity, and consequently nought.

Summer *Pears*, as little *Muscats*, &c. the first Mark of their Maturity appears towards the Stalk, which must be a little yellowish; and for a greater



Mark full Maturity, that Yellowness must appear through a certain tann'd and red Colour which covers all the Rind; and lastly, they must begin to drop of themselves, at which time it will be proper to gather and eat them.

'Tis not so with small *Peaches*, or to early or late Purple *Peaches*, nor to *Pavies*, they being *Fruits* which can hardly ever be too ripe, and are commonly very good when they drop; infomuch that when they drop without being shook, it's a good mark of their Maturity as well as Goodness.

The several sorts of Summer *Pears* which ripen in August, as *Cuisse Madams*, *Gross Blanquets*, *skinless Pears*, the *Orange Pears*, Summer *Bon-Cretiens*, *Cassolets*, *Robins*, *Roussilets*, &c. Their Maturity is known either by their dropping, or not resisting when they are gather'd; or else by a certain yellow Colour, which appears in the *Rind*, especially near the Stalk.

*Peaches* are fit to eat when gather'd, and require no Store-houses at least to ripen them, for they never ripen off the *Tree*, so that they must not be gather'd before they are perfectly ripe; but a day or two of Repose in the Store-house, affords them a certain Coolness which is very proper for them, and that which they can't acquire upon the *Tree*.

## C H A P. VII.

*Of the Scituation that is proper for the Fruits that are gather'd, in order to preserve them some time.*

**I**N order to preserve Summer *Fruits* for two or three Days, (especially *Peaches*) they must be laid either in Closets or Store-houses, which must be very dry and clean, and full of Shelves, the Windows being always open,



open, unless it be in very cold Weather; you must lay a Finger thick of Moss upon those Shelves, which may serve for a quilt, taking care that the Moss be very dry, and has no ill Scent, that every *Peach* so placed, may sink into the Moss, and lye softly, without being squeez'd by any of the others, for as it is with *Mellons*, so it is with *Peaches*, that they eat better after being gather'd a day or two, and laid at a distance from the Sun, than just after their being gather'd, at which time they are luke-warm.

They must be visited carefully once a day, lest there should appear any Rottenness, removing all that are in the least tainted, lest they should spoil the others; but all this must be done with a careful and skilful Hand.

*Peaches* ought to be plac'd with that part downwards which the Stalk grows upon, for fear of bruising them; and for *Figs* they ought to be laid sideways, lest by bruising the *Eye*, they lose their best Juice.

*Pears* may be plac'd with their *Eye* downwards, and the *Stalk* standing upright for fear of being broke, *Apples*, if laid so carefully, may be plac'd either upon the *Eye* or *Stalk*; but they may be laid only upon one another, 'till such time as they are at Maturity, after which they ought to be plac'd in some better order; but beware of laying them upon *Hay* or *Straw*, for that gives them an ill Scent.

The best way for *Grapes* is to hang them up in the Air fastened to a Pack-thread, or about a Hoop, or fixed to some Beam.

But if any Person is desirous to preserve them 'till *February*, *March*, or *April*, they must be gather'd before they are perfectly ripe, otherwise they are apt to rot too soon; Care must likewise be had once in two or three Days to pick off all the rotten ones carefully.



The greatest mark of Maturity in all manner of *Apples*, commonly consists in their being wrinkled; except the *Apis* or *Ladies Apple*, which never wrinkles, but is known to be at Maturity, by the green Rind turning all yellow.

With these Precautions *Fruit* may be easily preserv'd as long as it will last, nothing will hurt it but the Winter Frosts, which when it once enters them, they retain no manner of Goodness, but immediately decay.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Transportation of Fruits.*

**P***eaches, Figs, Strawberries, Cherries, Rasberries,* &c. in order to their Transportation from one place to another, require Water Carrage, or the Back or Arms of a Porter, for fear of jogging; but more proper on their Heads, as our Fruiterers in *England* commonly do: But if they be *Peaches*, they must be laid upon that part which is fixed to the Stalk; without touching one another, and be laid upon a bed of Moss or tender Leaves, laid pretty thick, and wrapt up in *Vine Leaves*, and so order'd that they may not move out of their places. And in case several Beds be laid one upon another, a good separation of Moss must be laid between them: Or a reasonable quantity of Leaves; and the whole wrapt up with Cloath well fastned, in order to keep the Basket close and in good order. For *Figs* you must have Sives not above two inches deep, laying a Bed of *Vine Leaves* at the bottom, and place the *Figs* sideways, wrapping them up first asunder, one in a *Leaf*, taking care to order them so well, and so neatly close to one another, that their transportation may not be



be able to remove them; and never to lay one on the top of another.

This Bed being made, it must be cover'd with Leaves, and next with a Sheet of Paper, neatly fix'd about the Sive with small Pack-thread, in order to keep the *Fruit* close.

Good *Plums* being laid up without any Ceremony, may be put up in any Basket, with Leaves at the bottom of it; the top must be cover'd also with Leaves, and afterwards with Paper, tying it close up as the former.

Common *Plums* may be transported in great Baskets, only putting Leaves at the top and bottom.

*Apricots* ought to have the same care us'd about them as *Peaches*.

*Strawberries* may be put into Baskets made on purpose for them, laying Leaves at the bottom, and stuffing Leaves round the sides, covering them with a wet Linnen Cloath.

*Grapes* may be carried the same way as *Peaches*.

In order to transport our principal *Fruits*, if not above a days Journey, a large square Basket may be made close of *Oser* or *Willow*, divided into several Stories on the inside, in the manner of a Press; this may open sideways like a Press, or on the top, and then having our Sives ready pack'd up, they may be put into this large Basket, placing the lowermost Story first, and then the uppermost.

If this Basket is not very close, there ought to be a Cloath, or some sort of Covering thrown over it, to keep the *Fruit* from Dust.

There may be a small Padlock fix'd to the door of this Basket, with two Keys to it, the one for the Persons to whom the *Fruit* is sent, and the other for him that sends it, by which means the *Fruit* may be sent safe.



## C H A P. IX.

*Of the Store-houses or Conservatories for Fruits.*

**A**S the Care and Skill of our Culture has yeilded us a sufficient quantity of each kind, both of *Autumn* and *Winter Fruits*, and that which is agreeable both in Goodness and Beauty ; it follows, that we make some Provision whereby to preserve them as long as each kind may continue in Maturity : Which may be done in observing these following Conditions.

First, To establish a good Store-house free from *Frosts*, which are a great Enemy to *Fruits*.

Secondly, That this Store-house must be expos'd to the *South* or *East*, or at least to the *West* Sun, the *Northern* Exposition being pernicious to it.

Thirdly, That the *Walls* of the Store-house should be at least twenty four Inches thick, otherwise the *Frost* cannot be kept out.

Fourthly, That the Windows, beside the common Quarrels, should have good double Paper Sashes, very close, and well stopt, together with a double Door, infomuch that the cold Air may not be able to enter in ; for the least frosty Air that may be will certainly cause great Disorder ; So that we cannot be too careful in this matter. But as the *Frost* is pernicious in this Store-house, so likewise *Fire* will cause a Disorder ; so that there must be a double care to keep out the one without the other.

At this time it will be very requisite constantly to keep some *Water* in an Earthen Vessel in our Store-house, to give us certain notice whether or no the *Frost* approaches us. It will likewise be of no less use to us, to have a good Weather Glass of the several Degrees of Heat and Cold, plac'd on the outside of the *Northern* Exposure, to give us a timely Precaution



on of the approach of the *Frost*; and when it continues for two Nights together at the fifth or sixth, and even at the seventh or eighth Degrees, tho' the first Night may have done no harm, the second is much to be feared, and therefore the next Day we must use all the careful means we can to secure it with Quilts or Blanquets, or else a great deal of dry Moss to secure our *Fruits* from perishing.

But if it freezes so violent, as that we are expos'd to danger, and having a good Cellar, it will be very material to remove them into it, 'till such times as the violent *Frosts* are over.

In all such Cases care must be taken to replace them all in the same order they were in before in the Store-house; and as soon as the Weather grows better, to remove such as are ripe or tainted, Rottenness being the worst Accident that's to be fear'd.

Having made a Provision against Cold, we must also preserve our *Fruits* from all ill Tastes, as the neighbourhood of *Hay, Straw, Dung, Cheese, foul Linnen*, especially that which has been us'd in the *Kitchen*, all which are very dangerous, and must not in the least be suffer'd near our Store-house, or Conservatory. A certain musty Taste, together with the Smell of *Fruits* that have been laid up long together, is likewise very disagreeable. And therefore,

Fifthly, The Store-house must not only have good Overtures, a high Ceiling, the height of which is to be from ten to twelve Foot high, but the Windows must be often kept open, that is when there is no fear of Cold, either in the Night or in the Day; because fresh Air from without, when it is temperate, is incomparable to purifie and re-establish that which has been long inclos'd.

Sixthly, That neither a Cellar nor a Garret are fit to make this Conservatory; the Cellar a sort of mustiness, and moist Heat effusing from it, which inclines the *Fruit* to Rottenness; and the Garret, because  
of



of the Cold which easily penetrates the Roof; and therefore a Ground Room is best, or at least a first Story, accompanied with other Lodging Rooms over and under it, as well as on the Sides.

Seventhly, this Store-house requires many Shelves fram'd together, in order to lodge the *Fruits* separate one from another, the finest on the best side, and baking *Pears* and others on the worst; the distance of these Shelves is to be nine or ten Inches asunder, and about seventeen or eighteen Inches broad, that they may hold the more, and please the sight the better.

Eightly, These Shelves should be a little sloping outwardly, about an Inch in the Breadth, with an Edge upon the outside about two Fingers high, to hinder the *Fruits* from falling; the *Fruits* being not so much in sight when the Shelves are level: And when any of them are rotten, it's not so easily perceiv'd, and that Rottenness commonly communicates it self to those that are about it, unless remedied at first.

Ninthly, That for fear of this Rottenness, every Shelf should be visited every other Day without fail, to remove whatever may be tainted.

Tenthly, That the Shelves should be cover'd with something, as dry Moss, or fine Sand, of about an Inch thick, in order to keep every *Fruit* steady after it's plac'd as it should be, and to keep them asunder; for the *Fruits* must in no wise be allow'd to touch each other.

It's much pleasanter to see them all in a row upon their Basis, than to lye confus'd and irregular.

Eleventhly, and lastly, That care be taken to sweep our *Conservatory* or Store-house often, to suffer no Cobwebs in it, and to keep *Traps* for *Rats* and *Mice*; and it will not be amiss to allow some secret entrance for *Cats*, otherwise the *Fruit* will be in danger of being gnawn by those pernicious little domestick Animals.



The Conservatory which is particularly design'd for *Winter-fruits*, is likewise very useful for those of *Autumn*, either *Pears* or *Grapes*; and for *Summer-fruits*, either *Peaches*, *Pavies*, *Brugnions*, *Plums*, &c. these, as has been already said, are much better a day after their being gather'd, than the very day, because they acquire a certain Coolness in the Store-house, which is a great Improvement to them, which they can never have while they are upon the *Tree*.

The *Vert Longs*, *Butter Pears*, *Vine Pears*, *Messier Johns*, *green Sugar Pears*, &c. after these the *Petit Oins*, *Lansacs*, *Marchionesses*, *Bergamots*, and *Amadots*, the *Besidery*, and the *thick Stalks*, &c. are the first that pass during the Month of *November*. The Thumb (as is already said, for the *Butter Pears*, *Vert Longues*, *green Sugar Pears*, and others which have begun to ripen in *October*) denotes the time of their Maturity; as likewise the *Petit Oins*, *Marchionesses*, *Russetins*, *Lansacs*, &c. they being melting *Pears*. A whitish Colour which forms it self in the *Messier Jean*, a yellow Cast in the *Amadots*, *thick Stalks*, *Besideries*, &c. and a Moisture upon the Rind of the *Bergamots*, together with a little Yellowness which discovers it self upon them, all these are certain Signs which inform us, without the help of the Thumb, of the Maturity of those five last kinds of *Fruits*, with examining and reviewing constantly, or at least every other day: This Reviewing must be continued for the following Months for all other *Fruits*; and in Reviewing remove such as begin to rot.

The *Louise Bonne*, *Winter Thorns*, *Ambrets*, *Le Chasseries*, *St. Germain's*, *Virgoulees*, dry *Martins*, and *Spanish Bon-Chretiens*, with the *Fenouillet*, and *Autumn Calvil Apples*, and some *Pome d' Apees*, and *Reinettees*, &c. all these kinds of Fruit ripen at the beginning of *December*, and a little Yellowness, together with some Wrinkles, discovers it self upon the six first, by which we may judg, in case they do not resist the Thumb,



Thumb, that they are fit to eat, but 'till then we must not venture to meddle with them: In cutting them the Knife will soon discover their want of Ripeness. Those kinds of *Pears* are very subject to soften, and thereby are certainly apt to deceive those who do not strictly examin them every Day.

As to dry *Martins*, *Spanish bon-Chretiens*, and *Portails*, as soon as ever there appears the least Spot of Rottenness upon them, their time is come, and they are soon threatned with Rottenness, but with this Advantage, that they remain a pretty while in the state of perfect Maturity.

The *Fenouillet* or *Reinettee* declare their Maturity as soon as they become extreamly wrinkled. The *Apis* declare theirs when their green Colour turns to yellow.

The *Calvills* seem to become lighter, and their *Kernels* loosen, and rattle in shaking when they ripen, they become yellow without wrinkling, which are admirable Qualifications in those Kinds of *Fruit*.

Such *Fruits* as have resisted the Thumb in *December*, will yeild to it in their turns in the Months of *January* and *February*, but when the *Winter Thorns* are not able to change their Colour a little in those Months, they become mealy and insipid, and perish without attaining a perfect Maturity, which is a loss to the curious, since it is one of our best *Pears*.

The *Louise Bonnes*, and the long green *Pears* of *September* and *October*, seldom grow yellow, but they wrinkle and become soft, mellow, and agreeable to the Touch.

Many *Ambrets* soften before they grow yellow, especially upon those *Trees* grafted upon *free Stocks*, that are too full, therefore they require Sugar to correct their Taste, which is not so good as it should be, tho' they be so very full of Liquor. The large *Winter Muskets*, and the *Portail Pears* do neither of them yeild to the Thumb; but the Yellowness of the first, and



and a few Wrinkles, or some Rottenness in the second, invite us to make use of their Goodness whatever it be.

A chief thing to be observ'd in ordering of the *Fruits* in the Store-house or Conservatory, is to place every Kind upon different Shelves, or if several sorts upon one Shelf, to distinguish them by Divisions of Edges; and not only so, but to make a distinction of *Fruits* of one Kind. As,

First, To place those that are fallen before their Time by themselves, out of Sight, they seldom looking well because of their being much wrinkled, some more and others less, according to their dropping sooner or later; but they ripen at last, tho' it be pretty long after others of their Kind, and pretty often they are incomparably good, especially when their Fall does not exceed above a Month before the time of the common gathering.

Secondly, Those growing upon *Dwarf-Standards* must be laid apart, as well as those of good *Espaliers*, or good *Walls*.

The same Method ought to be followed for the *Fruits* of high *Standards*, and the same for the *Fruits* of *Northern Espaliers*, by reason that regularly the *Fruits* of good *Espaliers* and *Walls* ripen first, those of vigorous *Dwarfs* follow them, those of *Dwarfs* grafted upon *Quince Stocks* precede those that are grafted upon *free Stocks*, and those of infirm *Trees* precede both the one and the other,

The *Fruits* of high *Standards* succeed and often mix with these, and are the best of all, excepting only *Plums* and *Figs*. The *Fruits* of the *Northern Exposure* ripen last of all.

“ The Author here prefers the *Fruit* of good *Espaliers* and high *Standards* to those of *Walls*, but  
 “ the Climate in *England* being so much colder than  
 “ that of *Versailles*, the hazard will be too great  
 “ for a Gentleman to depend upon any of the *Win-*  
 “ *ter*



“ *ter Pears* for high *Standards* ; notwithstanding in  
 “ a favourable Year some *Winter Pears*, as the *Ama-*  
 “ *dots* and other dry *Pears*, eat better from a high  
 “ *Standarld* than from a *Wall*.

*Winter Bon-Chretiens* and *Colmars* let all other *Pears* pass before them, and in the mean time the others begin to turn yellow and ripen, and to wrinkle a little towards the Stalk.

When the *Bon Chretien* is perfectly ripe, the Pulp is almost melting, and when not, it remains very stony ; some of them will keep till *March* and *April* ; the *Bugys*, *St. Lezins*, and *Martin Secs* joyn with those ; the *Bugys* in *March* and *April* are very delicious, with their tender watery Pulp, tho' a little fowrish. The *St. Lezins* with their firm Pulp, accompanied with a little Perfume, also make some Figure, but it's very difficult to preserve them, because the least touch of Cold blackens them entirely, and renders them odious to sight, as well as disagreeable to the Palate.

As for baking *Pears*, they are good at all times for the end they are design'd for, particularly when they begin to grow yellow ; with this Proviso, that all such as are tainted with Rottenness must be laid aside, lest they should infect those that are sound : And thus the *Franck Real*, and the *Carmelite*, and especially the *Double blossom'd*, which are the best of those that are only fit to bake : The *Angober* and *Catillaes* may chance to acquire some Goodness, being season'd with Sugar, and the heat of the Fire ; but they still retain a touch of Tartness, which can never agree with nice Palats.

*Autumn Calvils* and *Reinets* are admirable for preserving ; the *Fenouilletts* are not so good, by reason of their Sweetness ; but the first have a kind of Briskness, which gives them an incomparable Taste.



## C H A P. X.

*Of the Diseases of Fruit-Trees.*

**F***Ruit-Trees* are subject to certain Infirmities that destroy them, which we may very well term Distempers; *Yellow Leaves* out of Season, new *Shoots* growing black, and dying on their Extremities in the Months of *August* and *September*; *Fruits* remaining small, or dropping off themselves; which Distempers are so many speaking Symptoms of the Indisposition of the *Foot*. Among these Infirmities there are some that may be cured with the assistance of some Remedies, and others which hitherto appear incurable, since whatever can be done to them has still prov'd ineffectual.

In order not to omit any thing relating to those Accidents which our *Trees* are liable to without including such as proceed from too long Wounds of great Heat, of great Cold, and Storms, of Whirlwinds, Hails, &c.

In the first Place, there are Distempers common to all *Trees* in general.

Secondly, There are some that are peculiar to every particular Kind.

The common Distempers consist either in a defect of Vigour which makes the *Trees* appear in a languishing Condition, or else they are Storm'd by large white Worms, which are sometimes form'd in the *Earth*, and there gnaw the *Roots*, or the *Bark* of the neighbouring *Stem*: These mischievous little Insects, which we call *Tons*, by degrees cause so great a disorder, that the *Tree* which is attack'd by them, and had always appear'd vigorous before, all on a sudden dies without any Remedy.

The peculiar Distempers in *Pear Trees* against *Walls*, are when their *Leaves* are attack'd with what



we call *Tygers*, *Cankers*, and *Scabs* in other *Pear-Trees* viz. *Robines*, *small Muscadines*, &c. *Gum* on *Stone-fruit-Trees*, especially *Peach-Trees*, which commonly destroys that part on which it fixes, either *Branch* or *Stem*; and when unfortunately it attacks that part where the *Tree* is grafted, which is often hid under the *Ground*, it spreads round about that *Graft*, without any bodies observing it, for the *Tree*, still continues in a good *Condition* while there remains any passage for the *Sap*; but finally this *Gum* hind'ring the *Sap* from rising to the upper parts of the *Tree* makes that *Tree* die suddenly.

Moreover some *Peach-Trees* are also attack'd with *Emets*, and a small kind of green *Fleas*, which sometimes fasten on the young *Shoots*, and hinder them from thriving; sometimes on the new *Leaves*, and cause them first to shrink, next to dry and fall: We have likewise *North-east* Winds which blast, in some *Springs* wither, and as it were burn all the new *Shoots*, infomuch that the *Trees* on which this unlucky Influence lights appears dead, while others about them are green, full of fine *Leaves*, and continue to produce fine *Shoots*; Besides the most vigorous *Trees* are subject to have the end of their new *Shoots* intirely cut off by a little black round Insect, call'd *Butter-cutter*.

*Fig Trees* dread the great Colds of the *Winter*, which are capable of freezing their whole-Head, unless they be exteamly well cover'd.

They are likewise subject in that *Winter* Season to have the lower part of their *Stems* gnaw'd by *Rats* and *Melots*, or *Garden Mice*, which make them pine and die.

Those very Animals, together with *Laires*, *Ear-wigs*, and *Snails*, likewise spoil the *Fruits* on the *Trees*, when they approach to *Maturity*, especially *Peaches* and *Plums*.

*Goose-berries* have likewise their peculiar Enemies, which



which are a kind of small green *Caterpillars*, which form themselves towards the Months of *May* and *June* on the back part of their *Leaves*, and eat them to that degree, that those little *Shrubs* remain altogether bear, and their *Fruit* being expos'd to the great Heats of the Sun, is destroyed without being able to ripen.

*Straberry-Plants* in the Prime of their Youth and Vigour, are as it were treacherously attack'd in their very *Roots* by those wicked *Tons* which destroy them.

“ The Author here makes mention of the *Tillage*,  
“ and bringing into order the several sorts of defective  
“ *Earth*, but since he has treated of it heretofore, we  
“ referr you to the first Part, where he treats more  
“ largely upon it.

When there is not *Mould* enough, it must be augmented either about the *Roots*, removing all the ill *Mould*, to put better in the room of it, or else by laying new *Mould* over the Surface of it. The *Mould* being thus amended, without doubt the *Trees* will thrive better in it, and grow more vigorous.

When the Distemper is only visible by a certain Yellowness; as for Example, *Pears* grafted upon *Quince-stocks*, in certain Grounds always grow yellow, tho' the Ground seems to be pretty good; it is a good and certain Advertisement to remove them, and to place others in their room on *Free-stocks* which are much more vigorous, and agree better in an indifferent Soil than others.

When *Peaches* grafted upon *Almond Stocks* cast too much *Gum* in moist *Grounds*, others must be planted upon *Plum-stocks*, and when they do not thrive upon *Plum-stocks* in sandy *Ground*; only such must be planted there as are on *Almond* or *Peach-stocks*.

If the *Tree* appears over burthen'd with *Branches*, so as only to shoot very small ones, it must be eas'd until it begins again to produce fine *Shoots*, by lowering,



the uppermost *Branches*, or by removing part of those which cause a Confusion in the middle.

When the Distemper proceeds from the *Tree* being ill-condition'd before it was planted, from its having a scabby, poor *Foot*, half dead for want, or from its being too weak, the best way is to pull it up, and to plant a better in the room.

If the *Tree*, being good of it self, has been planted too deep or too shallow, or with too many *Roots*, the best expedient is to take it up again, *prune* the *Roots* anew, and replant it according to the Rules of Art.

And to all these ends it is very necessary to keep always some dozens of good *Trees* in Baskets, to place new ones ready grown in the room of such as must be remov'd.

When the *Trees* are attack'd with some *Cankers*, you must with the point of a Knife, remove the part so tainted to the Quick, and then apply a little Cow-Dung to it, covering it with a piece of Linnen: a kind of *Rind* will grow over it, which will cover the Wound and so that Accident will be cured.

When Caterpillers annoy a *Tree*, care must be taken to remove them.

When Rats gnaw the *Bark*, Snares and Traps must be laid for them.

When the Distemper is suppos'd to proceed from *Tons*, the Foot of the *Tree* must be uncover'd to extirpate them absolutely, putting new *Mould* in the room of the old, after having shortned the *Roots* that are gnawn.

Among the incurable Distempers, the first is old Age; for when a *Pear* or a *Plum Tree* has serv'd for Thirty, Forty, or Fifty Years, we may conclude that it has perform'd its part, and there's no hopes of a Return, so that it must be taken out, not leaving any of its *Roots* in the Ground, putting new *Mould*  
into



into the room of it, in order to plant new *Trees* there.

Secondly, Another incurable distemper is *Tygers*, which stick to the back of the Leaves of *Wall Pear Trees*, and dry them up, by sucking all the green Matter that was in them.

The Author has tryed many Experiments for the destroying of these *Tygers* as imploying all manner of strong, sower, corrosive, stinking Lees, viz. of *Rhue*, *Tobacco*, *Salt*, *Vinegar*, &c. to wash the Leaves and Branches, as also *Oil*; he has likewise smoak'd them with Brimstone, burnt old Leaves, scrap'd the Back of the *Branches* and *Stem*, to which they stick; he has dayly endeavour'd to find out some new Expedient, and after all, never succeeded in any of them: There still remains some of the Seed of that cursed Insect in some part or other; and in the Months of *May* and *June* this Seed is hatch'd by the heat of the Sun, and then multiplies infinitely: And therefore one of these two things must be done, either no *Pears* must be suffer'd against a *Wall*, or in a *Espalier*, or else we must resolve to see those *Tygers* upon them, contenting our selves with burning all the Leaves yearly, and with cleansing the *Trees*, as much as is possible.

Thirdly, *Gum* is an incurable Distemper, which fastens to the *Peach Trees*, and other *Stone-fruits*. When it only appears on the *Branch* 'tis no great matter; 'tis but cutting the said *Branch* two or three Inches below the part so distemper'd, where this Gangreen is hinder'd from extending farther, as it would infallibly do, if it stuck about the *Bud* or *Graff*, or all over the *Stem*, or on most of the *Roots*; and then the sole expedient is to loose no more time about it, and consequently to remove such a *Tree* out of the Ground in the manner aforesaid.

A Wound sometimes proceeds from an external Accident; for Instance, from a Wound which has



been made by way of Incision, by a Scrach ; and sometimes from an evil inward Indisposition ; that *Gum* is nothing but a spurted *Sap*, which is subject to Corruption and Rottenness, from the time it ceases to be inclos'd in its ordinary Channels which lie between the Wood and the Bark ; in that case the Remedy is easie, especially when it happens only on a *Branch*, as is already declar'd in the preceding Article. When the Distemper affects the *Stem*, it often cures it self by a *Knob*, or a continuation of new *Bark*, which extends over the *Bark* so wounded. Sometimes it's necessary to apply a Plaister of Cow Dung over it, cover'd with a piece of Linnen until the Wound be clos'd : When the *Gum* proceeds from the inside, it's incurable on the *Stem* or *Roots*.

“ The Author treats much of bear Cow Dung, as  
 “ a Plaister for all wounded *Trees* ; but we have found  
 “ by Experience, that Cow or Horses Dung mixt  
 “ with Loam made up like grafting *Earth*, and workt  
 “ up with a little Tallow like PASTE is of a much better  
 “ Nature for the healing of Wounds in all manner  
 “ of *Trees*.

---

#### C H A P. XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV.

**T**H E Author in these five Chapters has made a long and tedious Discourse, viz. of *Graffs*, of the kinds that are in use, of the proper Times to *Graff*, of the manner of performing all manner of *Graffs*, and which are the *Stocks*, that have natural disposition to receive some Kinds of *Fruits*, and no other : All which may be reduc'd into these five general Heads.

First, Of *Graffs*.

Secondly, The Kinds that are in use.

Thirdly,



Thirdly, The proper Times to *graff* and *inculate*.

Fourthly, The manner of Performing all manner of *Graffs*.

Fifthly, The *Stocks* that are proper for each Kind of *Fruit*.

First, Of *Graffs*.

“ *Inoculating* is one Kind of *Graffing*; and accordingly our Author has given it the true Term, by calling it *Graffing*; but if we should term it so in England, it would not be so well understood, not being a Phrase us'd in England; and therefore it being perform'd at a different Season from the several other Kinds of *Graffing*, and that it may appear easie to all People, we have given it the usual Termination in England of *Budding* or *Inoculating*.

Secondly, The Kinds of *Graffs* that are most us'd in England, are these three, *viz.*

*Shoulder Graffing*, or *Graffing* in the *Rind*. *Stock* or *Slit Graffing* or *Graffing* in the *Cliff*. And *Tongue* or *Whip Graffing*.

*Shoulder Graffing*, or *Graffing* in the *Rind*, is that which is proper only for large *Trees*.

*Stock* or *Slit Graffing*, is that which is proper for *Trees* or *Stocks* of a lesser Size, from an Inch or more, or two Inches Diameter. And,

*Tongue*, or *Whip Graffing*, is proper for small *Stocks*, of an Inch, half an Inch, or less, Diameter; this last is the most effectual of any, and that which is most us'd.

Thirdly, for the proper Times to *Graff*; it's impossible to give any certain Directions for it, because of the variableness of Seasons; but the usual Times we *graff* in, in England, is in the Month of *March*, and sometimes at the end of *February*, according as the Season is early or latter. But the main Rule that we generally go by, is by the Ascension of the *ap*,



when it begins to ascend from the *Root* into the *Bran-ches*; for the *Graff* being apply'd it receives all its due nourishment of *Sap* from the *Root* in its Ascension.

The proper time for *Inoculating* or *Budding*, is likewise according as the Season happens, it being early or late; but the usual time for *Stone-Fruit*, as *Peaches*, *Apricots*, and *Plums* that are budded on *Plum-Stocks*, is in *July*, and sometimes at the end of *June*, especially if the Season be early, and the Ground moist. As for *Pears*, the usual time of *Budding* or *Inoculating* is in *August*.

Note that *Peaches* that are budded upon *Peach* or *Almond Stocks*, are commonly budded in *August*, or the beginning of *September*, because the *Sap* continues longer in those *Stocks* than in *Plums*.

Fourthly, The manner of Performing the several Kinds of *Graffs*, is a Work that is become so frequent in *England*, especially in this Age, that it is altogether needless to explain the manner of performing the several sorts of *Graffs*; since there are few Gard'ners but what are capable of doing it; and also what can be said may be comprehended in this: That there must be a great care us'd to make the *Graff* and the *Stock* fit close to each other, and that both the *Rinds* may touch each other as much as is possible; which is to be compass'd by a good Knife, and a steady Hand.

Fifthly, the *Stocks* that are proper for each Kind of *Fruit* are as follows.

For *Apricots* and *Plums*, the several sorts of *Plum-Suckers*, or those which are rais'd from the Stone, excepting the Suckers of *Damsons*.

For *Peaches*, *Pavies*, and *Brugnions*, the *Trees* or *Stocks* that are rais'd from the Stones of the several Sorts of their Kind, together with *Almond Stocks*, and the Suckers of *Muscle Plum Trees*, and *Pear Plums*, viz. of those *Trees* that were never grafted.



For *Pears* and *Medlars*, *Quinces*, and the *Trees* or *Stocks* that are rais'd from the several sorts of *Pears*.

For *Apples*, the *Trees* that are rais'd from the several sorts of *Kernels* of their kinds.

For *Cherries*, the *Stocks* that are rais'd from the common wild black *Cherries*.

## C H A P. XVI.

### *Of Nurseries and Seminaries.*

**O**U R *Nurseries*, requires good easie Soil, or *Ground*, well till'd having at least two Foot and a half depth, the *Trees* must be plac'd in Rows at three Foot distance, according to the largeness of the *Trees*, and at a Foot and a half, or two, or three Foot distance one from another, according to the Proportion of the Sizes.

“ Here the Author recommends the Suckers or  
 “ Wildings of *Crabs* and *Pears* out of the Woods to  
 “ graff upon ; but we find in *England*, that those  
 “ rais'd from the *Kernels* of each succeed best, because  
 “ they are not so apt to run to Suckers, and spawn  
 “ out so extreemly.

First, For *Pears*, plant Wildings of *Pears* grown from *Kernels*, as also *Quince Stocks*, which must be well condition'd both as to the *Root* and *Stem*.

Secondly, For *Apple Tree Seminaries*, plant the Wildings grown from the *Kernels* of their Kind, or rather *Crabs*, in the same order as is before mention'd.

Thirdly, For a Seminary of *Plums*, plant the Suckers of their several kinds, only excepting the wild *Damsons*.

Fourthly, For good Seminaries, of *Peaches* plant the Suckers of *St. Juleyans* and *black Damask*, and *black Muscle* and *Pear Plums*; observing as is already mention'd,



tion'd, to *Plant* the Suckers of those kinds which were never grafted, otherwise it will be the same as to plant of any other sorts of *Plums*; plant also *Peach* and *Almond* Kernels, for a Seminary of them.

The rest of this Chapter is only a definition of what has been already mention'd in the foregoing Chapter; only for *Figs* and *Vines* they are to be planted in a Nursery manner, but a greater distance, and increased by Layers or Suckers.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Of the different manner of Lattices us'd to Pallisade.*

**O**UR Garden Walls ought to be plaster'd, to stop all the holes against Rats, Snails, Earwigs, and other Vermine, which destroy the best of the *Fruit*; which being done, you may *bend* or *pallisade* the *Branches* to form the Figure of the *Tree* as you please, by tacking them with shreds of Sheep Skin, or Shammy, or Lists of Cloath, less than half a Finger's Breadth, and a Finger long: This sort of *pallisading* is very agreeable, but very tedious; these Shreds may last a Year or two, but the only Objection against them is, that sometimes Earwigs shelter in them in the day time, and come out at night to injure the *Trees*, and therefore some not liking these Shreds do fix Spikes from space to space into the Walls sticking out about two Inches to fasten Laths or Poles to them, others make a Lattice of Poles supported by Horse Bones or those of Oxen, fixt into the Wall, to which they fasten the *Branches* of their *Trees*; others fix abundance of Sheeps Bones into the Walls, at a small distance in a straight Line, binding every *Branch* of the *Tree* to one of these Bones: Some make them  
of



of Laths nail'd chequer-wise, every space being about twelve Inches, these they fix to the Walls with Nails or Hooks, and is a very pretty good Expedient, but never looks gentile nor handiome.

Some for Cheapness use Brass or Iron Wire supported by flat headed Nails; others have been content only with straight Lines of Wire, either long-wise or cross-wise: These two last, tho' neat, are not good, being too weak and apt to gaul the tender Branches, and thereby occasions *Gum*, to the ruin of the *Trees*.

After all, the most convenient and most noble is a Lattice of quarter'd Wood, or Heart of Oak, every Pole being about an Inch square, and free from Knots, and well plain'd.

You must have Iron Hooks of about a quarter of an Inch thick, and half a Foot long besides the end which turns streight up about an Inch and an half, the end which must be driven into the Wall must be forked to hold the faster in the Wall, into which it must enter four Inches deep; two Inches on the outside will suffice; they must be plac'd at three Foot distance chequer-wise, beginning the first Row within a Foot of the Ground, continuing it to the Top of the Wall, the Hooks must be in a straight Line and Parallel to one another; the Poles may be of what length you please, according to the height of the Walls, those that stand upright should be all of one piece if you can, if not you may joyn two or three neatly, tying them very close with a Wire.

Take the straightest and weakest to serve in a straight Line placing the but-end downwards, the strongest must be imploy'd a-cross to support the Work.

The squares must be about seven or eight Inches, they do not well of ten or twelve, and five or six are too little for *Espalliers*, they may also be us'd for a sort of *Arburs* that are now in fashion; the Square must be exactly measur'd, leaving an Inch between  
the



the Wall and the Laths: When they are furnish'd, you may first paint them white, and afterwards with a grasse green.

These Lettices are sometimes made for *Counter Espalliers* or *Pole Hedges*, about five or six Foot high, according as you please.

In order to its being solid, it's necessary to drive *Oaken Spikes* into the Ground at five or six Foot distance one from another, about four Inches square, driving them about a Foot into the Ground, the upper end being pointed to last the longer, for if it were square the Rains would rot it the sooner; the *Checquers* must be like those of *Espalliers*, only with this difference, that in *Pole-Hedges* the Poles or Laths must be fixed with Nails into the Body of the Spikes, which must be notch'd in order thereunto.

This Method of *Pallisading* has seldom or never been us'd in *England*, but it may be very proper for old *Brick Walls*, where the Joynts are at such a distance, that the *Trees* cannot well be nail'd to them, or likewise for *Stone Walls*, where the Stones are so thick that they cannot be nail'd to any advantage for the good of the *Tree*. But more especially for *Mud Walls* that are made of *Earth* and *Hay*, such as are us'd in some parts of the *West of England*, and other Parts where Bricks are not plenty; because the *Trees* cannot so well be nail'd to such *Walls*, without something of a *Lattice* or *Pallisade* in this manner.



OF  
FRUIT-GARDENS,  
AND  
Kitchen-Gardens.

---

VOL. II. PART VI.

---

*Of the Culture of the Kitchen-Garden.*

**I**T being necessary for a Gentleman's *Gard'ner* to perform with equal Skill, all the parts of *Culture* belonging to the *Kitchen-Garden*, that so he alone may be in a condition of furnishing his Master with all the Varieties which a good *Kichen-Garden*, can produce; without wanting at least any of those Productions that are of most importance.

To which end, I purpose here to follow exactly the Model and Platform I have already explain'd at the beginning of these Treatises of *Gard'ning*; in Conformity to which, I shall set down,

First, Every thing, general speaking, that should be in all sorts of good and well furnish'd *Kitchen-Gardens*; to which I shall add a Description of the Seeds  
and



and other things which serve for the Production and Multiplication of every particular *Plant*.

Secondly, I shall specify not only all things that may be gather'd out of a *Kitchen-Garden* every Month of the Year, but also what Work *Gard'ners* are to do in every one of those Months.

Thirdly, I will explain what sort of *Earth* or *Soil*, and what sort of *Culture* is most proper for each sort of *Plants* to make them excellent; and because some of them are sown to remain always in the same place, and some only to be transplant elsewhere, and some again are propagated without Seeds, I will give Directions at the same time how to order all of them; as well in respect to the Seasons in which they are to be sown or planted, as the manner of their Propagation.

Fourthly, I will shew you how long each sort may profitably occupy its place; and which of them must be laid up for Winter Provisions; and which may, by the help of Industry, be produced in spite of the Frosts.

## C H A P. I.

*What Things should be planted in any Kitchen-Garden, of a reasonable Extent, to render it compleatly furnish'd.*

**A**LL the World is agreed, that there are few Days in the whole Year, in which we can well be without the assistance of the *Kitchen-Garden*.

That you may therefore have at one view, the knowledge of what composes this agreeable assistance, that may be drawn out of the *Kitchen-Garden*; I shall here present you with a kind of an Alphabetical Inventory of all things which such a *Garden* should and may furnish us with, throughout the whole Year.

C H A P.



## C H A P. II, III, and IV.

*Concerning a description of the Seeds, and other things which contribute to the Production and Multiplication of every sort of Plant. Together with what sort of Culture is most proper for every sort of Plant.*

**A** L L E L U I A, or *Wood*, or *French Sorrel* is a sort of *Trefoil*, that is multiplied only by Runners or Slips which sprout from the Foot of it, as do *Violets* and *Daifies*, &c. It bears a white *Flower*, but no *Seed*: When it grows old, it grows into Tufts; and being a *Plant* that grows in the Woods, and consequently that loves the Shade, we therefore plant it along the sides of *Northern Walls*, at the distance of about one Foot asunder: The more we slip it of its Leaves, which is one good quality it has, the more fresh ones it shoots out. It is enough to set it two Inches in the Ground. It lasts three or four Years without being renew'd; and to renew it, we need do no more than to separate or slip out the great Tufts of it into several little ones, and replant them immediately; which is to be done in the Months of *March* and *April*: A little Watering in very hot Weather, and especially in sandy Ground, is a very welcome Help to them.

*Anis* is propagated only by Seed, which is pretty small and of a yellowish green, and is of a longish oval Figure strip'd, which oval is bunch'd on one side; it is much like *Fennel-Seed*; it is commonly sown pretty thin, either in Furrows or Borders; their Leaves are used in *Sallads* among other Furnitures; they run to seed towards the Month of *August*; and when their Stalks are cut down, they shoot out new Leaves the next Year, and are as good as the first; but however it is best to renew them every two Years.

*Arrach,*



*Arrach, Orrach, or Orage*, is propagated only by Seed and is one of the quickest, both in coming up, and running to Seed; which latter it does at the beginning of *June*: It is sown pretty thin; and to have good Seed of it, we must transplant some of it in a separate place: The Leaves of this Plant are very good both in Pottage and in Stuffings; we use it almost as soon as it peeps out of the Ground, for it passes away very quickly; and to have some the more early, we sow a little quantity on a *Hot-bed*. It thrives well enough in all sorts of Ground; but yet it grows more fair in good Ground.

*Artichocks* are commonly multiplied only by *Oeillions* or little *Eyes*, or *Off-sets*, or *Slips*, which are a sort of *Kernel* which grows about the Foot of the Plant, that is in that part which separates the Root from the *Eye* or *Bud*, out of which the Stem grows that produces the *Artichock*; these little *Eyes*, or *Off-sets*, begin commonly to breed at the end of *Autumn*, or in *Winter* when it is mild; and shoot forth Leaves in the *Spring*, that is at the end of *March*, or the beginning of *April*; at which time we search about the Foot of the *Artichock*, and separate or slip off the *Suckers* or *Off-slips*, in *French* called little *Eyes*, and that is called *slipping* or *dis-eying*. These *Off-sets* to be good should be white about the Heel, and have some little *Roots*; those that are black about the Heel are old, and produce but very little *Artichocks* in the *Spring*; whereas others produce according to the *Gardner's* Intention, in *August*, *September*, or *October*.

Sometimes *Artichocks* are multiplied by the Seed, which grows in the *Artichock* bottom when they are suffer'd to grow old, to flower, and to open; and lastly to dry, about *Midsummer*.

When we tie them up in *Autumn*, we wrap and cover them up at their whole length with Straw or old Dung, and so whiten the Cottony sides of their  
Leaves,



Leaves, to make *Artichock Chards* of: For the Planting of them, we commonly make little Trenches, or Pits, about half a Foot deep, and three Foot distance, filled with Mould, placing two Rows of them regularly by a Line in each *Bed*, which is to be full four Foot broad; and parted from next *Bed* by a Path full one Foot broad; these Trenches or Pits are to be made about half a Foot from the edge of the *Bed*, and Chequer-ways one towards the other; we place two *Slips* in a right Line in each space, containing between nine and ten Inches in length, and renew them once every three Years at least: Cut off their Leaves at the Beginning of *Winter*, and cover them with long dry Dung during all the very cold Weather, till the end of *March*, when we must uncover them, and flip them, if their *Slips* be yet big enough, or else stay three Weeks or a Month longer, till they be; then we must labour, and move the *Earth* well about them, and dung them with the rottenest of that Dung that served them for a Covering; water them moderately once or twice a Week, till the end of *May*, at which time their Fruit begins to appear; and from that time we must water them plentifully, that is, two or three times a Week, during the whole Summer, allowing half a Pitcher of Water to each *Plant*, and especially in Ground naturally dry. Those planted in the *Spring*, shall bring their *Fruit* to Perfection in the *Autumn* following, if well water'd; and they which do not, ought to yeild their first *Fruit* in the *Spring* following in case they be strong enough to resist the sharpness of the Winter. *Artichocks* have not only the hard Weather, and excess of Wet to fear, but they have the Field-Mice likewise for their Enemies, those mischievous little Animals gnawing their *Roots* in the Winter-time, when they find nothing better in the *Gardens*; and for that reason it's good to plant one Rank of *Beet-Chard* between two Rows of *Artichocks*, that the Field-Mice finding the



*Roots* of these last, the tenderer of the two, may fall upon them instead of the others, as they never fail to do. There are three sorts of *Artichokes*, viz. the *green*, or otherwise *white* ones, which are the most early; the *violet* ones, whose Fruit is almost of a Pyramidal figure, and the *red* ones, which are round and flat like the *white* ones; the two last sorts are the most delicious.

*ASPARAGUS* are sown at the beginning of the *Spring*, like other Seeds; that is, they are sown on some *Bed* well prepared; they must be sown indifferent thin; sometimes these Seeds are sown in the Shell as they grow, that is, four or six Seeds in a Shell, but the best way is to break them, and beat the Seed out of them; the time of sowing them is about the latter end of *March*; about a Year after, if they are big enough, as they will be if the Ground be good, and well prepared, or if not, at least at two Years end, we must transplant them, which is to be done at the end of *March*, and all the Month of *April*; and to this purpose we must have *Beds* between three and four Foot broad, and seperate one from the other: If it be in ordinary Ground, we dig these *Beds* hollow with a Spade, throwing up the *Earth* that is taken out of them upon the Path-ways; and as to strong, heavy and moist Grounds, I would have them thus order'd; that is to say, I would have the *Beds* in them not at all laid hollow, but on the contrary raised and kept higher than the Path-way, too much wet being mortal to these Plants. *Asparagus* being thus sown, shoot out Tufts of *Roots* round about their *Eye*, or *Mother-Root*, that is to say, round the place from whence all their Shoots are to spring; which *Roots* spread between two *Earths*; and in order to transplant them either into a hollow *Bed*, or a high-raised *Bed*, we bestow a good thorough Tillage on the bottom of the *Trench*, and if the Ground be not very good, we dung it a little, and afterwards we plant two or three  
Stocks



Stocks of these young *Plants*, orderly in Ranks, upon the superficies of the *Beds* prepared for them, without needing to trim the extremity of their *Roots*, or at least but a very little; and if our Intention be to force this *Asparagus* by an artificial Heat, when they are grown big enough, we place them at a foot distance one from another; and if they be to remain to grow after the usual manner, we allow them a foot and a half distance; but in both cases we place them checker-wise, and when they are so placed, we cover them up again with two or three Inches deep of *Earth*: If any of them fail to spring up, we may renew them two or three Months after; which is to be done in the same manner as we planted the others, only taking care to water the new-planted ones, during the great Heat, and to keep them always well weeded and well dung'd about; or else we mark out with little Sticks the empty places, and stay till the Spring before we fill them up again.

Every Year we cover the *Bed* with a little *Earth* taken off from the Path-way, because instead of sinking, they always are rising by little and little; we dung them moderately every two years, and let them shoot up three or four Years without gathering any, 'till we see them begin to grow pretty thick, and then we may force as many as we please of them; or if not, we continue to gather of them every Year a Crop, for fifteen Years, before we need to renew them.

Every Year, about *Martlemas*, we cut down all their *Stems*, every *Stock* producing several *Stems*, and take the fairest of them for *Seed*; if we would have them come to bear, we must use an Iron Fork to draw them out of the *Nursery-Beds*, the Spade being dangerous for that work, because it would cut and hurt those little *Plants*.

We must not fail every Year, at the latter end of *March*, or beginning of *April*, that is, before the *Aspa-*



*ragus* begin to sprout naturally, to bestow a small dressing or stirring of the Ground about three or four Inches deep on every *Bed*, taking care not to let the Spade go so deep, as to hurt the *Plants*; which small Dressing serves both to kill the *Weeds*, and to render the superficies of the *Earth* loose, and thereby not only the better to dispose it to drink up the Rain, and the *May-Dew* that nourishes the *Stocks*, but likewise to facilitate the Passage of the *Asparagus* in sprouting.

The particular and most dreadful Enemies of *Asparagus* are a sort of *Fleas* that fasten upon their Shoots, and make them miscarry, and hinder them from thriving; they are most troublesome in very hot and dry Weather: There has been no Remedy found yet against this mischief.

## B

*BALM*, called in French *Melesse*, is an odoriferous Herb, whose Leaf, when tender, makes a part of *Sallad-Furnitures*; it is multiplied both by *Seed* and rooted Branches, like *Lavender*, *Thyme*, *Hyslop*, &c.

*BASIL*, or *Basilick*, as well the great sort as the small, is multiplied by *Seed*, which is of a blackish Cinnamon Colour, very small, and a little oval, it's propagated only by *Seed*; it is annual, and very delicate, we seldom sow it but upon *Hot-beds*, and not in open Ground, as we do *Purslain*, *Lettuce*, &c. We begin to sow some in that manner, at the beginning of *February*, and we continue so to do the whole year; its tender Leaves are us'd in a small quantity, with the Furnitures of *Sallads*, among which they make an agreeable Perfume; it is likewise used in *Ragous*, especially dry ones, for which reason we take care to keep some for Winter. We gather its *Seed* in the Month of *August*, and usually to make it run to *Seed*,

we



we transplant it in the Month of *May*, either in *Pots* or *Beds* ; there are several sorts of it, but that which bears the biggest Leaves, and especially if they incline to a Violet Colour, and that which bears the least Leaves of the two is the most curious ; that which bears middling ones being the ordinary or common sort.

The *Common BARS*, is a Shrub of no very great use in our *Gardens* and therefore it is enough to have some few Plants of it in some well shelter'd place to gather some Leaves of them when occasion requires.

*BEANS*, as well the *common*, and *Garden-Beans*, as those called *Kidney-Beans*, and *French-Beans*, and in *French*, *Aricos*, are sown in open Ground, and grow not otherwise ; the *Arico*, *French*, or *Kidney-Beans*, are sown the latter end of *April*, and all the Month of *May*, and are very sensible of the Frosts ; the common *Garden-Beans* are sown at the same time with *Hastings Pease* ; both in *November* and *February*.

*BEET-RAVES*, or *Beet-Radishes*, that is *Red Beets*, produce *Roots* for *Sallads*, and are multiplied only by *Seed*, which are about the bigness of a middling *Pea*, and round, but all rough in their roundness ; they are yellowish, and so like those of the *white Beet*, that they are hardly to be distinguished one from the other ; so that People are often mistaken, thinking they have sown *red* ones for *Roots*, and see nothing come up but *white Beets* ! they are sown in the Month of *March*, either in *Beds* or *Borders*. They must be sown very thin, or at least, if they come up too thick, they must be very much thin'd, or else they will not grow so fair and so large as they should be. They require a very good and well-prepar'd Ground ; they are the best that have the reddish substance and the reddest tops, they are not good to spend till toward the latter end of *Autumn*, and all the *Winter*-



Season: To have *Seed* of them, we transplant in *March* some of the last Years *Roots* that we have preserved from Frost; their *Seed* is gathered in the Months of *August* and *September*.

*BEET-WHITE*, called *Poree* or *Poiree*, are also propagated for *Chards* by *Seed* only, which is like that of the *red Beets*, but that 'tis of a duller Colour, they are replanted to produce *Chards*. Vide *Chards*.

*EONNE Dame*, or *good Lady*, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is extreemly flat and thin, round and reddish.

*BORAGE* is propagated only by *Seed*, which is black and of a long, bunchy, oval figure, having commonly a little white end toward the Base or Bottom, which is quite separated from the rest; the length is all engraven as it were with black Streaks, from one end to the other. It grows like, and is to be ordered in the same manner as *Arach*, only it comes not up so vigorously: We sow several times in the *Summer*, because the Leaves, in which consists all its Excellence, are good only while they are tender, that is, while they are young; the Flowers serve to adorn Sallads; the *Seed* falls as soon as ripe, and therefore must be carefully watched; the surest way is to cut down the *Stalks*, and lay them a drying in the Sun, as soon as ever they begin to ripen, and by that means we shall lose but very few.

*EUGLOSS* is likewise multiplied only by *Seed*, and is so like that of *Borage*, that they cannot be known asunder; and are likewise to be ordered after the same manner.

*BUCKS-HORN* Sallad is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is one of the least we have; it is longish, of a very dark Cinamon Colour, and grows in a Husk like Rats Tail. Vide *Harts-Horn* Sallad.

*EURNET* is propagated only by *Seed*, which is pretty big, and a little oval, with four sides, and is all over engraven, as it were, in the spaces between those four sides;



Sides ; 'tis a very common and ordinary Sallad-furniture, which is seldom sown but in the *Spring*, and is sown thick either in Beds or Borders ; it often springs afresh after cutting, of which the youngest *Shoots* must be chosen for Sallads, the Leaves that are any thing old being too tough ; it does it a great deal of good to *water* it in *Summer* : There is but one sort of it, whose Seed is gathered at the end of *Summer*.

## C

*CABBAGES*, called in *French*, *Choux*, and comprehending both *Cabbage*, *Coleworts*, and *Colly-flowers* of all kinds, of what nature soever they be, are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is about the bigness of an ordinary Pin, or of Birding Powder, and is reddish, inclining to a brown cinnamon colour.

*CABBAGES*, of all sorts of *Kitchen plants*, take root again the easiliest when transplanred, as they are likewise the most known, and most used of any in our *Gardens* ; they are multiplied by *Seed*, and are of several sorts and Seasons ; there are some called White Headed *Cabbages*, which are for the latter end of *Summer*, and for *Autumn* ; there are some curled, called *Pancaliers*, or *Millan Cabbages*, which produce small-headed *Cabbages*, for *Winter* ; there are some of a red or violet Colour ; and some called *long-sided Cabbages*, whereof some are bright or white, and very delicate, ripe in vintage-time ; and others green, and are not very good till they are frost-bitten : Lastly, There are some call'd *Colly-flowers*, which are the most noble and valuable of them all, and are not used in Pottage, but in choice Intermesses ; they cannot endure the Frost, and therefore as soon as they begin to form their Heads, they must be covered, with their Leaves ty'd up for that end over them with Straw-bands, to guard them from the insults of the Cold, that spoils and rots them ; they are for our *Winter* spending, and must be sheltered in



the *Green-House* or *Conservatory*, whither they must be carried and planted with a Turf of their old Earth about them, where they are commonly used to perfect the full growth of their heads: All other *Cabbages* yeild *Seed* in *France*, but only these, whose *Seed* we are fain to have brought up from the *Eastern* Countries, which makes them ordinarily very dear. To make *Cabbiges* run to *Seed*, we use every Year, either in *Autumn* or *Spring*, to transplant some of the best and fairest of them, which run to *Seed* in the Months of *May* and *June*, and is gathered *July* or *August*.

*CAPUCIN Capers.* See *Nasturces*.

*CAPUCIN CAPERS*, or *Nasturces*, are annual Plants, which are usually sown in *hot Beds* in the Month of *March*, and transplanted again in the naked Earth along by some *Walls*, or at the foot of some *Trees*, where their mounting *Stalks*, which are but weak and grow pretty high, may take some hold to support themselves: They are also planted in *Pots*, and *Boxes*, in which some *Sticks* are set up to support their *Stalks*; their *Buttons* or round *Buds* before they open are good to pickle in *Vineger*; their *Flower* is pretty large, of an *Orange Colour*, and very agreeable: They must be carefully watered in the *Summer*, to make them shoot vigorously. Their *Seed* falls to the Earth as soon as ever it is ripe, as well as that of *Borage* and *Bugloss*, and therefore must be carefully gathered up.

*CAPRONS.* See *Straberries*.

*CARDONS Spanish*, are propagated only by *Seed*, which is longish, oval, and about the bigness of a fair *Wheat-Corn*; it is of a greenish, or *Olive Colour*, mark'd with black *Streaks* from one end to the other, and is sown from the middle of *April*, to the end.

They grow naturally from *Seed*, and are sown at two several times; the first is commonly about  
the



the middle or latter end of *April*; and the second about the latter end of *May*. They must be sown in good and well-prepared Ground, and in little Trenches, or Pits, a full Foot wide, and about six Inches deep, fill'd with *Mold*; we make *Beds* of four or five Foot wide, in order to place in them two ranks of those little Trenches, or Pits, chequer-wise; we put five or six Seeds in every hole, with intention to let but two or three of them to grow; if they all come up, taking away all those that are over and above that number, either to throw away, or to new stock those places, where perhaps are none come up, or where perhaps we may have sown but some few upon a *hot-Bed* for that intention; and if in fifteen or twenty Days we do not see the Seed come up, we should uncover them, to see whether they be rotten, or begin to sprout, that so we may fill up their places with new ones, in case of need. The *Seeds* of the first Sowing are generally three Weeks coming up; and those of the second fifteen Days: *Cardons* must not be sown before the middle of *April*, for fear they should grow too big, and run to *Seed* in *August* and *September*, and then they are not good: Great care must be taken to water them well; and when towards the end of *October*, we have a mind to *whiten* them, we take the advantage of a dry Day, first to tie up all their *Leaves* with two or three Bands, and some days after, we cover them quite up with Straw, or dry Litter well twisted about them, so that the Air cannot penetrate to come at them, except it be at the very top, which we leave open.

These *Cardoon Plants*, thus wrapt up, *whiten* in about fifteen Days or three Weeks, and grow fit to eat; we make an end of tying up, and wrapping or covering all we have in our *Gardens*, when we perceive the Winter approach, and then we take them up with the Earth about them, to transplant them into our *Green-House* or *Conservatory*; some of those Plants

are



are good to transplant in the naked Earth in the following *Spring*, to run to Seed in *June* or *July*; or else some Plants of them tied up in their first places, will serve for that three or four times together.

*CAROTS* are multiplied only by *Seeds*, which are small and oval, the sides of which are wrought with little Streaks, or longish Points very small; and one side of the flat part of the *Seed* is a little fuller, and more raised than the other; and both of them are marked longwise with Strakes; they are of the colour of a dead *Leaf*; are a sort of *Root*, whereof some are *white*, and others *yellow*, that grow only from *Seed*, and require the same care and ordering, which we have already described under the Head of *Red-Beet-Roots*.

*CELLERY* is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is very small, yellowish, and of a longish oval figure, and a little bunched; it is not good but at the end of *Autumn*, and during the *Winter-Seasons*; we sow of it two several times, to be supply'd with it so much the longer; that which has been long sown, easily runs to *Seed*, and grows hard: We sow it then the first time in *hot-Beds* in the beginning of *April*, and because its *Seed* is so extreame small, we cannot help sowing it too thick: So that if we be not careful to thin it, and crop it in time, to make it grow to some strength and bigness before we transplant it, it warps and flags its Head too much, and grows weak, and shoots its Leaves stranglingly outward, instead of producing store of them from the middle of its *Stock*: The surest way to transplant it in a *Nursery-Bed*, is placing the Plants two or three Inches from one another; for which we make holes with our Fingers only; we transplant that which comes of the first sowing at the beginning of *June*, and sow our second sowing the latter end of *May*, or beginning of *June*; but it is in *open beds*, and we take the same care to thin, crop, and transplant this, as we did that of the first sowing?

but



but we must plant more of it the second time, than at the first. There are two ways of transplanting it, the one is in a Pit or Trench a full Spit deep, and between three or four foot broad, in order to place in it three or four ranks of those *Plants*, at the distance of one foot from one another; this way of making *hollow-beds* to earth up our *Cellery* in, is good only in dry Grounds, wet Grounds being too apt to rot them. The second way of *transplanting* it, is in *plain Beds*, not made hollow, and at the same distance as the other, taking care in both sorts of *Beds*, to water them extremely in the Summer-time, its chief goodness consisting in being *tender*, as well as in being very *white*; watering contributes to the first kind of goodness, and for the second, you are to observe, that to whiten *Cellery*, we begin at first to tie it with two Bands when it is big enough, chusing dry Weather for that effect, and afterward we earth our *Cellery Plants* quite up, with Earth taken from the high-raised Path-ways, or else cover it all over with dry long Dung, or dry Leaves, as we do *Cardoons*. *Cellery*, so earthed up with dry Earth, or cloathed with long dry Dung, or dry Leaves, to the very tops of its Leaves, *whitens* in three Weeks or a Month; and because when 'tis *whitened*, it rots as it stands, if it be not presently eaten, by consequence we are not to earth it up, or cover it with Dung, but in such proportion as we are able to spend out of hand. There needs no other Precaution to be used in it, so long as it does not freeze; but as soon as ever it begins to freeze, we must then quite cover up our *Cellery* all over, for a hard Frost spoils it presently; and that we may the more easily cover it, after we have first ty'd it up with two or three Bands, we take it up with the Earth about it, at the beginning of *Winter*, and plant it in another *Bed*, setting the *Plants* as close as we can to one another, and then there needs much less stuff to cover them, than when they are left standing in their old



old places at such great distances asunder. The way to raise *Seed* from them, is, to transplant some *Plants* of them in some bye-place, after Winter is past, which will not fail to run to *Seed* in the Month of *August*; we know but one sort of it.

*CHARDS* of *Artichokes*. See *Artichoks*.

*CHARDS* of *Artichoks*, otherwise called *Cofsons*, are the Leaves of fair *Artichoke-plants* tied, and wrapt up in Straw in Autumn and Winter; which being covered up all over, but at the very top, with Straw, grow white, and by that means lose a little of their Bitterness; so that when they are boiled, they are served up like true *Spanish Chadrans*, but after all, are not so good, and besides the Plants often rot and perish, whilst we are whitening them.

*CHARDS-BEET*. See *Beet*.

*CHARDS* of *Beets*, are *Plants* of white *Beets* transplanted in a well-prepared *Bed* at the distance of a full Foot one from the other, which produce great Tops, that in the middle have a large, white and thick downy, Cotton-like main-Shoot, and that Cotton-like Shoot is the true *Chard* used in Pottages and Intermesses: After we have sown white *Beets* upon hot-Beds, or in the naked *Earth*, in the Month of *March*, we transplant that which is yellowest, in *Beds* purposely prepared, and by taking care to water them well in the *Summer*, they grow big and strong enough to resist the hard Winter Cold, provided care be taken to cover them with long dry Dung, just as we do *Artichokes*: They are likewise well placed, when two Ranks of them are planted between two Ranks of *Artichokes*; we uncover them in *April*, and dress the *Earth* about them, and give them careful attendance, and by the means of this diligent *Culture*, they produce those fine *Chards* we have in the Rogation Season, and in the Months of *May* and *June*. In fine, they run to *Seed*, which we gather in the Months of *July* and *August*, and sow in the following *Spring*.

CHERVIL



*CHERVIL* is multiplied only by Seed, which is black, very small, and pretty longish strip'd, longwise; it grows upon *Plants* that were sown the *Autumn* before and knits and ripens in the Month of *June*.

*Musked Chervil* is only multiplied by Seed, which is longish, black, and pretty big; it is one of our *Sal-lad-Furnitures*; and at the beginning of the *Spring*, whilst its *Leaves* are young and tender, it is agreeable, and proper to contribute towards the giving a perfuming relish; but it is to be used no longer when they are old and tough: it remains several Years in its place without being spoiled by the Frost, so that its *Stock* grows pretty big and high; it runs to *Seed* towards the Month of *June*, and by that is multiplied.

Ordinary *Chervil* is an annual *Plant*, or rather a *Plant* of few Months, which serves for many uses, and especially in *Sallads*, when it is young and tender; and therefore we ought to sow a little of it every Month, proportionably to the occasion we may have for it, and to the quantity of Ground we have; it runs very easily to *Seed*, and if we have some of it betimes, we must sow it by the end of *Autumn*, and doubtless we shall have the *Seed* quite ripe towards the middle of *June* following; we cut down the *Stalkes* as soon as it begins to grow yellow, and beat it out, as we do that of other *Plants*.

*CIBOULES*, or *Small Onions*, are propagated only by *Seeds* of the bigness of a Corn of ordinary Gun-powder, a little flat on one side, and half round on the other, and yet a little long and oval, and white on the inside; so like to which are both the *Seed* of the *red* and *white Onion*, and of *Leeks*, that it is very hard to distinguish them one from another. *Ciboules* are sown in all Seasons.

*Ciboules*, or *Chibouls*, properly speaking, are but *Onions* that are degenerated, and of which Nature has as it were miscarried, that is to say, *Onions* that instead of producing a lit-



a little *Root* in the *Earth*, and one single *Stem*, produces but a small *Root*, and several *Stems*, or upright *Shoots*, and those which produce most of them are most esteemed, which are the sort of which we should be careful to preserve most *Seed*, and which, if planted in *March*, will yield us *Seeds* fit to gather in *August*. We sow *Cibouls* almost in every Month in the Year, except in very hard Weather, when the *Earth* cannot be cultivated, their *Seed* are so perfectly like that of *Onions*, that they cannot be distinguish'd one from the other; but the former never recover so as to produce *Onions*, and particularly those we pluck up out of the *Onion-Beds*, which are sown too thick, and must be thin'd that those which are left, may grow the bigger; we thin our *Cibouls* also for the same reason, and we transplant some which prosper very well, and grow big when they are transplanted. It is convenient to water our *Ciboul-Beds* in Summers that prove extraordinary dry; and unless in such cases, they will not need watering, but however they must be always planted in good *Earth*.

*CITRULLS*, *Pumpions*, or *Pumkins*, are propagated only by *Seeds*, which are of a flat and oval figure, and pretty large and whitish, and are as it were neatly edged about the sides, excepting only at the bottom, where they stuck to the *Citrull*, in whose *Belly* they were formed.

They are the biggest Productions which the *Earth* brings forth in our *Climates*, for whose *Culture* little is to be done: Usually we sow them in *hot Beds* about the middle of *March*, as the only way to preserve and multiply them; at the end of *April* we take them up with the *Earth* about them, to transplant them in holes made for that purpose, of about two Foot diameter, and one Foot deep, and two Fathoms distant one from the other, which are filled with *Mould*; when their *Vines* begin to grow five or six foot long, which happens about the beginning of *June*, we throw upon them



them in the middle of that length, some Shovels full of *Earth*, both to prevent their being broken by the Wind's blowing them to and fro, and to make them take *root* at the place so covered ; by which means, the Fruit that grows beyond that part will be the better nourished, and consequently grow the bigger. There are two sorts of *Pumpions*, the *Green*, and *Whitish*, but neither of them are fit to be gathered till they be grown *Yellow*, and the Skin become tough enough to resist one's Nail ; we keep of them in our *Store-houses* till about the middle of *Lent*, when they have been seasonably gather'd, and well defended from the *Cold*.

All sorts of Situations in the open Air agree with them well enough, but those which are well expos'd ripen soonest ; we trim nothing off from them, but only content our selves with watering them sometimes, when the *Summer* is excessive *dry* ; their *Seed* is in their Bellies.

*CIVES*, or *English Cives*, are multiplied only by *Off-sets* that grow round about their *Tuffts*, which grow very big in time, from which a part are taken to replant : They are multiplied by producing thick *Tuffts*, which are *slit* out and seperated into many little ones, and are transplanted nine or ten Inches asunder, either in *Borders* or *Beds* ; they require pretty good Ground, with which if they be accommodated, they will last three or four Years without removing, without needing any great Culture, it being enough to keep them well weeded, and to water them sometimes during the Heat ; it is their Leaves only that are used for one of the *Sallad* Furnitures.

*COLLY-FLOWERS.* See *Cabbage*.

*COLWORTS.* See *Cabbage*.

*CRESSSES*, called *Alenois Cresses*, are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is of a longish oval figure, small and of an Orange yellow Colour,



*Garden-Cresses* are one of the little Sallad-Furnitures, and is a Plant that lasts but a little while; we sow it every Month as we do *Chervil*, that we may always have some of it that is tender, and we sow it always very thick; it is propagated only by *Seed*, which is very apt to run, and which we begin to gather at the end of *June*, cutting down the Stalks in order to dry them, and beat out the *Seeds* and winnow them as we do those of other Plants, as soon as we perceive any of them to ripen.

*CUCUMBERS*, or *Coucumbers*, are propagated only by *Seed*, which is oval, a little pointed at both ends, but a little less at the lower end or bottom than at the other, out of which springs its *Bud* or *Sprout*; it is of a midling Thickness of a whitish Colour, and is gather'd out of the Bellies of those *Coucumbers* that are grown yellow with ripeness. See their *Culture*, under the Head of *Mellons*, and *Musk-Mellons*. It is to be observed, That a *Cucumber* Plant yeilds a great quantity of *Fruit*, and for a long time when 'tis well cultivated, and especially when it is well watered.

*CURRAN-BUSHES*, whose Fruit grows in Bunches, both the *red* and the *white*, called *Dutch Currans*; as also *Goose-berry Bushes*, called in *French*, *Groseilles*, or *prickly Groseilles*, are multiplied as well by *Slips* that are a little rooted, that sprout out at the foot of their *Stocks*, every Year, in the *Spring*, as by simple *Cuttings*; we also replant their *Stocks* of two or three Years old.

*CURRANS*, and *Goose-berries*, being both comprehended under the *French* name *Groseilles*, both the *red* and the *white* or pearled sort, termed in *English*, *Currans*, and the prickly sort, called in *English*, *Dutch Goose-berries*, are kinds of little *Fruit-shrubs*, which yeild a great deal of *Fruit*; they produce round about their old *Stock*, a great number of rooted *Suckers* or *Slips*, which serve to propagate them, besides which  
their



their *Branches*, and especially the young ones that are cut off from them, take *root* easily; they are planted in the Month of *March*, at the distance of at least six good Foot one from the other, either in whole *Beds* or *Squares*, or in the void spaces between the *Dwarf-Trees*, which are usually planted about the *Squares* of *Kitchen* or *Fruit-Gardens*; both of them delight in a Ground that is a little moist, the better to enable them to produce thick *Shoots*, and consequently good *Fruit*.

The *red*, and *pearled* or *white* sort, called in *English*, *Currans*, produce *Bunches*, which are ripe in *July*, but the *prickly* ones, named in *English*, *Goose-berries*, produce none, but bear their *Fruit* upon single *Stalks* all along the young *Branches* of the preceding Year's growth, and that at the place of every one of the *Eyes* or *Buds* of that *Branch*; the *Fruit* of this latter is used particularly in *April* and *May*, in *Compotes*, and *wet Sweet-Meats*, and *Sauces*, for which uses it must be very green; for when it is ripe, it grows too soft and flat: The Culture that is most proper to be used for both *Currans* and *Goose-berries*, and especially to *Cur-rans*, consists in cutting away all the old *Wood*, and preserving only that of one or two Years growth; for a confused mixture of one with the other, is not only very disagreeable and pernicious, but the old *Branches* will bear nothing but very small *Fruit*, till at last they quite degenerate, so that they will bear none but small, common, and very sour *Currans* or *Goose-berries*, and as soon as the old *Stocks* have done bearing any longer either fair *Branches* or good *Fruit*, we should take a resolution utterly to grub them up, after we have first raised a Plantation of *new ones* in some other choice fresh piece of Ground, to supply their places; for a *Garden* ought by no means to be without fair *Currans* and *Goose-berries*, and as soon as ever the new ones begin to bear, we are to destroy the old ones, which make but a very unsightly figure in a *Garden*.



## D

*DOCK*, called *Patience*, being a sort of *Sorrel*, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is like *Sorrel-seed*, only a little bigger; properly speaking, it is but a sort of very great or large *Sorrel*, which is very sowre; we content our selves only with some *Borders*, or perhaps some one single *Bed* of it, to have some of its *Leaves*, to mix now and then among our *Sorrel*: The manner of raising it, is the same we practise with *Sorrel*.

## E

*ENDIVE-WHITE*, called in *French*, *Chicoree* i.e. *Succory*, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is longish, of a whitish-gray colour, flat at one end, and roundish at the other, and grows upon the *Stocks* or *Stems* of the preceding Year's growth; one wou'd take it almost for nothing but little bits of *Herbs* cut small.

*ENDIVE-WILD*, or *Succory*, is also propagated only by *Seed*, which is longish, and blackish, and grows as the other doth: It is a sort of very good annual *Plant*, used in *Sallads*, and in *Pottage* in the *Autumn* and *Winter* Seasons, provided it be well *whitened*, and consequently tender and delicate; it is multiplied only by *Seed*. There is the *common* or *Garden Endive*, and *Wild Endive*, called also *Succory*, the common Name in *French* to them both. The *common Endive* is of several kinds, viz. the *white*, which is the most delicate; and the *green* sort, which is most rustic, and best able to resist the Cold; as likewise the *curled* sort, and that which is not *curled*.

All sorts of them agree tolerably well with all kinds of *Ground*; we seldom begin to sow any of them till towards the middle of *May*, and then they must be sown very thin, or be very much thin'd afterwards,  
in



in order to be whitened in the places where they first grow, without transplanting; and we also sow but a little quantity of them at once, because they are apt to run to *Seed*: The season of sowing a greater quantity of them, is about the latter end of *June*, and during the whole Month of *July*, in order to have some good to spend in *September*; and we afterwards sow a great deal of it again in *August*, that we may have a sufficient quantity of it, to serve us all the rest of *Autumn*, and the first part of *Winter*; and when our *Endive* comes up too thick, we cut it, or else pull up some of it, to thin it, that the rest may grow big enough to be transplanted; and when we transplant it, in Summer-time, it must be placed at the distance of a large Foot between *Plant* and *Plant*; we usually make great *Beds* of five or six Foot broad, in order to plant them afterward in it, in Lines marked out with a Cord. This *Plant* requires great and frequent Waterings, and when it is big enough, we must go to work to *whiten* it; for which effect we tie it up with two or three Bands, according as its height requires; and being so tied, it *whitens* in fifteen or twenty Days: But because it is very apprehensive of Frost, therefore as soon as ever the Cold begins to come on, we cover it with long dry *Dung*, whether it be tied up or no: at the end of *September* we plant the *Stocks* of it pretty near together, because then it neither grows so high, nor spreads so much as in *Summer*; and if we can save any *Plants* of it in *Winter*, we must transplant them again in the *Spring*, in order to produce *Seed* that may have sufficient time to ripen. Those Persons who have a good *Conservatory* or *Green-House*, will do well to house it up their; but they who have none, must be content to cover it up with a good quantity of long dry *Dung*, so that the Frost may not come at it.

*WILD ENDIVE*, or *Succory*, is sown at the beginning of *March*, and that pretty thick, and in Ground



well prepared ; we endeavour to fortifie it, and make it grow big all Summer, by watering and cropping it, that it may be fit to whiten in Winter.

There are some People that will eat it green in *Sal-lads*, though it be never so bitter ; but commonly they rather desire it *whiten'd* ; and to whiten it, we cover it up with a great deal of long *Dung*, after we have first cut it close to the Earth ; by which means it being forc'd to spring up in obscurity, and shaded from all Light, its young *Shoots* grow *white* and *tender*. The neatest way is by interposition of some props crossing from side to side, to keep the *Dung* from touching it, since it shoots up in the same manner under such a hollow covering, as under a close one : so that care be taken so well to stop up Passages on all sides, that no Light or Air at all get in ; being thus order'd, its *Shoots* are much cleaner, and relish not so much of the *Dung*. They which have *Conservatories*, may transplant some of it thither in *Winter*, it sprouting well enough there, when it is but a little obscurely plac'd : when it is green it endures the Frost well enough, and at the very latter end of *May* it runs to *Seed*. Many People eat its *Shoots* in *Sallads*, when they are young and tender.

## F

*FENNEL* is propagated only by *Seed*, which is pretty small, longish, and oval, bunched, and streaked, with greenish gray Streaks.

'Tis one of our Sallad-Furnitures, which grows only from *Seeds*, and is seldom transplanted ; it resists the Cold of Winter : We sow either in *Beds* or *Borders*, it springs again when cut ; its youngest and tenderest *Shoots* are the best : The *Seed* is gathered in *August* ; and, in fine, it agrees well enough with all sorts of Grounds. See more of it under *Anis*.



## G

*GARLICK* is produced by a kind of *Kernels*, or *Off-sets*, which grow in great numbers about its *Foot*, and make altogether a kind of *Bulb* like an *Onion*, which *Kernels* are called the *Cloves* of the *Garlick*, every *Clove* being concave or hollow on the inside, and convex or bending outward on the outside, having at its lower end a flat *Base* or *Bottom*, by which it is fastened to the *Foot* or *Stalk*, out of which the *Roots* spring; and having on the *Top* a pointed end, out of which springs its *Bud* or *Shoot*, when it is planted in the *Earth* in the Months of *March* or *April*, in order to its bringing forth.

It's propagated by *Heads* or *Kernels* called *Cloves*, about the end of *February*, which are set three or four Inches deep in the *Ground*, and at three or four Inches distance one from the other; they are taken out of the *Earth* at the end of *July*, and laid to dry in a place free from moisture, in order to preserve them from one Year to another.

*GOOSE-BERRIES.* See *Curran*.

## H

*HTSOP*, or *HTSOPE*, is propagated only by *Slips*.

*HARTS-HORN*, or *Bucks-horn* Sallad, is a little annual Plant, whose Leaves, when tender, are used in Sallad-Furnitures; they are sown in *March*, very thick, it being impossible to sow them thin, because their *Seeds* are so very small, which are gather'd in *August*. The little Birds are very greedy of them, as indeed they are of all other small *Kitchen-Plant* *Seeds*: When the Leaves of this Plant are cut, there spring up fresh ones, just as there do also from *Sorrel*, *Cives*, *Parsley*, &c.



## L

*LAVENDER* is multiplied by *Seed*, and by old *Stocks* or *Plants* transplanted.

It serves to garnish *Borders* in *Kitchen-Gardens*, and yeilds a Flower, which, without being separated from its *Stalk*, is used to be put among clean *Linnen*, to perfume it; it is multiplied both by *Seed*, and by its *Branches* or *Slips* which have taken *Root* at their *Joints*.

*LAWREL.* See *Bays*.

*LEEK S* are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is altogether like that of *Ciboules*; they are replanted in *May*, very deep in the *Earth*, to make their *Stalks* and *Plants* thick and white; and they are sown in *March*, as soon as the *Frost* will permit their *Seed* grows in a kind of thick white *Purse*, which is round, and grows upon the top of a good long *Stalk*, and it keeps a pretty long time in that *Purse* or *Hood* before it falls.

They are sown at the end of *Winter*, and that pretty thick, in *Beds* well prepared; after which, during the whole Month of *June*, take them up neatly, and transplant them into other *Beds* which are no less carefully prepared; in order to which, we make with a *planting Stick*, holes about four Inches deep, and half a Foot asunder, and after we have a little trim'd both their *Roots* and *Leaves*, we only slide down a single *Plant* into every hole, without minding to press down the *Earth* about it, as we do to all other *Plants*; however, we take care to grub up the *Weeds* about them, from time to time, and to water them a little in very dry *Weather*, that their *Stem* may grow to a due thickness, and may whiten before *Winter*: when the *Frost* is very brisk, it is best to cover them, or else to set them in *Earth* in the *Conservatory*; it is likewise very convenient to take them



them up out of their *Bed* where they are planted a little at large, and to place them nearer together afterward in another *Nursery-Bed*, and cover them up with long Litter, because otherwise when it freezes hard, we should not be able to get them out of the Ground without breaking them; we may leave some of them standing, after *Winter*, to run to Seed, or else we may plant some of them in a separate place for that purpose; their Seed is gather'd in *August*, and there is a sort that is bigger than the ordinary one, which is the best.

*LETTUCES*, of what sort soever they be, are multiplied only by Seed, which is of a longish oval figure, streak'd longish, sharp-pointed at the end, and very small; some are *black*, as those of *Auber-villiers*, but most of them are *white*: when they are sown in the Spring, they run to Seed in *July* after: But the *Winter Lettuces*, called otherwise *Shell-Lettuces*, after having pass'd the Winter in the place where they were replanted in *October*, run up to Seed in *July* following.

They are *Plants* that are the most ordinarily and commonly seen in our *Kitchen-Gardens*, and are indeed the most useful *Manna* of them, and especially for *Sallads*, of which almost all Mankind are desirous we have many kinds; for in the first place, there are *Lettuces* of different Seasons; those which are good in certain Months of the Year, being not good in others; and those which grow well in the *Spring*, not thriving in the *Summer*; and they which prosper in *Autumn* and *Winter*, coming to nothing neither in *Spring* nor *Summer*, as will be seen afterwards. In the Second place, There are some that with the ordinary help of the general *Culture* attain their due Perfection, and contribute both to the Nourishment and Pleasure of Mankind, and they are the *Cabbage Lettuces*. Thirdly, There are some that necessarily require the Art and Industry of the *Gard'ner*, to advance



them to that degree of perfection which they should have; and they are such as must be tied up, to make them grow *white*, without which they would be neither tender, nor sweet, nor good; such as are the *Roman Lettuces*, &c. nay, and I have thought fit sometimes to tie up those that were to *cabbage*, when I saw they did not *cabbage* soon enough, by which means they may be forced to *cabbage*: I use this method particularly with some sorts of *Winter Lettuces*, that is, when there are any of them, which though furnished with Leaves big enough to *cabbage*, yet for want of sufficient Heat, are hinder'd from turning, that is, from growing hard; and this Expedient is a very sovereign Remedy against that defect, in a furly Season: And besides these general distinctions, the number of the particular kinds of *Lettuces* is greater than of any other sort of *Kitchen-Plants* whatsoever, as will appear more especially by the order they observe in respect of the Seasons. And the order of the *Cabbage Lettuces*, as near as I can describe, is this:

The first that *cabbage* at the going out of *Winter*, are the *Shell-Lettuces*, so called because their Leaf is round almost like a *Shell*: They are otherwise called *Winter-Lettuces*, because they pretty well endure ordinary Frosts, which none of all the other *Lettuces* can do; these are sown in *September*, and afterwards transplanted in some *Wall-border* towards the *South* and *East*, in the Months of *October* and *November*; or else they are sown upon *Hot-Beds*, under Bells, in the Months of *February* and *March*, and are good to eat in *April* or *May*. We have at the same time another sort of *reddish-Lettuces*, called *Passion-Lettuces*, which prosper very well in light Grounds, but not over well in others, which being colder, but stronger or heavier, easily infect them with slimy Snivel: both these kinds should, when they thrive, produce very thick and good *Heads*. To these succeed the *bright curled Lettuces*, which usually *cabbage* in the Spring, that is, be-  
fore



fore the Heat grows any thing excessive, but they must not be planted in strong heavy Lands: they likewise do well upon *Hot-Beds*, and especially under Bell-Glasses, or Glass Frames; for when they are sown in *January*, and transplanted as soon as they are grown any thing thick, or else left thin upon their Nursery-Beds, they *cabbage* as soon as the *Winter Lettuces*, and are very excellent.

There is about the same Season, two other sorts of *bright curled Lettuces*, viz. one called *George Lettuces*, which are thicker and less curled than the ordinary *bright curled Lettuces*; and other called *Minion Lettuces*, which is the least sort: both these last require such Ground as we term good black Sand, but yet their Heads are seldom cabbag'd close enough, that is to say, are not ordinarily so hard and firm as those of the right *curled bright Lettuces*.

The *curled green Lettuces* come in near about the same Season with the preceding ones, but are not so tender nor delicate.

There is also a sort of small *red* ones, and another named *short Lettuces*, both which have all the necessary Qualifications of good *Lettuces*, excepting only that their Heads are small, and that they likewise require black sandy Ground.

The first *Lettuces* supply us amply, as I have said, during *April* and *May*, and the beginning of *June*, but afterwards they are too apt to be inclin'd to run to *Seed*, by the great Heat that then comes on; they are follow'd, during the rest of *June* and all *July*, by those called the *Royal Bell-gards*, or *fair Looks*, *bright Genoa's*, *Capucins*, *Aubervilliers*, and *Perpignans*, of which last there are both *green* and *bright*, both of which produce very fair and good Heads, and thrive well enough in strong Grounds too, when the Summer proves not too rainy; but Cold or too frequent Rains infect them with Slime and Snivel, and consequently destroy



destroy them. The *Cappucin Lettuce* are reddish, *cabbage* easily, even without transplanting, and are pretty delicate; the *Aubervilliers* bring forth Heads that are too hard, and sometimes bitter withal, and are more used for boiling than for *Sallads*. The difference that appears between the *Royal*, and *Bell-gards* of fair-look'd *Lettuces*, is only that the former look a little more greenish, and these last a little brighter.

However, in *Summer*-time, the tied *Lettuces* are mixed among the *cabbage* ones; viz. the *Roman Lettuces*, which are open, and are called *Chicons*, or bright, and are termed *Alphanges*, which last are more delicate than the *Chicons*, both to raise, and when they are eaten in *Sallads*: There are also a sort which are termed *Imperial Lettuces*, which are of an extraordinary Size, and are likewise delicate to the Taste, but very apt to run to *Seed* as soon as ever they grow *white*; there are besides a certain kind of large *reddish Chicons*, which whiten, in a manner, of themselves, without tying, and are good in course Grounds, and succeed usually pretty well in *Summer*; for as for the green *Chicons*, we cannot well have them but in the *Spring*, because they run too hastily to *Seed*: The *Lettuces* that defend themselves best from the great Heats that predominate about the end of *July*, and all the Month of *August*, are those which we call *Genoa Lettuces*, and especially the green sort; for the bright *Genoa* and red *Genoa* run more easily to *seed*, and will hardly come to good but in light Grounds; we should therefore prepare a great many of the green *Genoa's* against the Dog-Days, and the first Frosts; we may also intermix with them some few bright, and some red *Genoa's*, but more especially we should be sure to mix with them some *Alphanges*, and a great deal of bright or white *Endive*, as likewise a great many *Perpignan Lettuces*, both of the  
bright



bright and green kind. The great Inconveniencies that happen to *Cabbage Lettuces*, are, first, That they often degenerate so far as to *cabbage* no more, which is discovered by their Leaves growing out in length like a Cat's Tongue, as the *Gard'ners* term it, or by changing their natural Colour into another more or less green; and therefore we must be careful to gather no *Seed* from any but such as *cabbage* very well; for which effect we should be very sure to mark out at first some of those that turn best, in order to reserve them to run to *Seed* where they stand, or to remove them with a Turf of Earth about them, into some separate place assigned for that purpose.

The Second, is, That as soon as the most part of them are *cabbaged*, they must be spent, unless we would have the displeasure to have them run to *seed* without doing us any service; in which respect, the Market *Gard'ners* have a great advantage beyond other Persons, because they can sell off in one day whole *Beds* of these *Cabbage Lettuces*; for commonly the *Beds* which are new-planted at the same time, *cabbage* likewise all at once; whereas, in other *Gardens*, we cannot spend them any faster than we need them, for which reason we are oblig'd to plant some of them often, and that in greater quantity than we are able to consume, that we may have a continual supply successively, without any discontinuance, it being much more commodious to have an overplus of them than to want; the surest way is to keep particularly to those sorts that are the most strong, and that last a great while *cabbaged* before they run to *seed*, such as are the *Shell-Lettuces*, the *Perpignans*, the great *Genoa's*, the *Auber-villiers*, and the *Austringettes*, or *Austrian Lettuces*, which I must confess too are along time *cabbaging*.

The Third Reason, is, That the *Morie*, which is the Rot, that begins at the ends of their Leaves, seizes them



them sometimes, and that when the Ground or the Season is not favourable unto them, they remain thin and lean, and run up to *Seed* instead of spreading and *cabbaging*. There is hardly any remedy to prevent this Rot, because there is hardly any to be found effectual against the cold and rainy Seasons that cause it; but against the defects that may be in the Ground, there are infallible ones, that is to say, it must be amended and improved with finall Dung, if it be barren, whether it be sandy, or a gross cold Earth; and to this last we should give a *Slope*, if when the Ground is good, the Water spoils it by standing too much upon it, and by that means make all the *Plants* growing there to rot: Good *Dung* throughly rotten being the *Soul* or *Primum Mobile* of *Kitchen-Gardens*, without which, no more than without frequent waterings and dressing of the Ground, no Man can ever be richly stor'd with fine and goodly *Legumes*.

There yet remains to be known, for the perfect understanding the ordering of *Lettuces*, that they which grow biggest must be placed ten or twelve Inches one from another, which is to be understood of the *Shell-Lettuces*, *Perpignans*, *Austrians*, *Bell-gards*, or *Fair Looks*, *Aubervilliers*, *Alphanges*, and *Imperials*; and for those that bear Heads but of a midling size, the distance of seven or eight Inches is enough, which are the *bright curled*, the *short*, the *little red*, and the *green Chicon Lettuces* &c. Those that will be good *Husbands*, may sow *Raddishes* in their *Lettuce-beds*, because the *Raddishes* will be all drawn out and spent before the *Lettuces* cabbage; and for the same reason, because the *Endives* are much longer before they come to perfection than the *Lettuces*, we may plant some of these last among the *Endives*; they agree well enough one with another, and so we may have a double Crop together upon the same *Bed*, and in the same Season; for the *Lettuces* are gather'd first, and afterwards the *Endives* arrive to their full Goodness.

MACHES,



## M

*MACHES*, *Masches* or *Corn-Sallads*, are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is very small, and of an Orange Colour. They are a sort of little *Sallad*, which we may call a wild and rustical *Sallad*, because indeed it is seldom brought before any Noble Company; they are multiplied by *Seed*, which is gather'd in *July*, and are only used towards the end of *Winter*; we make Beds for them, which we sow about the end of *August*; they are hardy enough to resist the rigour of the Frost; and because they produce a great many little *Seeds* that easily fall though we have but a little quantity of them, they will propagate themselves sufficiently, without any other Culture but weeding them.

*MALLOW S*, or *Marsh-Mallows*, are propagated only by *Seed*, which are like one another in shape, but yet are different as well in Colour as in Bigness; for the *Seed* of the *Mallows* is much bigger than that of the *Marsh-Mallows*, and that of this latter are of a deeper brown than that of the plain *Mallows*; they are both triangular, and streaked all over.

They ought to be allowed a place in our *Kitchen-Gardens*, though Civility will not permit us to explain in this Treatise what uses they serve for; and although they be *Plants* of the *Fields*, rather than of a *Garden*, they grow of their own accord, and have no more need of cultivating, than the *Weeds* which infest the good *Plants*, when we have a mind to have any of them in our *Gardens*, it will be best to sow them in some bye-place.

*MARFORAM*, is propagated only by *Seed*, which is very little, and shaped almost like a *Lemmon*, more pointed on the one side than on the other, it is speckled in some places with little white Specks, and as it were streaked with white all over;  
it



it is of a pretty light Cinnamon Colour, is an odorous *Plant*, of which we compose agreeable *Borders* and *Edgings*: There is the *Winter-Marjoram*, which is the best; and the *Summer-Marjoram*, which lasts not beyond the Season; both of them are multiplied by *Seed*, and likewise by rooted *Slips* or *Suckers*, they are principally used in making *Perfumes*.

*MELONS*, or *Musk-Melons*, are multiplied by a *Seed* which is like that of a *Cucumber*, excepting in Colour; which in *Melons* is of a pale red, and is not so broad as that of the others; they are taken out of the Bellies of the ripe *Musk-Melons*; of the Culture of which we shall here present you with a most ample Account, as it is has been delivered by the Honourable Mr. *John Evelyn*.

---

### *Directions*



*Directions concerning* MELONS,

“ **T**HE most undegenerating sort of *Melons* are  
 “ not large, but of a middling size, the *Rbind*  
 “ thin, faintly embroider’d, and without being Ribb’d  
 “ or divided along the Sides, or at least very obscure-  
 “ ly : Others there are which be whitish, some of a  
 “ Slate colour, Red-flesh, dry, yet melting in the  
 “ Mouth, and not at all mealy, but of an high and  
 “ generous Gust. In a word, the only sort (after  
 “ Trials of many hundred Kinds) I have Cultivated,  
 “ with Success, and that retain their good Qualities  
 “ more than Twenty Years, without any considerable  
 “ Alteration.

“ Every *Gard’ner* now-a-days knows how to raise  
 “ *Melons*, but very few to govern them ; the great-  
 “ est difficulty whereof is in the Guelding of Super-  
 “ fluities, to cause them to knit, and bear as they  
 “ should do. In order to which, observe these few  
 “ Directions : “ The



“ The first thing appearing (after the Seed is sown,  
“ and the *Plants* prick'd out from the *Hot-bed* into  
“ a more temperate) are a pair of small smooth  
“ *Leaves*, which (in *France*) we call the Ears,  
“ marked 1. 1. in the *Figure*. A few days after,  
“ 'twixt these, comes up a single *Leaf*, which we  
“ call the first *Leaf*, as being on the First Knot, *no-*  
“ *ted* 2. Next to this, in the same place, and soon  
“ after, there appears another, which we term the  
“ Second Knot, *marked* 3. About the middle of  
“ whose *Stalk* there shoots out another *Leaf*, call'd  
“ the Third Knot, *figured* 4. Which Third Knot  
“ is always to be Pruned off at *Fig.* 6. but with  
“ Care, and without wounding the *Stalk* or *Branch*  
“ of the Second Knot, *marked* 3. upon which that  
“ Third did grow; it being from this place you will  
“ find that *Branch* to sprout, which we call the First  
“ Leader; and is that which will send out a First,  
“ Second, and Third Knot; which Third (and all  
“ other such Thirds) you must cut, or pinch off,  
“ as you did the other, without staying till a Fourth,  
“ or Fifth, or more, shoot out. It is, I say, from  
“ these Knots and Joints, that other *Branche*s inlike  
“ manner will proceed, knit, and form into excellent  
“ *Fruit*, provided the Foot and Original *Stem* have been  
“ well nourished in rich, warm, and proper *Mould*,  
“ and well expos'd.

“ I must not forget, that from the middle, like-  
“ wise 'twixt the Ears and two first *Leaves*, there  
“ frequently rises another *Branch*, which you may a-  
“ bate, or leave on, as you find it likely to prove,  
“ especially if a vigorous one; but the *Leaf* *figured* 5,  
“ issuing from the middle of the Fourth Joint, and  
“ several more besides, successively springing out of  
“ one another, as you see the Fourth from the Third  
“ (and as all the rest I have marked do) I purposely  
“ omit, and have only figur'd, as superfluous to the  
“ Ingenious Gard'ner.

“ When



“ When I *Transplant* from this *Nursery-bed* (into  
 “ the prepared Holes or Ridges, and open *Meloniere*)  
 “ I commonly place two *Roots* together, unless I meet  
 “ with an extraordinary good *Plant*, and then spare  
 “ both the *Branches* which spring from each side,  
 “ ’twixt the Ear and *Leaf* 7, 7, as before is shew’d :  
 “ But when I *Plant* two *Roots* near each other (as I  
 “ do when they are not very fair ones) I totally re-  
 “ ject both *Branches* which shoot from the two oppo-  
 “ site Ears, to avoid that Confusion of those Super-  
 “ numeraries which injure the principal *Stem* and Foot  
 “ it self.

“ Never suffer the *Root*, or *Stalks* of your *Melon*  
 “ *Plants*, to touch the Dung; nor should you water  
 “ them in immoderately, but when the *Earth* is very  
 “ dry, and the Season excessively hot, refresh, and  
 “ give the *Roots* Drink, without deferring it ’till the  
 “ *Shoots* complain, when it may come too late : I  
 “ water them in these parching Seasons, two or three  
 “ times every Week, and in the Evenings when the  
 “ *Sun* is setting, and then cover them with *Matras-*  
 “ *ses*, from Eleven ’till Two a Clock; and in the  
 “ Afternoon during the *Sun’s* excessive Violence,  
 “ which exhausts and consumes the Humidity neces-  
 “ sary to both *Roots* and *Branches*.

“ I cover my *Meloniere* also when it rains, lest too  
 “ much moisture prejudice the *Fruit*; all which re-  
 “ quires a great deal of Care, and no small Pains,  
 “ though this regular Proceeding is to me a real  
 “ Pleasure.

“ When the Foot of your *Melon-Plant* grows  
 “ over luxurious in *Branches*, cut away the feeblest  
 “ of them, leaving not above three or four of the  
 “ most vigorous, and whose Knots grow nearest to  
 “ one another: And when the *Melons* are kint, suffer  
 “ not above two upon each Foot, chusing such as are  
 “ best plac’d, and nearest to the main and principal  
 “ *Stem*, which should be thick, snug, and not too



“ far above the Ground. Of these that are knit, and  
 “ beginning to form, make choice of the handsomest  
 “ that are well truss'd with a thick short Tail; *Melons*  
 “ with long starts, slender and narrow *Leaves*,  
 “ never prove worth any thing.

“ When you begin to cover with Bells, raise them  
 “ so upon little Forks, as they neither rest upon the  
 “ *Fruit* or *Branches*, or quite exclude the Air; but  
 “ so as to keep the edges from bruising, and pressing  
 “ the tender *Stalk*, and Intercepting the Current  
 “ *Sap*.

“ It now and then happens, that there rises a se-  
 “ cond *Branch* from between the Ears, and two first  
 “ *Leaves* (though I mention'd indeed but one) but  
 “ this is very seldom; and you are still to count  
 “ them but for one Joint or Knot, though there will  
 “ thence proceed a Second, Third, Fourth, and per-  
 “ haps Twenty or Thirty more, and further remote,  
 “ if you let them alone, and be not vigilant to re-  
 “ strain and stop his Exuberance in due time. 'Tis  
 “ true, they will present you with *Fruit* at the Extre-  
 “ mities of their *Branches*, but 'tis little worth, as  
 “ being so far distant from the *Root*, that the *Sap*  
 “ spends it self in the tedious passage before it ar-  
 “ rives as you'll find by the withered *Branch*, and  
 “ driness of the *Leaves* which should skreen both  
 “ *Branches*, and *Fruit* 'till they are ripe, as we see  
 “ they do. where a *Melon* has a short and substantial  
 “ Foot. A curious *Gard'ner* therefore should visit  
 “ his *Meloniere* from time to time, and be cutting off  
 “ all mutilated, starv'd and vicious *Branches* which  
 “ annoy the *Plants*, for these Impertinents will grow  
 “ even to the view of ones Eye, and quite Impove-  
 “ rish the *Fruit*, if not timely prevented.

“ Thus you see I am careful to purge the *Stem* of  
 “ all the small, straggling, and unprofitable *Branches*,  
 “ from which there is no Expectation of good *Fruit*,  
 “ whilst observing those that have well knit *Melons*

“ on



“ on them at the ends of the *Branches*, I constantly  
“ take away the rest of that *Branch* on this side the  
“ *Fruit*, which divaricating into other useles *Wan-*  
“ *derers*, would rob, and deprive the *Fruit* of the  
“ Nutriment derived from the *Root*; nevertheless  
“ with this Caution, that in Pruning, I spare some  
“ other les *Noxious Branches* to shade the *Fruit* that  
“ it be not left quite naked, and expos'd to such a  
“ scorching Heat as would hinder its Growth and  
“ Maturity, which within forty Days from its Na-  
“ tivity and knitting into *Fruit*, arrives to full Pea-  
“ fection.

“ Great and Pumpion like *Melons* are very seldom  
“ tolerably good, as arriving to their bulk either  
“ from the Nature of the *Seed* and Kind, or from  
“ superfluous Watering the smaller ones; wherefore  
“ (though as I said they cannot support the too ex-  
“ cessive Heats) the les Water you give your *Plants*  
“ (provided you find them not to want it) the bet-  
“ ter; and that rather a little at a time than much:  
“ Once a Week is for the most part sufficient. As  
“ to this therefore you must determine, and regu-  
“ late your Refreshments with great Circumspection,  
“ and judge by the Nourishment which you conceive  
“ necessary to produce and maintain the Foot, with  
“ its *Branches*, and *Leaves* deriving from it; with-  
“ out, which no Kind and Genuine *Fruit* is to be ex-  
“ pected.

“ When you would gather a ripe *Melon*, you will  
“ have notice by its turning a little Yellow; for  
“ from that time within a day (as the Weather  
“ proves) it does ordinarily ripen, and begin to  
“ cast a grateful Scent; This Yellowness appearing  
“ in some Part of it or other, and not seldom  
“ with some *Rifts*, or little *Chasms* about the  
“ *Stalk*, &c. are most infallible indications of its  
“ being left rather too long, than too hastily ga-  
“ ther'd: The *Gard'ner* must therefore not fail of



“ Visiting the *Meloniere* at the least three times a  
 “ Day, Morning, Noon, and Evening, for this Cri-  
 “ tical time of ripening. He will sometimes find  
 “ *Melons* ripen too fast, but they are seldom or never  
 “ good, as proceeding rather from a sickly, or vi-  
 “ cious *Root*, than from the Nature of the *Plant*, or  
 “ Species of those I cultivate.

“ After twenty four Hours keeping, or the next  
 “ Day after it has been gather'd (for so long, con-  
 “ trary to Vulgar Opinion, it should be preserv'd in  
 “ some sweet dry place) and not eaten immediately  
 “ as it comes from the *Garden*: A perfect and tran-  
 “ scendent *Melon* will be full juicy, and without any  
 “ Vacuity (which you'll easily discern by rapping a  
 “ little with your Knuckles upon the outside of the  
 “ *Fruit*) the Meat should also be dry, or but a little  
 “ Rorid meazing out of the Pulp; but by no means  
 “ Watrish and Flashy. To this add a Vermillion Co-  
 “ lour, a grateful Flavor, and an high and Racy  
 “ Taste.

“ Lastly, Reserve for *Seed* of that only which lies  
 “ towards the Sunny side of the *Melon*, which being  
 “ immediately cleans'd from its Mucilage, with a  
 “ dry Linnen Cloth, Reserve in Boxes, or Papers,  
 “ in some Temperate and sweeter place.

*MINT*, or *Spare-Mint*, is multiplied only by *Run-  
 ners*, that are like so many *Arms* that spring out of its  
*Tuft*, and take *root*, it is likewise propagated by cut-  
 tings, but bears no *Seed*.

'Tis called in *French*, *Balm*; when once planted it  
 needs no other particular *Culture*, then being cut down  
 close to the Ground every Year at the end of *Autumn*,  
 to make it shoot out Store of tender *Sprouts* in the  
*Spring*, which are mingled with the furnitures of  
*Sallads*, for them that love them; 'tis a little spicy  
 and perfumed: It must be renewed every three Years  
 at least, and placed always in good *Earth*; the *Bran-  
 ches*, when cut off take *root* at the place where they are  
 cover'd,



cover'd, and by that means of one great *Tuft* we may easily make a great many, which are to be planted at the distance of a Foot one from the other; in the Winter likewise we plant some thick *Tufts* of it upon *Hot-beds*, and by taking care to cover them with *Bells*, they spring very well for about fifteen Days, and then perish.

*MUSCATS*, are a kind of *Grapes*, which when they attain to their natural goodness, are one of the most considerable commodities of a *Kitchen-Garden*; there are three sorts of them, viz. *white*, *red*, and *black*, the *white* is commonly the best of the three, it requires a temperate Country, and the expositions of the *South* and *East*, and always a light Ground, we seldom see any good in pure Earth, and if it be in hot Climates, in gravelly and Sandy Grounds; they prosper very well upon *Counter-Espaliers*, or *Pole-bedge-trees*, and even in the open Air; their Goodness consists in having large, yellow, and crackling Berries, and growing thin in their Clusters, and in a rich musked Taste; but yet not too strong like *Spanish* ones. The Province of *Turain* produces admirable ones. Their *Culture* is exactly the same as the *Chassela's Grapes*, both as to their *Pruning*, and manner of propagation.

The *Long-Muscat*, called otherwise the *Passe-Musquee*, is another sort of *Garpe*, whose *Berry* is bigger and more longish than that of the ordinary *Muscat*, and its *Clusters* are also longer, but yet its Taste is nothing near so rich as that of the others.

## N

*NASTURCES*, commonly called *Capucin Capers*, are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is a kind of *Pea* or *Haricot*, or *French Bean*, which climbs and gets up upon Branches or Poles which are near it; the *Leaf* of it is pretty large, and the *Flower* of an Orange Colour; the figure of the *Seed* is a little pyramidal, di-



vided by *ribs*, having all its superficies engraven and wrought all over, being of a gray colour, inclining to a light Cinamon: They are sown in *Hot-Beds* about the end of *March*, or the beginning of *April*, and afterwards are replanted by some *Wall* well expos'd. The *Seed* easily falls as soon as ever 'tis ripe, as doth that of *Borage*, and *Bells de nuit*, or *Night fair ones*, and therefore they must be carefully gather'd.

## O.

*ONIONS*, as well the *white* as the *red*, are multiplied only by *Seed* which as I have already said, is like that of *Cibouls*.

They are either *red* or *white*, which last are sweeter and more prized than the *red* ones; there's no body but knows how many uses they they serve for; they are propagated only by *Seed*, which is commonly sown about the latter end of *February* and beginning of *March*, in Beds of good Earth, and well prepared, and afterwards raked with an Iron Rake to cover them, as is done to other small *Seeds*: They must be sown thin, that they may have room to grow to their full bigness, and therefore if they come up too thick, they must be thin'd; by pulling some of them up as soon as they are big enough, which is towards the Month of *May*, which we transplant in order to use instead of *Cibouls*. Though the ordinary Season for sowing *Onions* be at the end of *Winter*, yet we may sow them in *September*, and transplant them afterwards in *May*, by which means we may have some full grown at the very beginning of *July*, which we may gather, plucking them first out of the ground as soon as that time comes; and then after we have dry'd them two or three days in the hot Sun, lay them up in some dry place, to keep all the Year in case of need. We must not forget when our *Onions* begin to appear with  
pretty



pretty thick *Stems* above the Superficies of the Earth, that is, when they begin to advance towards their Maturity, to break them down either by treading them under our Feet, or with a Board press'd pretty hard down upon them, because by that means, the nourishment that was before spent in their *Stems*, being hindred from mounting upwards, will all remain and settle in that part, which (I think) is improperly called the Head, and make it grow so much the bigger. I have already told you elsewhere, how their *Seed* is to be raised.

## P.

*PARSLEY*, as well the common as the curled sort, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is little and very small and of a greenish grey colour, and a little bending inward on one side, and all over streak'd with little rising Streaks from one end to the other. Both sorts are of great use in *Kitchens* all the Year long, as well for its *Leaves* as *Roots*; it is comprehended under the title of *Verdures*, or *green Pot-Herbs*: We ought not to fail in the *Spring*, to sow a reasonable quantity of it in every *Garden*, and that pretty thick, and in good and well prepared Ground. When its *Leaves* are cut it shoots out new ones, like *Sorrel*; it resists well enough a moderate, but not a violent Cold, and therefore 'tis best to bestow some covering on it in *Winter*, to defend it. When we would have any of it to produce large *Roots*, we must thin it in *Beds* or *Borders* where it is sown; it requires pretty much watering in very hot Weather. There are some who pretend to have a kind of *Parsley* bigger than ordinary, but for my part I know no such kind. The *curled Parsley* appears more agreeable to the sight than the common sort, but is nothing the better for that. We gather our *Parsley Seeds* in *August* and *September*.



*PARSLEY MACEDONIAN*, or *Allifanders*, is also propagated only by *Seed*, which is pretty big and oval, and a little more full and swelling on one side than on the other, which bends a little inward, streak'd throughout its whole length, and is streak'd a-cross on the edges between the sides.

It is one of the Furnitures of our Winter Sallads, which must be whitened like our wild *Endive* or *Succory*, that is to say, at the end of *Autumn*, we must cut down all its *Leaves*, and then cover the Bed where it grows, all over with long dry *Dung*, or straw Screens so close, that the Frost may not come at it, by which means the new *Leaves* that spring from it, grow white, yellowish, and tender. We sow it in the *Spring*, pretty thin, because it produces a great many large *Leaves*, and we gather its *Seed* the latter end of *Summer*; it is a good hardy *Plant*, and defends itself pretty well from the Drought, without requiring much watering.

*PASS-PIERRE*, *Pierce-Pierre*, that is, *Pass* or *Pierce-Stone*, being a kind of *Stone-Parsley*, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is more long than round, pretty big, of a greenish gray colour, striped on the back and belly, and resembling a *Lute* in Shape.

*PARSNIPS* are multiplied only by *Seed*, which is flat, and of a round figure, a little oval, and as if it were hem'd or edg'd, streaked throughout its length, and is of the Colour of a brownish Straw.

They are a sort of *Roots* well known in our *Kitchens*. We sow them towards the end of *Winter*, either in open Ground, or Borders, and that always pretty thin, and in good and well prepared Ground; and if they come up too thick, they must be thin'd as soon as *May* comes in, that they which are left may be the better nourish'd, and grow the fairer.

*PEASE*, are multiplied only by *Seed*; there are great ones, little ones, white ones, or yellow ones,  
and



and green ones; all the World know they grow in *Cods*, and are almost round, and sometimes half flat.

They may be placed in the rank of *Kitchen-Plants*: It is a good rustical or hardy *Plant*, which commonly is sown in the open Field, without needing any other *Culture* than being weeded whilst it's young, that is, before it begins to cod; but when they are propt they yeild more than when they are not: They require pretty good Ground, and a little Rain to make them tender and delicate, and must be sown pretty thin. There are several sorts of them, *viz.* *Hastings*, *green*, *white* and *square ones*, otherwise called *large-codded Pease*, &c. We may have of them in the Months of *May*, *June*, *July*, *August*, *September*, and *October*; for to have some all that while, after the first, we have no more to do, but to sow them in different *Months*, to have them fit for eating three Months after. Those sorts of which we are most choice in *Kitchen-Gardens*, are the *Hastings* both *white* and *green*, which are of a midling size: We sow them at the end of *October*, under the shelter of some *Eastern* or *Soutbern Wall*, and sometimes we also raise *Ridges*, or *flop'd Banks* for that purpose, and to dispose them to come up so much the sooner when they are sown, we make them sprout five or six days before, by laying them to steep two days in water, and afterwards laying them in a place where the Cold cannot come at them 'till their first *Root* begins to appear. Hard Weather spoils them quite, which is the reason why all we can do will not procure us any good ones, 'till the latter end of *May*: We likewise sow some upon *Hot-Beds* at the end of *February*, in order to transplant them by the sides of some well exposed Wall, in case those sown at the latter end of *October* preceding happen to have been spoiled by the Frost. Our last time of sowing them is at *Midsummer*, to have them fit to eat about *All-Hallowtide*.

*PIMPERNEL.* See *Burnet*.

*POMPIONS,*



POMPIONS, or *Pumpions*, or *Pumkins*. See *Citrulls*.

PURSLAIN, as well of the green, as red or yellow sort, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is black, and extraordinary small, and of a half flat roundish figure: To have a good Crop of this *Seed*, the *Purslain Plants* must be replanted at the end of *May*, at a full Foot distance one from the other; the *Seed* grows in little Husks or Shells, each of which contain a great many; and when we are to gather it, we cut off all the Heads from of the stalks, and lay them to dry a little in the Sun, and then we beat the *Seed* out, and fan or skreen it.

It is one of the prettyest *Plants* in a *Kitchen Garden*; which is principally used in *Sallads*, and sometimes in *Pottages*, there are two sorts of it, the *green* and the *red* or *golden*; this latter is the more agreeable to the Eye and the more delicate and difficult to raise, so that in hard Weather we have much ado to make it grow even upon *Hot-beds*, and under *Bells*, for it seldom prospers in open *Beds* 'till about the middle of *May*, and then too the Earth must be very good, sweet and very loose, and the Weather very fair; and therefore for our first *Purslain* which we are not to begin to sow upon *Hot-beds* till towards the middle of *March*, we must use only the *green* sort, because the *yellow* or *golden* sort dwindles away as soon as it comes up, unless the Season be a little advanced, and the Sun a little hot, which is towards the end of *April*: It is commonly sown very thick, because its *Seed* is so very small that it cannot be sown thin. When we sow it upon *Hot-beds*, either when it is cold, and that by consequence either *Glass Frames* or *Bell-Glasses* are needful, or in milder Weather, we only press down the *Mould* about it with our Hand, or with the Back of a Spade; but when we sow it in open *Beds*, which must be well prepared for that purpose; we rake it  
over



over five or six times with an Iron Rake, to make the *Seed* enter into the Ground.

The way to raise *Seed* from it, is to transplant some *Plants* of it that are big enough, into *Beds* well prepared, at the distance of eight or ten Inches; the Months of *June* and *July* are proper for that effect, and then in a little time after, they are run up, and have done flow'ring; as soon as ever we perceive any of their Husks to open, and discover some black *Seed*, we must cut down all their *Stems*, and lay them some Days in the Sun, till all the *Seed* be quite ripened, and then we beat them out, and winnow them, &c. We must be careful to transplant each sort a-part by it self, that we may not be mistaken in the *Seed* when we are to sow it. The thick Stalks of *Purslain* that is to run to *Seed*, are good to pickle in Salt and Vinegar for Winter Sallads.

## R.

*RADISHES*, are multiplied by *Seed*, which is round, pretty thick, and of a redish Cinamon Colour; it grows in a kind of little Cods.

When *Radishes* are qualified with all the goodness they should have, that is, when they are tender, snap easily, and are sweet, are in my opinion one of the *Plants* that give the most pleasure of any in our *Kitchen Gardens*, and that give it as often and as long as any of them all, and I look upon them as a kind of *Manna* in our *Gardens*. There seems to be no great care required to make them grow, it being indeed only necessary to sow them pretty thin, in well prepared loose and mellow *Earth*, and to water them soundly in dry Weather; and with this *Culture* they will attain all the perfection they are capable of. But the main Points hear in question, are first, to be always provided with *Seed* of a good kind; and secondly, take order to have *Radishes* without discontinuation



ation from *February*, 'till the coming in of the Frosts in the beginning of *November*: The *Seed* which is of a good kind, is that which produces few *Leaves*, and a long red *Root*, for there are some which produce a great many *Leaves*, and little *Roots*; and when once we are provided with *Seed* of a good kind, we must be extream careful to propagate it in some well prepared Spot of Ground, a Foot and a half asunder: Being so transplanted, they will run up, flower, and yeild *Seed* ripe enough to gather by the end of *July*; and then we cut down all their *Stems*, and after they have been dry'd some days in the Sun, we beat out the *Seed*, and winnow it, &c.

Those *Stocks* of them that run to *Seed*, shoot up their *Branches* to such a heighth, and push out their *Flowers* so far, as if they knew not were to stop, and therefore it is good to pinch off those *Branches* to a reasonable length, that the first *Pods* may be the better nourished.

But it is not enough to raise good *Seed*, we must likewise take order to be supplied with good *Radishes* for eight or nine Months in the Year: The first that are eaten grow in *Hot-beds*, the manner or raising which I have explain'd in the Works of *November*; and by the means of those *Hot-beds* we may have some during the Months of *February*, *March*, and *April*, otherwise not; and in order to have some all the other Months, we must sow some among all manner of *Seeds*, they coming up so very quickly, that we have time to gather our *Radishes* before they can do any harm to the other *Plants*. *Radishes* are extreamly apprehensive of the excessive Heats in *Summer*, which makes them grow strong as they term it, too biting, stringy, and sometimes very hard; and therefore in that Season we should sow them in loose mellow Ground, where the Sun shines but little; and the best way will be to make up a *Bed* or two for that purpose along the sides of some Northern Wall, fill'd with



with *Mould* to the depth of a large Foot and a half, and to sow our *Reddishes*, there, and water them well. In *Spring* and *Autumn*, when the Sun is not so hot, *Radishes* take well enough in open Ground, and in the open Air.

*RASSBERRIES*, both *red* and *white*, are propagated only by *Slips* that sprout out of their *Stocks* every Year in the *Spring* time, and are fit to replant the next *Spring* after.

Both the *white* and the *red* begin to ripen about the beginning of *July*: They are planted in *March*, either in *Beds* or *Borders*, observing the distance of two Foot between *Plant* and *Plant*; they shoot out during the Summer many well rooted *Suckers*, some of which we take away to make new Plantations, by which means the old ones are likewise renewed, for they are dry as soon as their *Fruit* is gather'd. The only *Culture* used to them is, first, in the Month of *March* to shorten all their new *Shoots* which we perceive round about the *Stock*, and which ought only to be thickest and handsomest; and in the second place, to pluck away all the small ones, as likewise the old ones that are dead.

*REPONCES*, or *wild Radishes*, are propagated only by *Seed*, and are a sort of little *Radishes* that are eaten in *Sallads*, and grow without any Pains in the Fields.

*ROCAMBOLES*, are a sort of mild *Garlick*, otherwise called *Spanish Garlick*, which is multiplied both by *Cloves* and by *Seed*, which latter is about the bigness of ordinary *Pease*.

*ROCAMBOLES*. See *Shallots*.

*ROCKET*, being one of the *Sallad* Furnitures, is multiplied by *Seed*, which is extream little, and of a Cinamon, or dark Tan Colour.

'Tis sown in the *Spring*, its Leaf is pretty like that of *Raddishes*.



ROSEMARY, is a little very odoriferous *Shrub*, that is propagated by *Seed* or *Branches* that have some share of *Root*.

It is principally used for the perfuming of Chambers; and in Decoctions for washing the Feet, it is multiplied in the same manner as *Rue*, and other *Border Plants*, and lasts five or six Years in its place.

RUE, is multiplied by *Seed*, whose shape resembles that of a Cocks Stone; it is of a black Colour and rugged; but yet we usually propagate it rather by its *Layers* and *Cuttings*, than by its *Seed*.

'Tis a *Plant* of a very strong Smell, of which we plant some Borders in our *Gardens*, and is hardly of any use but against the vapours of the Mother.

### S.

SAGE, is multiplied only by a kind of hooked *Slips* that have a little *Root*.

It is a *Border Plant*, whose *Culture* hath nothing of particular, but is like that of the other *Border-herbs*, as *Rosemary*, *Lavender*, *Wormwood*, &c. There is a sort that is party-coloured, which to some People appears more agreeable than the common *Sage*, which is of a palish green Colour.

SALSIFIE, or *Goats-beard*, the common sort is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is almost like in all things to *Scorzonera*, except in its Colour, which is a little grayer; it is of a very long oval Figure, as if it were so many little *Cods* all over streaked, and as it were engraven in the Spaces between the Streaks, which are pretty sharp pointed towards the ends.

SPANISH-SALSIFY, or *Scorzonera*, is one of our chiefest *Roots*, which is multiplied by *Seed* as well as the others, and is admirable good boiled, both for the pleasure of the Taste, and the health of the Body. It is propagated only by *Seed* which is sown in *March*, we must be careful to sow it very thin, whether it  
be



be in *Beds* or *Borders*, or else at least to thin it afterwards, that its *Roots* may grow the bigger. *Scorzoner*a runs up to *Seed* in *June* and *July*, and is gather'd as soon as it is ripe.

*SASSIFY* Common, is another sort of *Root* cultivated after the same manner as the preceding one, but is not altogether so very excellent; they easily pass the *Winter* in the Ground, it is good to water both sorts of them in dry Weather, and to keep them well weeded, and especially to put them into good Earth well prepared, of at least two full Foot deep.

*SAMPHIRE*, called in *French* *Pierce Pierre*, is one of our *Sallad* Furnitures, that is multiplied only by *Seed*, and which being by nature very delicate, requires to be planted by the sides of Walls exposed to the *South* or *East*, the open Air and great Cold being pernicious to it. We usually sow it in some *Pot* or *Tub* filled with Mould or else on some side Bank towards the *South* or *East*, and that in *March* or *April*, and afterwards transplant it in those places above mentioned.

'Tis a kind of *Stone Parsley*, multiplied only by *Seed* which is more long than round, and pretty big, of a greenish gray Colour, striped on the Back and Belly, and resembling a Lute in shape.

*SHALLOTS*, or *Eschalots*, are multiplied by *Offsets* or *Kernels* which grow about the Foot of its *Plant*, and are about the bigness of a Philberd Nut.

*SHALLOTS*, or *Rocomboles*, otherwise *Spanish-Garlick*, requires no other *Culture* than common *Garlick*, and are particularly remarkable, that there *Seeds* are as good to eat, as their *Cloves* taken out of the Earth. Their *Seed* is large, and serves to propagate them as well as the *Cloves* or *Kernels* that compose their *Root*.

*SMALLAGE*, is multiplied only by *Seed*, which is reddish, and pretty big, of a roundish oval Figure, a little more full and rising on one side than the other, and is streaked from one end to the other.

SAVORY,



*SAVORY*, is an annual *Plant*, a little odoriferous, which grows only from *Seed*, and whose *Leaves* are used to some *Ragous*, and particularly among *Pease*, and *Beans*; it is sown in the Spring either in *Beds* or *Borders*.

*SORREL*, as well the lesser sort, which is the common one, as the greater one, are both multiplied only by *Seed*, which is very small, slick, and of a triangular oval Figure, the ends of it being sharp and pointed, and being of an excellent dark Cinamon Colour.

*ROUND-SORREL* is propagated only by *Slips*, or *Runners*, so that out of one Tuft we may easily make several *Plants* of it.

*WOOD-SORREL*, or *French Sorrel*. See *Alleluia*.

*Sorrel*, in *Kitchen-Garden Terms*, is placed under the Title of *Verdures*, or green Pot-Herbs, and accordingly is much used in the Pot. There are some sorts of it that produce larger Leaves than others, which are called *Sorrel* of the greater sort; all the sorts may be sown in *March*, *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, and in the beginning of *September* too, provided they be allowed time sufficient to grow big enough to resist the rigour of the Winter: We sow *Sorrel* either in open Ground, or else in straight Rows, or Furrows, in Beds or Borders, in all which cases it must be sown very thick, because many of its *Plants* perish: It requires a Ground that is naturally good, or else well improved with *Dung*. Its *Culture* consists in being kept clear from *Weeds*, in being well water'd, and being cover'd with a little Mould once a Year after it's first cut down to the ground. That *Mould* serves to give it new Vigour, and the Seasons most proper for applying it is in the hot Months of the Year.

It is most commonly multiplied by *Seed*, tho' sometimes we transplant some of it that thrives very well; we gather its *Seed* in *July* and *August*, There



is a particular sort of *Sorrel*, called *round Sorrel*, for the roundness of its Leaves, whereas those of the other sort are sharp and pointed; the tender Leaves of this sort are sometimes mixed with Sallad Furnitures, but it is ordinarily used in *Bouillons*, or thin Broths; it is multiplied by running Branches that take root in the Earth as they run over it, which being taken off and transplanted, produce thick Tufts, which also produce other Runners, and so *in infinitum*.

*SPINAGE* is multiplied only by Seed, which is pretty big and horned, or triangular on two sides, having its Corners very sharp pointed and prickly, and the other part which is opposite to those two pointed Horns is like a Purse, of a greyish colour.

It requires the best Ground, or at least that which is most amended, or improved. They are multiplied only by Seed, we sow them either in open Ground, or else in Furrows in straight Rows upon well prepared Beds, and this we do several times in the Year, beginning about the sixteenth of *August*, and finishing a Month after; the first are fit to cut about the middle of *October*, the second in *Lent*, and the last in *Rogation time*; those which remain after Winter run up to Seed towards the end of *May*, which we gather about the middle of *June*: When they are once cut, they spring up no more as *Sorrel* does. All their *Culture* consists in keeping them clear from Weeds, and if the *Autumn* prove very dry, it is not amiss to water them sometimes. They are never transplanted, no more than *Chervil*, *Cresses*, &c.

*SKERRETS*, are a sort of Roots propagated by Seed, and cultivated like other Roots, as is directed in the Month of *March*.

*STRAWBERRY Plants*, as well the white as the red, and those called *Caprons*, are propagated only by Runners, which are produced by a kind of Thread or Strings, which springing out of the Body of the Plant,



and creeping along upon the Earth, easily enough take Root at certain Joints or Knots about a foot distance one from the other ; which Knots coming to take Root, make new Plants, which in two or three Months time are fit to be transplanted ; they are plac'd three or four of them together to make what we call a *Tuft*.

*STRAWBERRIES* : It is observed that a Plantation of them taken out of the Woods, turns to better account when transplanted, than one flipt off from the *Garden Strawberries*. We plant them either in *Beds* or *Borders*, both which must be well prepared, amended, and labour'd, and flirr'd up in one manner or other : If it be dry or sandy Ground, both the *Beds* and *Borders* must be sunk a little lower than the *Alleys* or *Path-ways*, the better to retain the Rain that falls, and the Water we bestow on them ; a contrary course must be taken, if we plant them in strong, heavy, and fat Earth, that is almost pure Clay, because excessive Moisture rots the Roots : We place them usually nine or ten inches asunder, putting two or three *Plants* in one hole, which is made with a *Planting-Stick* ; the best time to plant them, is during the whole Month of *May*, and the beginning of *June*, that is to say, before the great Heat comes in ; we may also plant them all the Summer Season in rainy weather. It is particularly requisite to plant *Nurseries* of them in *May*, and that in some place near the North quarter, the better to shelter them from the violent Heat of the Summer Sun ; and then we plant them about three or four inches asunder : but when they are grown big enough there, we transplant them afterwards in *September*, in order to make *Beds* or *Squares* of them, according as we find occasion to have a greater or less quantity of them. Their Culture consists chiefly, *First*, in watering them well in dry Seasons ; *Secondly*, in leaving but a moderate number of *Stems* or upright *Shoots* ; to every *Stock* three or four of the  
most



most vigorous *Shoots* being enough ; in the third place, in leaving but three or four *Strawberries* of them that appeared first and nearest the *Stock* on every *Stem*, and therefore we must pinch off all their other numerous Blossoms that grow out at the end of those that have already blossom'd, or are still in blossom, because none but the first produce any fair *Strawberries*, scarce any of the last being ever known to knit, or come to any Perfection, but when we are careful to pinch them off judiciously, we may be assured always to have good *Strawberries*. I have already given Directions in the Works of the Month of *February*, how to raise hasting *Strawberries*. Curious Persons have usually two *Strawberries* of two several Colours, viz. *red* and *white*, but they place them in several *Beds*. The great Enemy to *Strawberry-Plantations*, are the *Tons*, which are great white Worms, that in the Month of *May* and *June* gnaw the Neck of their *Roots*, and so kill them: To prevent which, in those Months we should carefully search every Day, under the *Roots* of all the *Strawberries* that begin to wither, where we shall commonly find one of these great Worms, which after they have done a mischief to one, pass on to do the like to other *Strawberry-Plants*, and kill them in like manner.

*Strawberry-Plants* bear very well the Year after their planting, if planted in *May*, but yield very indifferently if not planted till *September* after they are taken out of the Woods; yet in the second Year they bear wonderfully ; but that being past, they produce very pitifully, and therefore 'tis good to renew them every two Years: It is likewise very convenient to cut off every Year their old *Tops*, when the *Strawberries* are gone, which is commonly at the latter end of *July*. The earliest *Strawberries* that ripen towards the end of *May*, are those that are planted by the sides of Southern or Eastern Walls, and they



that ripen last, are such as are planted in a Northern Exposition.

*SUCCORR.* See *Endive*.

## T.

*TIME* is multiplied by Seed which is very small, sometimes we separate those Plants or Stems of it that produce several rooted Slips or Suckers, to replant them in Borders; for *Time* is seldom planted otherwise.

'Tis an odoriferous Plant, which is multiplied as well by Seed as rooted Branches or Slips. A Border of *Time* is a considerable and necessary Ornament in our *Kitchen-Garden*.

*TIPE-MADAM*, is propagated both by Seed, and Cuttings or Slips, every Stem or Stock of it produceth several Arms, which being separated and replanted, easily take Root again; the Seed of it is grey, and longish, and almost of the shape of *Parfley seed*; there grows a great deal of it upon every Seed-stalk, which runs up above one another like those of Seed Carrots, &c. there are seven or eight of them in a sort of little open Cup, where they grow ripe, after the falling of a little yellow Flower inclining to an Olive Colour.

It is one of our Sallad Furnitures, used chiefly in the Spring when 'tis tender, a little of it ought to serve in the Summer, because it is then too tough; 'tis multiplied both by Seed and Cuttings.

*TURNEPS* are multiplied only by Seed which is almost like that of *Cabbage*.

They are not properly *Kitchen-Garden Plants*, but yet where they are spacious, they may be admitted into them. They are sown very thick in Beds, some in *March*, and others in *August*; we gather their Seed in *July* and *August*: Every Body so well knows the



the use of them, that I need not say any more on this point.

*TARRAGON* is one of the perfuming or spicy Furnitures of our Sallads, it is propagated both by rooted Slips, and Seed; it springs again several times after it is cut; it endures the Winter, and needs but little watering in the driest Weather in Summer; when we plant it, we must allow eight or nine inches distance between Plant and Plant in the Beds; the best time to plant in, is in *March* and *April*, which hinders not but that we may transplant it again in the Summer Season.

## V.

*VINES*, of all sorts, whether white, red, &c. are multiplied by *Layers*, by hooked or bent Slips, and especially couched, and lastly by grafting cleft-wise.

*VIOLET Plants*, as well the double as single sort, and of what colour soever they be, though they produce Seed in little reddish Shells or Husks, yet are multiplied only by the Slips they produce, each Plant or Stock of them growing insensibly into a great Tuft, which is divided into several little ones, which being replanted, grow in time big enough to be likewise divided into others.

*VIOLETS*, especially the double ones, serve to make pretty Borders in our *Kitchen Gardens*; their Flowers make a very agreeable Figure when they are artfully placed on the Superficies of Spring Sallads. Every Body knows that they are propagated by Tufts, that is, by dividing one great Tuft into several little ones, which likewise in time grow thick, and fit to be divided into other little ones.



## W.

*WORMWOOD* is multiplied by Seed, which is of a pretty odd figure, being a little bent inward in its smallest part, and a little open on the other end, which is bigger and rounder, and upon which there is a little black spot; its Colour is yellowish at the bigger end, and its sharper end inclines to black; its Seed is seldom used, because it is very difficult to fan, being very light; and therefore when we have need of propagating *Wormwood*, we make use rather of its Cuttings that are a little rooted.

The *Plants* of this and all other *Plants* placed in *Borders* or *Edgings*, which are therefore called *Border-Plants*, as of *Time*, *Lavender*, &c. are planted by a Line, and at the distance of two or three inches, and five or six inches deep in the Ground. It is good to clip them every Spring, and to renew them every two Years, and to take away their oldest and decayed Stocks; their Seed is gathered about the Month of *August*.

THE



THE  
Gard'ner's Kalendar,  
Directing what is to be done in a  
KITCHEN-GARDEN  
Every MONTH in the YEAR:

With what  
PRODUCTS

We may have from our *Gardens* in every  
Month in the Year.

AND  
How to know if any thing be wanting, which it  
should be stock'd with in every Month.

---

*Works to be done in a Kitchen-Garden, in the  
Month of January.*

**P**RUNE all sorts of Trees, whether *Dwarf* or  
*Wall-Trees*, to prepare some of them to plant as  
soon as ever the Ground shall be open after the hard  
Frosts, and the melting of the Snow that cover'd it.  
Make *Trenches* to plant *Trees*, dig *Moulds* to amend  
them; dig round the *feet* either of *Trees* over-luxuriant,



to cut off their thick Roots, and by that means to make them fructifie, or of such as are infirm, to trim and redress them.

Make *Hét-beds* to sow forward *Coucumbers*, and *Sallads* in, whether in Rows or little Furrows, or under Bells, to make *Skreens* to cover those Seeds in case of need.

The first *Hot-beds* for *Coucumbers*, as also for *Musk-mellons*, are usually made at the very beginning of the Month, and at the same time we may make *Hot-beds* for *Mushrooms*.

Heat or force *Asparagus*.

Heat Beds of *Sorrel*, *Patience*, *Borage*, &c.

Raise on *Hot-beds*, *Jacinths*, *Narcissus's* of *Constantinople*, and some *Tulips*, &c.

Pull down the *Hot-beds* of the last Year, to take the rotten Dung that composed them, and lay it upon those Grounds we would amend or meliorate.

Lay apart some Moulds to have them at hand to prepare for the *Hot-beds*, also clear and cleanse the places of the *Hot-beds*, in order to the making of new ones.

Tie up with Bands of Straw, the tops of the Leaves of long *Lettuce* which have not cabbaged, to make them cabbage, or at least to whiten them when they are grown big enough for it.

Raise some *Strawberries* upon *Hot-beds*, to have them ripe in *April* and *May*.

Dung *Fig Trees* in order to have early *Figs*.

And in fine, advance the doing by little and little, all that the Spring Season is wont to do, with an extraordinary expedition.

Plant Trees in Baskets, pot and case *Fig Trees*; lay *Vine* and *Fig Tree Branches*, clear your Trees of Moss, if troubled with it, which is done best in Rainy Weather, with the back of a Knife or some such Instrument,

But



But it would be to little purpose to know what to do, without being informed how to do it, and therefore for your Instruction in Pruning, I refer you to the Fourth Book, in which, my having treated thoroughly on that Subject, may excuse me from speaking any more of it now.

As to the way of making Hot-beds, first you must know they are to be made only with long Horse-dung, or Mule-dung, which is to be either all new, or mixed with a third part at most of old, provided it be dry, and not rotten, for that which is rotten is not at all proper to make Hot-beds, no more than the Dung of Oxen, Cows, Hogs, &c. as well because it has little or no heat, as because ordinarily these kinds of rotten Dung are accompanied with an unpleasing smell, that infects the Plants raised upon such Beds, and gives them a scurvy taste.

By new long Dung is to be understood, that which is taken from under the Horses, and has served them for Litter one Night, or two at most.

By long old Dung, is meant that which has been piled up ever since it was new, in a dry place, where it has lain all Summer, to be ready to be used, either to make coverings for *Fig Trees*, *Artichokes*, *Endive*, &c. against the Winter Cold, or to make Hot-beds after the ordinary manner, which is thus performed.

After we have marked out, and proportioned the place where the Bed is to be, and marked out likewise with a Cord or with Stakes of what breadth it must be, there must be brought a rank of Baskets full of long Dung, one at the tail of another, beginning the rank or row where the Bed is to end; which done, the *Gard'ner* begins to work where the rank of Baskets ends, that so the Dung, not being intangled with any thing lying upon it, may more easily and handsomely be wrought into the Bed. Then the *Gard'ner* takes up this Dung with a Fork, and if he be any thing handy



dy, places it so neatly and tightly in laying every layer of his *Bed*, that all the Straw-ends of the Dung are turned inwards; and what remains, serves to make a kind of Back, or Fence on the outside. The first *Layer* being thus compleated exactly to the breadth that is marked out, which is commonly of about four foot; and to such a length as is thought fit, the *Gard'ner* proceeds to lay the second, third, &c. beating them with the back of his Fork, or else treading them with his Feet, to see if there be any defect; because the *Bed* must be equally stuff'd every where, so that no one part may not be less strong of Dung than another; which being done, he continues it to the design'd length, proportionating it still by *Layers*, till the *Bed* reach the length, breadth and height it should have; which height is of between two or three foot when it is first made, for it will sink a full foot when it is settled.

In the second place, there are other *Hot-Beds* which are to serve for *Mushrooms* in all the Seasons of the Year, and such may be made every Month, tho' they act not till about three Months after they are made; and that is, when all their great *heat* being quite spent, they are grown mouldy within: This sort of *Beds* are made in a new, sandy Ground, in which is first made a *Trench* of about six inches deep; then we cover them with a *Layer* of about two or three inches thick of the same *Earth*; they are raised in form of an Ass's Back, and over the covering of *Earth* we lay another of five or six inches of long dry *Dung*, which serves in Winter to shelter the *Mushrooms* from the Frost, which destroys them; and in the Summer, from the great Heats that broil them; and likewise to prevent the same mischievous effects of the same excessive Heat, we further take care to water these *Mushroom-beds* twice or thrice a Week.

As for the breadth of *Hot-Beds*, it should be in all  
forts



forts of them of about four foot, and their height must be of between two and three when they are first made, because they sink afterward a full foot, when once the great Heat is past: As to the length, that is to be regulated by the quantity of Dung we have to make them with; so that according to that, we make of them several lengths: But in height and breadth, all Beds should be as near as may be alike proportioned.

But before we sow or replant any thing whatsoever upon any new made *Hot-beds*, the first Precaution we must observe, is, To stay six or seven Days, and sometimes ten or twelve, to give the Bed time first to heat; and afterwards, to give time for that heat which is very violent, to abate considerably: this abatement appears when the whole Bed is sunk, and when thrusting down our Hand into the Mould, we perceive in it but a moderate heat: Then it is we are to begin handsomly to shape out and adjust the Mould; for which purpose, the *Gard'ner* must make use of a Board of a foot broad, which he places upon the sides of the Bed, about two inches from the edge; and joining close to the Mould; and having thus placed it, he endeavours to keep it firm and tight, as well with his Left-Hand and Knee, as with the strength of his whole Body; and then with his Right-Hand he begins at one end to press down the Mould against the Board, so hard, till he brings it to so firm a consistence, that how light and loose soever it were before of its own Nature, yet it may be able to keep up it self alone when the Board is taken away, as well as if it were a solid Body. When the Mould is thus adjusted to the whole length of the Board, then he removes the Board to another place, and so continues till he has performed the same operation on all sides of the *Bed*: And if the Board be a little longer, and consequently a little more unweildy than ordinary, then there must be two or three  
Persons



persons join together to work in the same manner, and at the same time, to adjust this Mould; or if the *Gard'ner* be all alone, he must keep the Board tight with some Pins fastened in the sides of the Dung-Bed already adjusted; and when the thing is done, the Mould shall have at least a full half foot extent less on every side, than the lower part of the Bed; and in its oblong square Figure, appear as even as if it were a Bed formed on the plain Ground: After which the Beds are to be employed for those occasions that first obliged us to make them. All things in them would either perish, or be much endamaged, if we sowed or planted in them sooner, or if we should delay our doing it any longer. The Heat of the Bed, may last in a condition to be able to perform well its effects for about ten or twelve Days, after it is sown or planted, but when that time is past, if we perceive the Bed to be too much cooled, we must renew the heat with some new long Dung, or fresh warm Litter apply'd round about it, both to recruit the heat, and to maintain it afterwards in that good temper in which it should be, and in which it was before, when we begun to sow and plant there; so that the Plants instead of wasting away or perishing there, they may increase and thrive visibly, as they should do. It is not so very needful to tell you that when a Man has two Beds next one another, one recruiting of heat will serve for both, because there's no body but knows it; but it is good to know that this recruiting of heat between two Beds, should not be by a great deal so strong as when there is but one; for the ordinary interval or space left between two Beds for the path being about the breadth of one full foot, a little Dung will serve to fill it up; and that new heat is reciprocally maintained in it's vigour by the neighbourhood of the two Beds that border on each side upon it; but when there is but one Bed, our addition of  
Dung



Dung for a new Heat, must be at least two foot broad all along the whole length of the Bed, and to its full heighth, and many times it must be higher than that.

When we are to renew the Heat, it is not always necessary to make an application of new Dung, it being many times sufficient to stir that at the bottom upwards, which we last applied, and which needs it, provided it be not too much rotted; which stirring of it is enough to renew the Heat for eight or ten Days longer: And there is no need of applying any new Dung, but when by the rotting of all the last, or of at least a good part of it, we find it to be no longer fit to yield that heat which is necessary to those *Plants* that are raised in *Hot-beds*.

If they are *Asparagus*, or *Strawberries*, which we have taken out of their cold Beds, and replanted in hot ones, and there be any apprehension of Cold, we must carefully cover them with Glass Bells, or Glass Frames, and to hinder the Frost from penetrating even them, and spoiling what is underneath them, we use besides to cover them with Skreens of dry long Dung, or Litter, or Straw which we put over the Glass Bells, or Glass Frames; and Plants never fail to produce upon Beds thus accommodated and maintained in a due heat, by such recruitings renewed from time to time.

This manner of proceeding is good and commodious enough for *Sorrel*, because being animated by the moderate heat of the *Hot-bed*, it springs up there for some fifteen Days time, just as it does when it grows in naked Ground in the Month of *May*, and afterwards dies; but it is not so good for *Asparagus*, because they, when they are pull'd up and replanted, never produce such fine *Shoots*, as when they are dunged and heat on the naked Ground.

It follows then, that the best method for *Asparagus*, and even for *Sorrel* too, is to take up for about



two foot deep all the *Earth* in the Paths between two *cold Beds*, (which Paths should be a full foot broad) and fill them up afterwards with long warm *Dung*, to heat the neighb'ring *Earth*; and if it be for *Asparagus*, to cover the whole *cold Bed* with the same *Dung*, to help to warm the *Earth*; and when the *Asparagus* begin to sprout, we put *Bells* upon each *Plant*, or else cover the whole *Bed* with *Glass Frames*: after which, the Heat of those Paths must be renewed, by stirring them the bottom upward, or by renewing from time to time an application of fresh *Dung*, covering besides the *Bells* or *Glass Frames* with dry long *Dung*, or Skreens of Straw, or such like matter, for the reasons above expressed, when we were treating of *Asparagus* and *Sorrel* in *Hot-beds*. The *Asparagus-Plants* being thus warmed, and feeling under those *Bells* or *Glass Frames* an Air as comfortable as in *April* or *May*, they produce *Shoots* that are red at first coming up, but which afterward turn green and long, like those which Nature it self produces in warm and temperate Seasons. The only inconvenience of those Artificial Heatings, is, that because they must be very violent to penetrate a cold *Earth*, they dry up and spoil those *Plants*; so that such *Asparagus*, instead of continuing fifteen Years together to bear well, as otherwise they do, never spring kindly afterward; and though they be let alone two or three Years after their first heating, yet at most are able to endure but one more.

The *Strawberries* which are forced on *Hot-beds* begin to put out their *Shoots* in *January*, and flower in *February* and *March*, and yield their Fruit in *April* and *May*; the best method of raising them, is to put them in *September* in a tolerable good light *Earth*, and afterwards to plant them in *Hot-beds* in *December*; they may also be planted in *Hot-beds* without potting at all in the Month of *March*; their *Runners*, and some of their *Leaves*, must be taken off, if they have too many; the *Earth* in their *Pots* must be always kept loose  
and



and a little moist; and if there happens any excessive *Heats* in some days of *March* or *April*, they must have a little Air given them towards the North, and they must be covered a Nights.

To have little Sallads of *Lettuce* to cut, mixed with *Chervil Cresses*, &c. with Furnitures of *Mint*, *Tarragon*, &c. and to have *Radishes*, &c. we make such *Hot-beds* as I have directed, and we steep in Water, about 24 hours, a little Bag of *Lettuce Seed*; after which time we take it out, and hang it in a Chimney-corner, or in some other place where the Frost cannot reach it; and the *Seed* so wetted, drains it self from the Water, and heats in such a measure, that it sprouts; and then after we have made in *Hot-beds* some little Furrows of about two inches deep, and about as much broad, with a little Stick that we draw hard over Mould, we sow that sprouted *Seed* in those Furrows so thick that it covers all the bottom of the Furrows: There must be a French Bushel, or twenty Pound weight English, to sow a *Bed* of fourteen fathoms long, and of four broad; and when it is sown, we cover it with a little Mould, cast upon it lightly with the Hand, and each cast of the Hand dexterously performed, should cover a Furrow as much as it needs; which done, we put some Bells or long Straw over them, to hinder the Birds from eating them, and the Heat from evaporating, or the Frost by chilling it, from destroying the *Seed*; we take away the Straw, when at the end of five or six Days the *Seeds* begin to spring well, and at length, ten or twelve Days after, it is commonly high enough to be cut with a Knife, and eaten in Sallads, that is to be understood, if the Ice and Snow, and even the Heat of the *Bed* be not too excessive. We take the same course with *Chervil*, and *Cresses*, save only that they must be sown without steeping their *Seeds*.



As for *Mint*, *Tarragon*, *Cives*, and other Furnitures of Sallads, they are planted on the *Hot-beds* in the same manner as the cold ones.

As for *Radishes*, we seldom steep them to make them sprout, the Skins of their Seed being so tender, that in less than a Days time they would be all melted to a Pap.

I have directed how to sow *Radishes* in the Works of *November*, where we treat of preparing the Provisions we would have from our *Gardens* in *January*, *February*, and *March*.

It is convenient to sow in the beginning of this Month, or even in *November* and *December*, a *Hot-bed* of *Parsley*, to supply us with fresh in the Spring time, to serve us till that we should sow in naked Earth at the end of *February*, be grown to its Perfection.

To lay the Branches, or Slips of *Vines*, *Gooseberry*, and *Curran Bushes* to take root, we need only couch, or lay down their *Branches* into the Earth, and cover them in the middle with Earth, to the height of five or six inches, which are to remain in that condition till the Month of *November* following, when having taken Root, we take them up, that is, separate them from the Tree, and plant them where we have occasion for them.

To circumpose Trees, by planting them in Baskets, Pots, and Boxes or Cafes, we first fill half way with Earth, those Baskets, Pots, or Boxes, and then having pruned and trim'd the Trees as I have directed in the Treatise of *Plantations*, we plant them, sinking the Baskets or Pots quite into the Earth, but leaving the Boxes or Cafes above Ground.

The way of potting the *bulbous Root Tuberenses*, *Janquils*, *Narcissus's* of *Constantinople*, &c. is first to put them into Pots, and then to put those Pots into *Hot-beds*, covering those Beds carefully with Glass Frames, Bells, Straw Skreens, &c.



To warm or force *Fig-Trees*, we must have some in *Boxes* or *Cases*, for which we make in *January*, a deaf *Hot-bed*, (being a *Hot-bed* made in a hollow dung into the *Earth*, and raised only even with its surface) and place the *Boxes* upon it. Then must we have some square *Glass Frames* about six or seven Foot high, which must be apply'd against a Wall expos'd to a Southern Aspect; by which the *Dung* in the *Hot-bed* fermenting into a Heat warms the *Earth* in the *Box*, and by consequence makes the *Fig-Tree* sprout: That *Bed* is to be put into a new Ferment when there is occasion, and great care must be taken to cover those *Glass Frames* close, that no Cold may get within them.

During the whole Month of *January*, we continue to sow upon *Hot-beds* under *Bells*, *Lettuces* to be replanted as I have directed in the Works of *December*; as also to replant them under *Bells*, as well to serve in the Nursery as in the places they were design'd for; and as to the *Seeds* when sown, we may forbear covering them with Mould if we please, it being enough to pat them with the flat of our Hands upon the *Beds*, to press the Mould close about them; we use the same method with *Purslain* sown under *Bells*, for we can scarce throw too little Mould upon those *Seeds* to cover them.

To have some fine little *Lettuces* for fallading, we must sow under *Bells* some of the bright curled sort, and stay 'till it has shot forth two Leaves before we gather it: The *Seeds* of those *Lettuces* must be sown thin, that the *Plants* may grow tall; and if we see them come up too thick, we must thin them: The choicest sort of *Lettuce* for the Spring Season, are the curled, fair or bright *Lettuce*, the *short Lettuce*, and above all the *Shell-Lettuce*, &c. We also sow some under *Bells*, to replant again, *Borage*, *Bugloss*, and *Arrach* or *Orange*.



Products that we may have from our Gardens in the Month of January.

**B**esides the good Pears following, viz. *Leschasseries*, *Ambrets Thorn Pears*, *St. Germain's dry Martins*, *Virgoules*, and *Winter Bon Cretiens*, &c. And these good Apples, viz. *Calvils*, *Pippins*, *Apis's*, *Carpenters*, or *short-stalk'd Apples*, *Fennellets*, or *Fennel Apples*, &c. And lastly besides some sorts of Grapes, as the ordinary *Muscat*, the long *Muscat*, the *Chasselas*, &c. every Person may have *Artichocks*, &c.

All sorts of Roots, as *Beet-raves*, or *Red-Beet-Roots*, *Scurzoneras*, *Carrots*, *Parsnips*, *Common Salsifies*, or *Goats-beard*, *Turneps*, &c.

*Spanish Carbons*, and Chards of *Artichocks* whitened.  
*Cellery* whitened.

*Macedonian Parsley*, or *Allianders* whitened.

*Fennel*, *Anis*, and *Endive*, as well that which is called the white, as that which is called wild, or *Susmary*.

*Collyflowers*, &c. All these things must have been brought into the Conservatory in the Months of *November*, and *December*, and ordered as I have directed in speaking of the Works to be done in those two Months.

Besides which we have also *Pancaliers*, *Milan*, and bright or large sided *Cabbages*.

These sorts of *Cabbages* are not carried into the Conservatory; on the contrary, they must be Frost bitten in the open Air, to make them tender and delicate.

We may also have some *Citruls*, or *Pumpions*, and some *Potirons*, or flat *Pompions* by the help of a Conservatory.

We may also have pickled *Cucumbers*, pickled *Purslain*, pickled *Mushrooms*, and pickled *Capucin Capers*, or *Nasturces*.

We



We may have *Onions*, *Garlick*, and *Shallots*, out of the Conservatory.

With *Leeks*, *Ciboulas*, *Burnet*, *Chervil*, *Parsley*, and *Alleluja* or *Wood-Sorrel*, &c.

Also very good reddish green *Asparagus*, which are better than those that grow naturally in *April*, and all the Month of *May*.

And by the help of *Hot-Beds*, or *heated Path-ways*, we may have very fine *Sorrel*, as well of the round as the long sort, and little Sallads of *Lettuce* to cut, with their Furniture of *Mint*, *Tarragon*, *Garden-Cresses*, tender *Chervil*, *Parsley*, *Borage*, *Bugloss*, &c.

We may likewise have little *Raddishes* upon *Hot-beds*, provided the abundance of *Snow*, and the rigour of the *Frosts* be not so several great, that we cannot so much as for a few Hours in a Day uncover the *Beds* on which they are, nor give them any new recruits of *Heat*, without which all that is planted of this sort on *Hot-beds*, is subject to grow yellow and come to nothing.

Likewise we may have *Mushrooms* upon *Hot-bed* made on purpose for that effect, and which are kept carefully cover'd with long dry *Dung*, to prevent the hard *Frosts* from spoiling them.

Nor have we naturally but few *Flowers*, except *Lawrel-time*, and *Snow-drops*, but by the help of *Hot-beds* we may have some single *Anemonies*, Winter *Narchissus's*, and *Narchissus's* of *Constantinople*, *Crocuses*, &c. but we have now *Laurus Rose-Leaves* to garnish the Dishes we serve up to Table.



*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Month of January.*

**I**T is no inconsiderable thing to understand certainly, not only what *Provisions* a *Kitchen-Garden* well maintained and orderd may furnish us with every *Month* in the Year, but likewise what *Works* are to be done there every Season by an able *Gard'ner*; but yet that is not enough to make a Gentleman so knowing as to be able to give himself the pleasure to judge certainly by viewing his *Kitchen-Garden*, whether it be so well stock'd as to want nothing that it should have. For in fine, we must not expect always actually to find in it all Advantages for which we are beholden to *Gardens*. We know indeed that it should bring forth a provision for the whole Year, but we know very well too that it does not bring forth all Days in the Year; for Example, In the *Winter Months* we hardly see in it any of its Productions, the most part of them being carried out, and laid up in *Store-houses*, and *Conservatories*. And besides, among the *Plants* that are to be seen in it at other times, how many of them are there which have not attained to their Perfection, which yet ought to make a Figure in this *Garden*, tho' they require perhaps two or three, or perhaps five or six Months time to arrive at it? Thus it is in the beginning of the *Spring*, with all *Legumes*, or eatable *Plants* and *green things*; and thus it is too in the Summer, with the principal *Fruits* of other Seasons; upon which considerations, I thought it not impertinent, nor unuseful, to shew yet a little more particularly, wherein the excellency and accomplishment of a *Kitchen-Garden* does consist, judging of it according to



to the proportion or what we ought to find every time we go into it.

I will begin with the Month of *January*, in which we ought to be very well satisfied with the *Garden* in question, if we find in it a reasonable quantity of *Winter Lettuces* planted in Borders by Walls, and cover'd with *long Straw*, or *Straw Skreens*; and likewise if we find in it some squares of *Artichokes*, and *Beet-chards* well cover'd with *long Dung*, with the like Provision of *Cellery*, *Endive*, *common Parsley*, and *Macedonian Parsley*, or *Alifanders*, &c. and order'd after the same manner; And in the third place, some *Winter Cabbages*, *Cibouls*, *Sorrel*, and *Sallad Furnitures*, and if these too last be shelter'd with some sort of covering; and in the fourth place, if there be some squares of *Asparagus* without any other Artifice than what is used to warm and force them in their *cold beds*, as I do and have begun to do in the Months of *November* and *December*, all other *Kitchen-plants* must be housed and laid up, as *Roots*, *Onions*, *Cardons*, *Artichokes*, *Colly-flowers*, &c. In the fifth place, we may be content if we find the *Fig-Trees* well cover'd, all places where *Trees* should be well fill'd up with *Trees*, or at least with holes dig'd, and *Trenches* prepared ready for planting them, or the *Roots* of those that begin to languish bared and laid open, in order to their cure: Sixthly, if we see Men busie in clearing the *Fruit-Trees* from Moss, and other Filth that spoils them; and if over and above that, we find there any *Hot-beds* for the Novelties of the *Spring* time, such as are *Strawberries*, *Raddishes*, little *Sallads*, *Peas*, *Beans*, *Cabbage Lettuces*, *Parsley*, *Cucumbers*, and *Musk-melon* Plantations &c. if we likewise find some *Fig Trees* and some other *Trees* forced, and advanced by artificial warmth; what then ought we not to say in praise of the *Gard'ner*, especially if we find the *Walks* and *Alleys* kept neat and clean, and no *Garden Tools* and *Utenfils* any where neglected.



Having told you what should compose the Beauty of a *Kitchen-Garden* in the Month of *January*, I think it needless to add any description of what makes it imperfect and disagreeable, as well in that Month, as in all the rest of which I shall afterwards treat, because any body may easily discern of himself, that it is just the reverse of what I have now specified, that is to say, a want of any thing that should be in it; Negligence and Slovenliness being look'd upon as the Monsters of a *Kitchen-Garden*.

---

*Works to be done in February.*

**I**N this Month we continue the same works we were doing in the last, *viz.*

Now we apply our selves to manuring the Ground if the *Frost* permits, and about the end of the Month, or rather towards *Mid-March*, or latter, that is towards *Mid-April*, we sow in the naked Ground those things that are long a rearing as for Example, all sorts of Roots, *viz.* *Carrots Parsnips, Chervils or Skirrets, Beet-Raves, or Red-Beet-Roots, Scorzonères*, and above all *Parsley Roots*.

For now also *Onions, Leeks, Cibouls, Sorrel Hasting Peas, Garden or Marsh-Beans, Wild Endive, or Succory, and Burnet*.

If we have any *Shell-Lettuces* that were sown in *Autumn* last, in some well shelter'd place we now replant them on *Hot-Beds* under *Bells*, to make them *Cabbage* betimes. And particularly we take care to replant on them some of the *Curl'd Bright Lettuces*, which we sowed last Month, because they turn to better account than others.

Begin at the latter end of the Month to sow a little green *Purslain* under *Bells*, the *Red, or Golden*



*den* fort being too delicate or tender to be sown before *March*.

Replant *Cucumbers* and *Musk-mellons*, if you have any big enough, and that upon a *Hot-Bed*, in some place well shelter'd either by Walls, Straw, or Reed Hedges, or some other Invention to keep off the Wind.

We also sow towards the end of the Month, our *Annual Flowers*, in order to replant them again at the latter end of *April*, and the beginning of *May*.

Sow also your first *Cabbages*.

Begin to graft all sorts of *Trees* in the *Cleft*, prune and plant them; plant also *Vines*, and about *Mid-February*, if the Weather be any thing fair, is the proper time to begin all sorts of Works.

Now make the *Hot-Beds* which you have occasion to make use of for *Radishes*, little *Sallets*, and to raise those things which we are to replant again in the *Cold Beds*.

Take care to maintain the necessary heat about your *Asparagus*, and to gather those that are good.

Continue to plant *Trees* when the Weather and the Soil will permit.

### *Provisions and Products of February.*

**T**H E Weather usually begins to grow a little milder this Month, so that as to Flowers, we may now naturally by the favour of a good Shelter and a good Exposition, have of all those sorts which I told you in my Discourse of the Products of the last Month might be raised by forcing on *Hot Beds*. Besides which, we may have some *Primroses*, and the heat of the *Hot Beds* may even produce us some *Tulips*, and *Totus Albus's*.

But in respect of *Kitchen-Plants*, we have as yet only those things which we have before mentioned;



that is to say, we continue to spend the Stock we have in the Conservatory or Store-house; and what we raise by the assistance of *Hot-beds*, and artificial heatings, as little *Sallets*, *Sorrel Raddishes*, *Asparagus*, &c.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Month of February.*

**I**F towards the latter end of this Month, the Weather appear pretty temperate, and there happen so considerable a Thaw as to promise an end of the great Cold, our Gard'ners should then begin to dig and manure the Squares and the Counter Borders, prepare the *Cold beds*, sow those sorts of Seeds that are long coming up, as *Parfly*, *Onions*, *Cibouls*, *Leeks*, &c. They must likewise now earnestly mind the pruning of Trees, as well *Dwarfs*, as *Wall-Trees*, and pallisade or nail up these last for the first time, and particularly they must take care to make *Hot-beds* for the replanting of *Musk-melons* and *Cucumbers*, and for little *Sallets*, *Raddishes*, *Cabbage-Lettuces*, &c.

---

*Works to be done in March.*

**A**T the beginning of this Month, it appears who are the Gard'ners that have been idle, by their not furnishing us with any thing with the diligent and skilful ones supply us with, and by their having neglected to sow their Grounds, which lie for the most part as yet unsown, tho' the Weather have been favourable for it.

Good Gard'ners ought to cover with Mold, the Cold Beds which they have sown with their designed  
Seeds,



Seeds, for fear the waterings and great Rains should beat down the Earth too much, and renders it Superficies too hard for the *Seeds* to pierce and shoot through; they should also bank up their *Cold beds* tightly with a Rake, that so the Rain-water, or that of their waterings may keep in them, and not run out of them into the Paths.

About *Mid-March* at furthest, make the *Hot beds* in which you are to replant the earliest *Musk-melons*.

Sow in the naked Earth, in some well shelter'd place, all those things which you are to plant again in the like; as for Example, both our Spring *Lettuce*, and that which you are to replant again at the latter end of *April* and at the beginning of *May*, viz. the *Curled bright Lettuce*, and the *Royal*, and *Bellegarde Lettuce*, the *Perpignon Lettuce* which is greenish, the *Alfange*, the *Chicons*, and the *Green*, *Red* and *bright Genua Lettuces* are near two Months on the Ground, before they grow big enough to be replanted. Sow also *Cabbages* for the latter Season, and *Collyflowers* to plant them in their proper places, about the end of *April* and beginning of *May*; and if they come up too thick, take out some, and replant them in a *Nursery*, to make them grow bigger, &c.

Sow *Radishes* in the naked Earth among all the other Seeds that you are sowing, because they do no harm there.

Sow *Arach*, or *Orange*, in the naked Earth.

About *Mid-March*, sow *Citruls* or *Pompions* upon *hot-Beds*, to replant in the beginning of *May*.

Make an end of pruning and planting during the course of this Month of all Garden-Trees, and also of *Gooseberry*, *Curran*, and *Raspberry shrubs*, &c. It is very convenient to delay the pruning of vigorous Trees 'till they begin to sprout, as well to let them spend their first Strength, as to prevent losing any of their Fruit Buds which we cannot 'till then discern, and



and which come to their perfection in the Spring-Season.

Take up at the beginning of the Month, with Mold and all, the *plantation* of *Strawberries*, which you had in the *Nursery*, to form *Cold Beds* and *Squares* of them to remain and to refurnish those where there want any.

Sow some Seed of *Pierce-pierre* or *Garden Samphire* in some tub of Earth, or in the naked Ground in some shelter'd place.

Sow a third time a few more *Peas*, of the great square sort.

At the very beginning of the Month sow a little quantity of *Endive* very thin, to have some of it whited about *Mid-summer*.

Towards the end of the Month, or at the beginning of *April*, sow a little *Cellery* in the naked Earth, to have some late in the Months of *August* and *September*. *Cellery* is commonly almost a Month a coming up; and we sow a little of it at the same time on a *Hot-bed*, in order to have some of it early.

Begin now to uncover a little your *Artichoakes*, but we seldom begin to manure them till the full Moon of *March* be past, which is generally very dangerous both to them and to the *Fig-trees*, which last must not yet be quite uncover'd, it being enough to do it half way, at the same time we take off all their dead Wood and Branches, whether killed by the *Frost*, or by any other means.

About the middle of *March*, or before if the weather be mild, begin to sow some *Red* or *Golden Purslain* upon *hot beds* under *Bells* and continue still to sow of the *Green* sort.

We replant in their fixt places common *Cabbages* and *Millan Cabbages*, which you should take care to have ready in your *Nursery*, from the beginning of *November* last past, in some well shelter'd place, but  
replant



replant none of those that begin to mount, that is, to run up their Stalks, as if they were going to Seed.

Plant the *Asparagus Squares* which you have occasion for, to which purpose make choice of a fine Plantation of one years growth, or else of one of two.

The way to plant *Asparagus* is, to place two or three Plants of them together, and neatly to spread out their *Roots* without cutting them but very little, and then cover them with a layer of Earth of two or three Inches thick, to plant those Tufts Chequer-wise, at a Foot and a half distance one from the other.

This *Cold Bed* should generally be full four Foot broad, that there may be room enough for three ranks of them. But if you design to force any of them by heat in *Winter*, you must make the cold *Beds* but three Foot broad, and observe if the Ground be dry, to lay the Bed hollow within the Earth with a good Spade, and by that means raise the Paths Arch-wise, making use of the Soil that comes out of it, to cover again by little and little, and year by year, the Plantation as it grows stronger, and rises out of the Ground. But if it be a moist Ground, and very cool, it is better not to make the Bed so low nor hollow, but on the contrary to keep it a little higher than the Paths, that the Winter waters may descend out of it into them, and may not rot the Plants, to which nothing is more dangerous than too much wet.

*Asparagus* both old and young must be carefully howed or cleared of Weeds, and in this Month of *March*, before they appear above Ground, you must afford them a little manuring, by turning up the Earth to the depth of half a Foot about them, to give the young *Asparagus* the more liberty to shoot up.

At the beginning of the Month it will be time to replant what you have a mind should run to Seed, *viz.* *Leeks* and *Onions*, and especially the *white* sort, *Cloves* of



of *Garlick*, *Cloves* and *Seeds of Shallots*, white *Cabbage*, *Pancaliers Cabbage*, &c. Now likewise you are to tie up such *Lettuce* as should *Cabbage*, and yet do not, which tying makes them in a manner *Cabbage* by force.

Sow the Seed of *Panacht*, or striped *Gillyflowers* upon *Hot-beds*, before the full Moon, to replant them in *May*; sow also the *Annual Flowers* upon *Hot-beds* to replant at the latter end of *May*, viz. *Passe velours*, or *Velvet Flowers*, called also *Flower gentiles*, and *Amaranthus*, *Indian Ocellus*, or *French Marygolds*, *Indian Roses* the *Belles de Nuit*.

Set in the Ground, *Almonds* that have sprouted, breaking off the sprout before you plant them.

Sow in the *Flower Pots*, or *Parterres*, some *Seeds* of *Poppy*, and of *Larks Heels*, which will flower after them that were sown in *September*.

#### *Provisions and Products of March.*

WE have now upon our *Hot-beds*, abundance of *Raddishes*, and little *Sallets*, and of *Scrrcl*, and *Cabbage Lettuces*, under *Bells*, which are the *bright curled Lettuces* sown in *November* and *December*, and afterwards transplanted into other *Hot beds*. The other sorts of *Lettuces* will not come to any thing under *Bells*.

We continue to have forced *Asparagus*.

As to *Flowers*, if the Cold be not extraordinary violent, we have every where, and that naturally, all those sorts which blow only in good *Expositions* in the preceding Months, beside which, we have *Violets*, *Jachinths*, *Passe-touts*, and single *Anemonies*.

And towards the end of the Month, we have *English Narcissus's*, *Narcissus's* of *Algiers*, *English Iris*, or *Flower-de-Luces*, yellow *Stock-Gilliflowers*, None such *Narcissus's*, single and double *Heapatica's*, as well of  
the



the Red, as of the pale Violet Sort, *Hellebore* Flowers, some single *Funquils*.

We need not now force any Flowers, unless it be single or double *Funquils*, if the Weather be very hard.

But if the Weather be very mild, we have double *Anemonies*, *Bears Ears*, *Fritillarias*, some Spring *Tulips*, *Daisies*, *Flammes*, or *Fleam-flowers*, *Persian Iris*, and *Funquils* at the latter end of the Month.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in March.*

**I**N *March*, if your Ground be great, and the number of Labourers proportionable, you should have the pleasure with one cast of an Eye to see them digging, making up, sowing, planting, hewing, weeding, grafting, pruning, &c. for in fine, before the Month be out, the most part of the Ground should be taken by either with Seeds or Plants, which are to serve for provision for the whole year. All that which was before coverd with *Dung*, ought to be discharged of its coverings which are now grown noisome, as soon as they cease to be necessary, and every thing ought to breath the free Air, which begins now to cheer both Animals and Plants; you should at this time have at least something to begin to gather, either of *Sallets* or *Raddishes*, of the new Season.



*Works to be done in April.*

**T**Here is no Month in the year wherein there is more work to be done in *Gardens* than in this, for now the Earth begins to be very fit, not only to be manured, but to receive whatsoever you have a mind to plant or sow in it, as *Lettuce, Leeks, Cabbage, Borage, Bugloss, Artichokes, Tarragon, Mint, Violets, &c.* Before the Month of *April*, it is as yet too cold, and after *April* it begins to be too dry.

Perform now your second pruning of the Branches of *Peach-Trees*, I mean only the Fruit Branches in order to cut them off short to that part just above where there is Fruit knit; and if any of those *Peach-Trees*, have produced any very thick Shoots upon high Branches, as sometimes it happens after the full Moon of *March*, pinch them to make them multiply into Fruit Branches, and to keep them low, when there is occasion, that they may not run up too high before their time.

Continue to trim *Musk Melons* and *Cucumbers*, to new heat your *hot Beds*, and make new ones, and to sow *Cucumbers*, that you may have some to replant that may ripen about the end of Summer, and beginning of Autumn.

Make some hot *Mushroom Beds* in new Ground, the manner of doing which I have already described elsewhere.

'Tis the *Moon* of this Month, that is vulgarly call'd the *Ruddy Moon*, it being very subject to be windy, cold, and dry, and to be fatal thereby to many new planten Trees, unless great care be taken to water them about the Foot once a Week.

Weed up all the ill Weeds that grow among good Seed, take the same course with *Strawberries, Peas,*



*Peas*, and replanted *Lettuce*, and howe all about them the better to loosen the Earth, and open a passage for the first Rain that shall fall.

About the middle of *April* begin to sow a little *White Endive*, in plain Ground, to whiten it in the same place; and provided it be thin sown, no Seed comes so easily up as this sort of *Endive*.

At the middle of *April* sow also in their places, the first *Spanish Cardons*, and the second at the beginning of *May*; the first are commonly a Month in coming up, and the other about fifteen days.

Also still sow in this Month, some *Scorrel*, if you be not sufficiently provided with it before.

As to what is to be done to *Melons* in this Month, we refer you to the discourse on that Subject, Page 207.

Choose a part of the fairest of the *Cabbage Lettuces*, as well as the Winter ones, which are the *Shell* and *Jerusalem Lettuces*, as the *Curled Bright Lettuce* raised up *Hot Beds* and under *Bells* to plant them all together in some *cold Beds* at a foot distance one from another, to let them run to Seed; which is also perform'd with a planting stick.

Plant edgings of *Time*, *Sage*, *Marjoram*, *Hyssop*, *Lavendar*, *Rue*, *Wormwood*, &c.

Replant *Spring Lettuce* to *Cabbage*, which succeed one another in this order; the *Curled Bright Lettuce* is the first and best, as being the most tender and delicate, but it requires a mild and light Soil, or above all, a *Hot Bed* to plant it on, and *Bells*, from the Month of *February*, and during all the Month of *March*, and the beginning of *April*. A gross Soil agrees not with it, for instead of growing bigger there, it dwindles to nothing.

The *Green Curled Lettuce*, the *George Lettuce*, the *Little Red Lettuce*, and those called the *keyal*, the *Bellegarde*, and the *Perpignon*, follow next after. The *Royal Lettuce* is a very fair and thick *Lettuce*, which differs



differs only from the *Bellegarde* in that it is a little less *Curled*. The *Capucin*, *Short*, *Aubervilliers*, and *Austrian Lettuces* succeed them, and run not so easily to Seed, as the preceeding ones. The *Alfanges Chicons*, and *Imperials*, which are all *Lettuces* to tie up, bring up the Rear; and the *Genua Lettuces*, both the Red, Bright, and Green, are the last Summer *Lettuces*; you must replant a good number of them at the very beginning of *May*, to have them good about *Midsummer*, and all the rest of the Summer; of all *Lettuces*, this sort best endures the great heats, and is least disposed to run to Seed; for which reason to obtain Seed of it, you must have sown it upon *Hot beds* from the very Month of *February*, that you may have some good Plants of it to set again at the latter end of *April*.

The *Royal Lettuce* begins again to be fit to be replanted about the middle of *September*, to supply you, together with that of *Genua*, all the rest of Autumn.

From the end of *August* begin to sow the *Shell*, or *Winter Lettuce*, that you may have some fit to replant in the Months of *October*, and *November*, for our *Winter* provision.

The *Aubervillier Lettuce* grows so very hard that it is scarce fit for *Sallets*, but is better for Pottage; but yet it is very subject to be bitter.

You must not fail every fifteen days, to sow a little *Genua Lettuce*, that you may always be provided with some fit to replant during all the whole Summer, till the middle of *September*.

If the *Ruddy* or dry *Winds* Reign, as they generally do this Month, we must carefully and plentifully water every thing in our *Kitchen Garden*, except it be the *Asparagus*.

Now likewise search the Woods for Young *Strawberry Plants*, to make *Nurseries*, in some part of your *Garden*, plant tufts of two or three plants of them together, at four or five Inches distance one from



from another, and if the Soil be dry, in a hollow *Bed* of two or three Inches deep, the better to retain and preserve the rain water, and that of our waterings.

We also now dis-eye or separate the Off-sets or Slips of our *Artichokes*, as soon as they are big enough, and we plant as many of them as we need, two or three of them in each hole, or Trench of about three or four Inches deep, and two full foot and a half distance one from the other, each *Bed* should be four foot wide, and contain two rows of *Artichoke* Plants along its sides, and there must be a void space left in the middle, of three Foot wide for the planting of *Leek Chards*, or great whited *Leeks*, or else of *Collyflowers*, in imitation of the Market Gard'ners, who are good Husbands of their Ground. The two *Artichoke* Plants which we set in each hole, must be placed a full foot and a half distance one from the other.

We have already in the Month of *March*, set into the Earth, those *Almonds* which sprouted early, and in this Month we set those which having not sprouted at the same time with the others, had been put up back again into Mould, Earth, or Sand.

In the beginning of the Month, Gardens should be almost in their Perfection; we must sow *Parsly*, *wild Endive*, or *Succory*, and the first *Harico's* or *French Beans*, the second being to be sown about the middle, and the third at the latter end of *May*, that so we may have a crop of them about two Months after sowing.

About this time the *Strawberries* growing in the naked Earth, shoot forth their stems, when we must take exact care to pluck all the *Cuckoos* among them, that is, those *Strawberry* Plants that blossom much without knitting.

We sow our last *Cucumbers* about the tenth or twelfth of this Month, to have some lateward ones and such as may be fit to pickle in *October*, which last



are commonly called *Cornichons*, or horned *Cucumbers*, and in English, *Crumplings*, and *Guerkings*.

It is particularly about the end of this Month, that *May Moon* begins, that is too fertile, and so vigorous in its productions, when we must with all possible care run over our *Wall-trees*, and draw from behind the *Trails*, those Branches that grow between them and the Wall, as well the smaller ones, as more particularly those that are thick; at the same time *Peach Trees* and other *Stone-Fruit Trees* are to be pruned the third time, it having been done the second time whilst they were in Blossom, to take away all those Branches that had not blossom'd.

At this time likewise, we are to pinch that is to say, break off to four or five Eyes or Buds, those thick shoots in *Peach-Trees* that are sprung out since the main Pruning of that year, in order to make them shoot out three or four midling shoots, one whereof may be for a *Wood Branch*, and the rest for *Fruit*; this Operation is to be performed particularly upon those very thick Shoots that spring out of the Extremity of a Tree that is grown high, when it has already attained its due height.

### *Provisions and Products of April.*

**W**E have now abundance of *Radishes*, *Spinage* and *Sallets* with their Furnitures, and other edible Herbs.

We have likewise at the very beginning of the Month, bright curled Cabbage *Lettuces*, if we have taken care to raise any upon *hot Beds*, otherwise we have none, for the Winter *Lettuces* are not, as yet, cabbaged.

Also at the very beginning of the Month we have some *Strawberries* by the extraordinary help of our

*hot*



*hot Beds*, and *Glass Frames*, if we have had the Will, or convenience to make use of them.

Also *Asparagus* produced naturally and without Artifice.

Likewise an infinite number of Flowers, as *Anemones*, *Ranunculus's* or *Crow foots*, *Imperials*, *Narcissus* of *Constantinople*, *English Narcissus*, and *Algier's Narcissus*, white *Narcissus*, *Prim-Roses*, *Violets*, *Hepatica's*, both red and pale blue, and about the end of the Month we have fair *Tulips*.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in April.*

IN the Month of *April*, we are not to find any thing new to be done in our *Kitchen-Gardens*, unless it be an Augmentation of *hot Beds* for *Musk-Melons* and *Cucumbers*. The Earth in them should now be covered almost all over with a new decoration of Infant Plants; Here we should see *Artichokes* rising as 'twere from the dead, and there *Asparagus* piercing the Ground in a thousand places; here we should with pleasure observe the *Cabbage Lettuce* wind up it self into round Balls, and here that a multitude of Green Herbs, and *Legumes*, so different in colour, and various in their shapes; *Jacinth*, the *Tulip*, the *Anemone*, the *Ranunculus*, and so many other Flowers,

---

*Works to be done in May,*

IN the Month of *May*, it is that the Mother of Vegetation seems in earnest to display and exert all the force she is Mistress of, in order to the maintain-



ng her self in that flourishing Estate during the whole Months of *June* and *July* following, at this time covering the Walls with new *Branches*, plumping the *Fruit*, and covering the *Earth* with a lovely and charming verdure, &c. And now our *Gard'ners* have great need to be upon their Guards, to prevent their Gardens falling into disorder, because 'tis most sure, that if they be not now extremely careful and Laborious, there is no disaster but they may expect; pernicious *Weeds* will in little time choak up all their good *Seeds*, their *Walks* and *Alleys* will be overgrown, and their *Trees* will fall into the greatest Confusion, for which reasons it will highly concern them to be extremely watchful and diligent to weed, manure, cleanse, to take off all superfluous *Leaves* and *Sprigs*, and to nail up *Wall Trees*, by which means it will be in their Power to acquire the desirable Commendation of having adorned and set out their Gardens with all the lustre and excellency which they ought to have.

*Green Peas*, that were sown in Banks or Borders in *October*, do begin to recompence our Pains, and to blossom at the coming in of this Month: About the seventh or eighth day of this Month, we should plant our *Collyflowers*, *Milan Cabbages*, *Capucin Capers*, or *Nasturces*, *Beet Chards*, &c. If we plant them sooner, they commonly run to Seed, which is to be avoided; and in fine for those things, we ought not to pass the fifteenth day, nor likewise for the sowing *Winter Cabbages*. We now make all the haste we can, to make an end of dis-eying or slipping our *Artichokes* which are vigorous, and seem to have need of being discharged and thin, and make an end of planting new ones. The *Eyes* or *Sucker-slips* are good enough, provided they be pretty thick and white, though they have no root at their heel or foot, and we may be sure to have very fine *Fruit* from them in *Autumn*, and in truth it were to be wished, they would



would yield none sooner, because those produced before that time, are commonly pitiful, starvling, and as 'twere abortive Fruits. Yet 'tis not enough to plant only some good thick young slip-suckers, but we must likewise plant some midling ones, especially in some well shelter'd place, only to fortifie themselves there during the rest of the Year, that they may be able to yield as their first *Artichokes*, next *Spring*; those which have born in *Autumn*, not making such swift advances as these other. Next we are to plant our *Beet Chards* almost at the same time, which are well placed, if planted in the middle of the *Artichokes*, that is, one *Beet* plant between two *Artichokes*, so that there may be some in one Rank, and none in the other, for there must be room enough left free, to go upon to water, weed, manure, gather, and to cover them too, when need shall require.

We also at the same time rank our *Fig-Trees* in the place allotted for the *Fig Plantation*, that we may have them in the disposition we desire. They begin then to put forth their Leaves and Shoots, and at length their Fruit begins to plump at the full *Moon*.

Towards the end of the Month, we begin with diligence and expedition, to nail up the new shoots of *Wall-Trees*, if they be strong enough to suffer it: And it is convenient to have finish'd this work at the beginning of *June*, because at the end of that Month we must begin the second nailing of the first Shoots, and the first of those which were never yet nail'd.

If there be any *Trees* designed to mount upright we must accordingly order for that purpose, the Branch that seems most proper for it.

We sow a great deal of *Genoa Lettuce*, and we re-plant some of them, and of the other *Lettuces* also.

We Likewise trim *Pear-Trees*, either to take off the false Shoots if any appear, which is done by plucking them quite away when they make a confusion, or even



such others which though they be good, yet because they might produce that confusion which is so much to be avoided in a *Tree*, must therefore be taken off, for the better fortifying of those that are to make the figure of that *Tree*.

Sow *Endive*, that you may have some good, at the end of *July*, which may be whitened in the same place where it first grew, without removing if it be sown thin, and well watered during the whole Month. Take now also the advantage of some rainy Weather, to plant in their designed places, your annual Flowers some of them seldom failing to come to good there; likewise take the advantage of the same time, to fill up with *Basketed*, or *Circomposed Trees*, in the places of those that are dead, or that thwart your expectations, or that give no very good hopes of their thriving. It is necessary to water these *Trees* two or three times during the rest of the *Summer*.

Also still plant *Beet Chards*, choosing for that purpose the brightest of those that are of the growth of the last sown *Seeds*, as being both fairer and better than those which are green.

Continue your *Nurserie*, of *Strawberrie Plants* 'till the end of this Month, at which time you may perfectly distinguish the good ones by their *Stems*, or upright *Shoots*.

Also continue to tie up those *Lettuces* that do not *Cabbage* as they should.

Sow no more *Lettuces*, except *Genua Lettuces*, after the middle of *May*, because all the rest but only this last sort are too apt to run to Seed.

Replant *Musk-Melons* and *Cucumbers* in the naked Earth, in little Holes or Trenches filled with *Mould*; also plant *Pumpions* or *Citruls* in the like holes, at the distance of three *Toises*, or *Fathoms*, they should be such as have been raised on *Hot Beds*, and therefore to make them take Root again the sooner, cover them with something for five or six days, unless it rain, the great heat



heat of the Sun, otherwise being apt to make them wither, and sometimes to kill them quire.

Continue to sow a few *Peas*, which must be of the biggest sort : and if you think good, pull off some of the Branches of the others that are over vigorous, after they are well cleared of Weeds : *Peas* that are dis-branched, bearing a more plentiful crop than others.

Bring out your *Orange-Trees* at the first quarter of this Months *Moon*, if the Weather begin to be secure from the assaults of the *Frost*.

Trim your *Jasmins* when you bring them out, cutting off all their Branches to the length of half an Inch.

At the end of this Month, begin to clip for the first time, your Palisades, or Pole-Hedges of *Box*, *Filari's*, *Yew*, and *Especia's*.

Above all things, care must be taken to water all your *Plants* largely, or else they will roast and scorch, whereas by the help of seasonable waterings, you may visibly perceive them thrive. Also now water new planted *Trees*, and for that purpose make a hollow Circle of four or five Inches deep, round about the extremitie of the Roots ; and pour into it some Pitchers of Water, and when 'tis soak'd in, either throw back the *Earth* into the Circle, or cover it with dry *Dung*, or *Litter*, in order to renew your watering several other times, 'till the *Trees* have taken fast root again, after which, fill it with *Earth* again.

You may begin to replant your *Purslain* for seeding towards the end of the Month.

Continue to trim *Musk Melons*, but replant no more of them after the middle of *May*.

But still continue to plant *Cucumbers*.

About the end of the Month, begin to plant *Celery*, and you may use two ways of planting it, viz. either in *Cold Beds* hollowed into the Ground, as you



do *Asparagus*, planting three ranks of them in every *Bed*, and placing both the Ranks and the *Cellery* Plants at about a Foot distance one from another, and that is the best way for them when they are a little bigger than ordinary, that so you may be able to raise the Earth about them afterwards, with that which was taken out of the Furrows, and which was thrown upon the next *Cold Beds*, or else replant them on plain Ground at the same distance as before, and at the end of *Autumn*, binding them first with two or three Bands; these are raised in Tufts, that you may replant them as high as you can to one another, that so they may be the more easily cover'd with long dry Dung, and the better whitened and defended from the *Frosts*.

Towards the end of the Month begin to tie your *Vines* to their Props, and to nail up such stocks of them, as are planted by *Walls*, after you have first clear'd them of all their feeble, unprofitable, and unfruitful Shoots and Sprigs.

Likewise plant single *Anemonies*, which flower a Month after, and you may have planted some every Month since the last preceding *August*, they blowing and flowering in the same manner, if not hinder'd by an extreme cold Season,

At the very beginning of the Month, or at least as soon as ever you can, pick off and thin your *Apricots* when there are too many of them, never leaving two close together, that so those you leave on may grow the bigger; and at the end of the same Month, you may pick off and thin your *Peaches* and *Pears*, if they be big enough, and there be too many of them. About that time also or at the beginning of the ensuing Month, the first bright *Cabbages* are to be sown for *Autumn* and *Winter*, the biggest of them which are replanted in *July*, being to be eaten in *Autumn*, and the less vigorous, which are replanted



in *September* and *October*, being to serve for our *Winter Provisions*.

Continue to sow a few *Radishes* among other Seeds, as you should have also done in the two last preceding Months.

If your *Garden* be situated in a sandy and dry Ground endeavour by the help of some little Dykes or Gutters to carry off all the water that falls sometimes in hasty Storms to those places that are manured, that none of it may be unprofitably wasted in the Walks or Allies, and if they be situated in Ground that is too strong, fat and moist, drain it away from those Grounds that are incommoded by it, by conveying it into Walks or Allies, to spend it self there, or shooting it off into Stone Gutters that carry it out of the Garden ; for which purpose you must raise your Ground into arch'd ridges.

During all this Month, it is good to lay yellow stock *Gilliflowers*, by planting *Cuttings* of them, wherever you have a mind, or by laying their *Branches* that still grow to their *Plants*.

You should likewise replant before the end of *May* some green curled and *Aubervilliers Lettuce*, that you may have some all the Month of *June*, together with the *Chicons*, and *Imperial Long-Lettuce*.

You must also at this time endeavour to destroy the thick white Worms, which now spoil the *Strawberries* and *Cabbage Lettuce*, and take away the green *Caterpillars*, which quite eat up the Leaves of the *Curran* and *Gooseberry bushes*, and so spoil their Fruit.

At the end of *May*, you should also thin those Roots that grow too thick, and replant those you have plucked up in another place, as *Beet raves* or *Red Beet-Roots*, , *Parsnip*, &c.



*Provisions and Products of May.*

**I**T is now the time of the flourishing reign of all Verdures and green things, and of *Sallett, Radishes, Asparagus,* and *Cucumbers* as to their plenty and abundance. *Peas* and *Strawberries* now begin to come in, and you may and ought to have of those sorts of *Long Lettuces* call'd *Alsanges*, and white *Cbicons*, provided you have had timely care to raise some upon Hot Beds and early to transplant them, either in other Hot Beds, or else in the naked Earth, in some well exposed place.

You have also an infinity of all sorts of Flowers, *Tulips, Stock Gilliflowers* of all colours, *Prim roses* both deep blue and pale blue, *Musaris, Daiesies, Flames,* *Spring Honey-Suckles, Roses of Guelbres,* single *Anemonies, &c.*

Likewise both single and double *Narcissus's*, and *Peonies* both of the *Flesh* or *Carnation*, and of the very red colour.

Now you begin to have some *Spring Larks Heels.*

You may have the Flower of the *Trifolium Arboreum*, or *yellow Trefoil*, growing on a Shrub, and both the Common and *Persian Liac, Mary golds,* and *Sedums*, otherwise called *Palmaria*, and *Musked white stock Gilliflowers*, both single, and double, that is to say, the *Julians*. As likewise *Columbines, Veronica's,* or *Fluellins*, plumed or panached *Jacinth,* yellow *Martagons* with their *Flame* coloured Pendant, *Spanish Carnations, &c.*



*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Month of May.*

WHEN May comes in we have no longer occasion to demand why such and such spots of Ground are yet bare, *Spanish Cardons*, *Collyflowers*, *Chard beets*, *Cellery*, and even *Artichoaks*, and *Cabbage Lettuces*, which were not to appear so early, and for which those places were design'd, coming to occupy them at the latter end of *April*, or beginning of this Month, and *Purslain* which because of the delicateness of its temper, had 'till now been retain'd in the Seed Closet, comes out at this time to gild the Earth, and to offer it self in abundance to pleasure its Master. The *Strawberries* beginning to come now to Maturity, open and lead the way to the other *Red Fruits*, which are immediately to follow after them: *Green Peas* are ready to satisfy the longing Appetite of the lickerish Palate: There is hardly any but *Spinage*, and *Maches*, that stave off the performance of their duty 'till *August* and *September*, for we may now see some little beginnings even of *Endive*, and if *Hasting* or *Early Cherries* were the first Fruit that appeared in this Month of *May*, the *Hasting Apricots*, the little *Muscat Pears*, and the *Avant Peaches*, or *Forward Peaches*, will not leave them long alone to enjoy the glory of being the sole Riches and Ornaments of our Gardens.



*Works to be done in June.*

**I**N *June*, plant *Leeks* in Holes or Trenches, six full Inches deep, at half a Foot's distance one from the other.

Continue to sow *Endive*, and *Genoa Lettuce*, that you may be furnisht with some to replant upon occasion all the rest of the Summer.

Replant *Beet Chards* in order to have them good to eat in *Autumn*, they are best placed in the void space remaining between the *Artichoke* Ranks, they must be set at the distance of a Foot and a half one from the other.

Take great care to extirpate all the Weeds which now grow up in abundance, and that particularly before they run to Seed, to prevent their multiplying, which they are apt to do too much of themselves, without sowing.

Now without delay, clip all your *Palisade's*, and edgings of *Box*, so that they may be all furnisht at farthest at *Mid Summer*, and have time to shoot out again before *Autumn*; now you must liberally water all Seeds sown in your *Kitchen Gardens*.

Water plentifully, every day the *Cucumbers* upon *Hot Beds*, and *Musk-melons* moderately two or three times a week, allowing half a Pitcher full of water to each Plant.

From the middle of *June* begin to graff by *Inoculation*, your *Stone-Fruit Trees*, and especially *Cherries* upon great *Trees*, upon Wood of two Years growth, which are cut off three or four Inches from the place where the *Scutcheon* is to be placed. The best time for this is always before the *Solstice*.

Gross Soils must be often stirred and manured, that they may not have time to grow hard, and chap, commonly we bestow an universal manuring or stirring



ring up the Ground upon all our *Gardens* in this Season, and the best time to stir dry Grounds in, is either a little before, or after Rain, or even whilst it rains, that the water may more swiftly penetrate the bottom, before the great heat comes to turn it into vapours, and for strong and moist Soils, we must wait for hot and dry weather, to dry and heat them, before we move them; careful *Gard'ners* make Dykes to convey the gluts of Water that fall about this time in hasty Storms, a cross their Squares, especially if their Ground be light; but on the contrary, if it be too strong, they drain the water out of the Squares, as I have said already, when I was speaking of the works of May.

Carefully cultivate your *Orange-Trees*, according to the method prescribed in the Treatise composed purposely on that Subject.

Take up *Tulip* Roots out of the Ground at the end of this Month, their Leaves being then withered.

Disbranch *Harico's* or *French Beans*, and towards the end of this Month, sow *Peas* to have them fit to eat in *September*.

### *Provisions and Products of June.*

**Y**OU have now abundance of all sorts of red Fruits, as *Strawberries*, *Currans*, *Gooseberries*, *Cherries* and *Bigarro's* or *Heart-Cherries*, &c,

Some *Pears*, and particularly little *Muscats*.

Abundance of *Artichokes* and *Beet-Chards*.

Great store of *Peas*, and of *Garden*, and *French Beans*.

Great store of *Mushrooms* and *Cucumbers*.

Also great plenty of fine, or sweet and strong scented, or Aromatick Herbs, viz. *Time*, *Savory*, *Hyssop*, *Lavender*, &c. And also of Medicinal Herbs.

*Roman*



*Roman Lettuces*, and white *Alsange Lettuces*, and abundance of *Genua Lettuces*, and *Purflain*.

Abundance of Flowers, as well to garnish Dishes, as to set out flower Pots, viz. Double Poppies of all colours, white, pale, violet, flesh colour'd, or Carnation, flame coloured, purple, violet colour'd, and panached or striped yellow, and violet *Pansies*, *Larks Heels*, *Julians*, *Fraxilenes*, or *Fraxinellas*, or *Bastard Dittanies*, *Roses*, of all sorts, viz. double, panached or striped, double *Eglantines*, or *Dog-roses*, *Roses* of *Guedres*, *Cinnamon Roses*, white *Lillies*, yellow *Lilliet*, *Matricaria's*, or *Feather fews*, *Asphodel* or *Asphondel Lillies*, *Calves snouts*, *Virga Aurea*, or *Golden Rod*, of *Fasse Flowers* of two colours, *Gladiolus's*, *Veronica's*, or *Fluellines*, *Spanish Carnations*, *Mignards*, *Verbascums*, or *Mullein Flowers*, double *Coqueriers*.

*Tblaspi*, or *Treacle Mustard* of two sorts, the great and little *Muscipua's Valerians*, *Touse Bonnes*, or *Algoods*, or good *Haries*, *Poets Gilliflowers*, both the white and *Carnations*, yellow *Willow Herbs*, or *Loose-strifes*, *Lady-Gloves*; and towards the middle of June, *Roman Chervil*, *Orange Flowers*, *Tuberoses*, single *Anemontes*, *Mignardises*, and *Marine* or *Sea Violets*.

And you begin to see some *Cabbages*.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Month of June.*

THE parching heat of the Month of June hinders us indeed from going into our Garden in the heat of the day, but what charms are there not, in going to visit it Morning and Evening, when the cool breathings of a gentle Zephyr reign there with

Sove-



Sovereign sway? Now is the Season when we may visibly perceive with our Eyes, all things to grow and thrive, and see a Branch that five or six days before, was not above a foot long, now shot out to three or four. *Leeks* are now planted, and squares covered with green Herbs, complete the Tapestry that adorns the Ground; the *Vine Flowers* make an end of thoroughly embalming the Air, which was already over perfum'd with the grateful odour of the *Strawberries*.

We gather in all parts, and at the same time with profusion distribute all those *Plants* that are become so beautiful and accomplished; we fill up the places again we had disfurnish'd, so that there hardly ever remains any part void; and nature now affects no better divertisement than to be amazing us with Miracles of fertility, so well assisted as she is, by the kindly warmth of the Father of Light; only she needs now and then the Auxiliary refreshment of convenient moisture, moisture which the propitious Clouds sometimes abundantly pour down, but which sometimes the *Gard'ners* Industry too is fain to supply her with in the time of need. The *Cold Beds* and *Counterborders* levelled and adjusted even to a Line, and well furnish'd with *Cabbage Lettuces*; the forest of *Artichokes* of different colours which now appears, is not less admirable than the *Palisades* and *Pole Hedges* so exquisitely well extended.

### *Works to be done in July.*

IN this Month, many sorts of Seeds are gathered, and *Endive* is sown for the provision of *Autumn* and *Winter*. We also sow *Royal Lettuce* to have it good for use at the end of *Autumn*.

Still continue to sow some *Cibaules* and white *Beets* for *Autumn*, and some few *Radishes* in cool places, of such



such as are extremely well water'd, to have them fit to eat at the beginning of *August*.

If the Season be very dry, begin at the latter end of the Month, to graff by inoculation of a Dormant Bud, upon *Quince-Trees*, and *Plum Trees*.

Begin to replant *White* or *Bright Cabbages* for the end of *Autumn*, and the beginning of *Winter*.

Sow more *Lettuce Royal*.

Sow for the last time, your *Square Peas* in the middle of *July*, that you may have some to spend in *October*.

In this Month particularly, *Peach-Trees* produce several shoots. About the middle of *July*, begin to lay your *Clove Gillyflowers* and *Carnations*, if their Branches be strong enough to bear it, otherwise you stay 'till *August*, or the middle of *September*,

### *Provisions and Products of July.*

**V**WE have in this Month abundance of *Artichokes*, *Cherries*, *Griots*, or *Agriots*, and *Biggarro's* or *Heart Cherries*.

Plenty of *Strawberries*, *Peas* and *Beans*.

Great store of *Cabbages*, *Musk-melons*, *Cucumbers*, and all sorts of *Sallets*.

Some white *Endive*, and some *Radishes*.

Some *Plums*, viz. the yellow *Plum*, and the *Ceriset*, or little *Cherry-Plum*.

Some Summer *Calvil-apples*.

A great many *Pears*, viz. *Maudlin Pears*, *Cuisse Madams*, or *Lady Thighs*, great *Blanquets*, or great *White Pears*, *Orange green Pears*, &c.

About the middle or latter end of *July*, we have the first *Figs*.

Also we have *Verjuice*,

As for *Flowers*, we have still a great many, and the most part of them I have mention'd in the preceding Month.

W<sup>e</sup>



We have besides them, *Geranium Necteolens*, or Night smelling *Crane bill*, *Rue* with its Olive-colour'd Flower, *Jerusalem Cresses*, both single and double, *Kidney-Beans*, of a flame colour, which last till November, *Cyanus*, or *Corn Flowers*, both white, and pale, violet, *Capucins*, or *Nasturces*, *Camomils*, and towards the middle of *July*, *Clove gilliflowers* and *Carnations* begin to come in.

---

*Works to be done in August.*

**F**ROM the very middle of *August*, you must begin to sow *Spinage* to be ready about the middle of *September*, and *Mâches* for *Winter Sallets*, and *Shell Lettuces*, to have Provision of *Cabbage Lettuces*; at the end of *Autumn*, and during the *Winter Season*.

Replant *Strawberry Plants* in their designed Places which you have raised in Tufts.

At the latter end of the Month, sow some *Cabbage* in some good *Exposition*, to remove into a *Nursery*, in some other well sheltered place, where they are to pass the *Winter*, in order to be replanted in their designed places in the following *Spring*.

Also sow all the Month long some *Cabbage* in some good *Exposition*, as well to replant at the end of *September* or beginning of *October*, in the places where they are to remain under some good shelter, as to have some ready hardned against the cold, to replant again after *Winter*, either in the naked Earth in the Month of *March*, or upon *hot Beds*, at the very beginning of *February*, if the *Winter* be very cold, they must be covered with long Litter.

Sow *Onions* to have good ones the next year, at the very beginning of *July*, which should be replanted in *March* next following.



We replant a great deal of *Endive* at a large foot distance between Plant and Plant, as also *Royal* and *Perpignan Lettuces*, which are very good in *Autumn* and *Winter*.

Sow *Mâches* for *Lent*.

Continue to nail up your *Wall-Trees*, and by little and little, to uncover those *Fruits*, which you would have tinged with much *Red*, as *Peaches*, *Api-Apples*, &c.

Tye up your *Endive* with one, two, or with three bands if it be very high, but the upermost Band must be always looser than the rest, otherwise the *Lettuce* will burst in the sides whilst it is whitening.

At the middle of *August* we begin to cover with compost, the *Sorrel* that was cut very close to recruit its vigour, a good Inch thickness of Compost is enough to strew all over it, because they would be apt to rot if you should use more to them.

Pluck off the runners of *Strawberry Plants*, to preserve their old Stocks in the greater vigour, and when their Fruit is past, which is about the end of *July*, or the beginning of *August*, cut away all the old Stems, and old Leaves, that they may produce new ones.

Still continue sowing of *Spinage*, for the beginning of *Winter*.

Take your *Onions* out of the Ground as soon as their Stems begin to dry, and let them lie ten or twelve days a drying in the Air, before you lay them up in your *Garbary*, or some other dry place, or else bind them up in Ropes, because otherwise they would ferment and rot, if they were laid up before they were dry.

Gather your *Shalot* at the very beginning of the Month, and draw your *Garlick* out of the Ground.



At the end of *August* the *Florists* set into the Earth their *Jacinths*, fair *Anemonies* and *Ranunculus's* or *Crow-foots*, *Funquils*, *Totus Albus's* and *Imperials*.

At the beginning of this Month, tread down the stems of *Onions*, and the Leaves of *Beet-raves*, or *Red Beet Roots*, *Carrits*, *Parships*, &c. or else we take off their Leaves quite, to make their Roots grow the bigger in the Ground by hindring their Sap from spending it self above Ground.

### *Provisions and Products of August.*

**V**WE have at this time abundance of Summer *Pears*, and of *Plums*, and of some sort of *Peaches*, as *Maudlin*, *Minion* and *Bourdin Peaches*, &c.

As also of white *Endive*.

Plenty of *Figs*.

Great store of *Musk-melons* and *Cucumbers*.

We have also some *Citruls* or *Pumpions*.

We continue still to have all sorts of green *Herbs*, all *Kitchen-Roots*, and *Onions*, *Garlick* and *Shalots*, As also

Abundance of *Lark-Heels*, *Indian Roses*, and *Indian Gilliflowers*, or *French Marigolds*, great store of *Musked Roses*, *Monthly Roses*, *Jasmin*, *Latter Larks-Heels*, *Tuber-roses*, *Matricaria's*, and greater or lesser *Thlasfs's* and besides them, *Sun-flowers*, *Asters*, &c.



*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Months of July and August.*

**I**N these two Months of *July* and *August*, *Kitchen-Gardens* should be so richly and happily endowed with whatsoever their condition is capable of, that we may find plenty of all things there both to satisfy the pleasures of the present, and provide for the necessities of the future time, so that let us require of them what we please, they may be as ready to answer, as we to make our Demands.

As for example, have we a mind to all or any sorts of *Herbs*, *Roots*, *Sallets*, *Perfumes*, &c. They will immediately furnish us with them; have we a fancy to any *Musk-Melons*? we may smell them a great way off and need but follow our noses, stoop and gather them; Would we have any *Cucumbers*, flat *Pumpions*, or other *Pumpions* or *Citruls*, *Mushrooms*, &c. They will present us with store of them; Do our Appetites farther crave after *Artichokes*, or *Pears*, *Plums*, *Figs*, &c. we may be sure to find there a considerable quantity of all those things; or, Have we a mind likewise to have any Sweet and Aromatical Herbs, as *Time*, *Sage*, *Savory*, &c. or any relishing Plants, as *Garlick*, *Onions*, *Ciboules*, *Leeks*, *Recamboles*, or *Spanish Garlick*, &c. There we need not fear to be supplied. Nay, the four or five next proceeding Months seem only to have laboured for these two last, so that we may expect all should go well in our *Gardens* in this season, if we be provided with a good *Gard'ner*, and which above all thing, has the skill to chuse well, and Judgment enough to know how and when to gather. The *Carnations* now are no small Ornaments to our *Gardens* and the *Florists* now are  
busie



busie in couching their Layers, forget not to take their *Bulbous Roots* out of the Earth, to lay them up in places of shelter and security.

---

*Works to be done in September.*

**C**ontinue still the works of the preceding Month.

Make *hot Beds* for *Mushrooms*.

Replant a great deal of *Endive*, but closer together now than in the foregoing Months, that is, place them at half a foot's distance one from the other, because now their *Tufts* grow not so large as before.

They must be replanted in almost all the spare places from the very beginning of the Months till the fifteenth or twentieth day. At the latter end of the Month, sow *Spinage* the third time, which will be good in *Lent*, and even until *June* following.

During this whole Month you must continue to remove *Straw-berry* Plants out of your *Nurseries*, to reimplace those tufts which are dead in your *Beds*, you must immediately water them, as you must do all Plants which are set a-new.

Set some in Pots towards the twentieth day, if you intend to force any in the *Winter*.

Tie up first with *Osier Withs*, and afterwards towards the fifteenth of the Month, carefully wrap up with long Litter, or new Straw, some *Spanish Cardons*, and *Artichoke* Plants, to have them whitened or Blanched about fifteen or twenty days after; But great care must be taken in wrapping them up, to keep them perfectly upright, otherwise they will overfer, and snap in sunder on one side; and to hinder the winds from lying them on our side too, they must



be fenced with a *Bank* of *Earth* of about a full foot high.

From the fifteenth of the Month to the end, and till the middle of *October*, replant *shell Lettuces* in some well sheltered place, and especially near the foot of some *Southern* and *Eastern Wall*, that you may have some of them *Cabbage* for spending in *Lent*, and during the whole Months of *April* and *May*.

Bind up your *Cellery* with one or two hands below, and then raise a *Butt* or *Bank* about it either with very dry long *Dung*, or with very dry *Earth* to whiten it; but we must have a care not to tie it up but in very dry *Weather*, the same caution must be observed in all *Plants* that are to be tied, after which, cut off the extremity of the *Leaves* to prevent the sap from ascending and spending it self to no purpose, by which means it is kept down in the *Buried Plant*, and makes it grow thick.

Sow *Mâches* for *Lent*, and for *Reponces*, it is not worth the while to sow them in a *Garden*, because there are enough of them in the *Spring-Time*, to be found in the *Corn Fields* and by the hedge-sides.

Sow *Poppies* and *Larks-Heels* in *Flower-Gardens*, to have them Flower in *June* and *July*, before them that are sown in *March*.

### *Provisions and Products of September*

**W**E have abundance of *Violet Peaches*, *Admirables*, *Purple*, *Persick Peaches*, &c,

Great store of *Russet*, or *Russet Pears*, melting *Pears* of *Brest*, some *Butter-Pears*, &c.

Plenty of *Endive*, and of *Succory*, and of *Cabbages*.

Towards the end of the Month begin to come in abundance of second *Figs*.

At the latter end of the Month we have likewise some *Spanish Caordns* some *Artichoke Chards*, some *Cellery*



*Cellery Plants*, a great many *Citruls*, or *Pumpions*, store of *Artichokes*, and some *Musk-melons* still.

Some *Colly-flowers*.

We begin to have some good *Muscat Grapes*,  
And some *Oranges*.

As to *Flowers* we have now great store of *Tuberoses*, *Asters*, or *Oculus Christi's*, of *Flower gentles*, *Velvet Flowers*, or *Amaranthus*, of *Indian Gilliflowers*, or *French Marigolds*, of *Indian Roses*, *Marvels of Peru*, *Tril-ar Volubilis*, *Lawrel*, or *Bay Roses*, both white and *Carnation*, *Ultramarine Roses*, *Ordinary Stock-Gilliflowers*, both of the white and violet Sorts, &c. *Ciclaments*, and some *Orange-Flowers*, with single *Anemonies*.

### *Works to be done in October.*

**C**ONTINUE the same Works as in the preceding Month, except *Graffing*, the Season for which is now past but particularly you must be busie in preparing *Cellery* and *Cardons*, plant a great many *Winter Lettuces*, and some too upon old *Hot-Beds*, to force them so as to have them good for our eating about *Martinmas*.

Plant *Winter Cabbages* on those *Stocks*, lay aside all the *Mold* or made *Earth*, to use again when you make new *Hot Beds*, and carry away the rottenest *Dung* to those *Grounds* that are to be dunged.

About the middle of *October*, carry back into their Houses your *Orange-Trees*, *Tuberoses*, and *Jasmins*, placing them there with some agreeable Symmetry, leaving the *Windows* open in the day, so long as it does not freeze, but keeping them always carefully shut at *Night*, till at last we shut them up quite and carefully dam up both them and the *Doors*



Begin to *Plant* all sorts of *Trees* as soon as their *Leaves* are fallen.

Continue still to *Plant* a great many *Winter Lettuces* in some well shelter'd Place, and on some good *Borders*, at six or seven Inches distance one from the other, there usually perishes enough of them to prevent our Complaints of their growing too thick together.

Towards the middle of *October*, the *Florists* *Plant* their *Tulips*, and all other *Bulbous Roots* not yet set into the *Ground*.

In this Month you must perform your last manuring and turning up of strong, heavy, and moist *Grounds*, as well to destroy the *Weeds*, and giving an Air of neatness and agreeableness to our *Gardens* in this Season, when the Country is more visited than at any other time, as to make that sort of *Ground* timely contract a kind of Crust, that may hinder the *Winter* waters from so easily penetrating them, and on the contrary, may shoot them off down to places of a lower Situation.

It is convenient to begin to sow now in some well sheltered place towards the *South* or *East*, or else upon *Hot Beds*, those *Sallets*, &c. that are to be made use of in *Winter*, or early in the *Spring*: upon Condition that in due time they be well covered when sown, against the Cold.

### *Provisions and Products of October.*

**W**E have abundance of second *Figs*.

Plenty of *Muscat* and *Chassela's Grapes*.

Great store of *Butter Pears*, *Doyennes*, *Bergamots*, *Vine-Pears*, *Lansacs*, *Crasans*, and *Messier-Johns*.

Abundance of *Endive* and *Succory*, *Cardons*, *Ariseboke Chards*, *Mushrooms*, and *Cucumbers*, and still some



some Musk-melons too, if there have been no hard Frosts.

We have all manner of green *Pot-Herbs*, *Sorrel*, *Beets*, *Chervil*, *Parfly*, and *Cibouls*, *Roots*, *Garlick*, *Onions*, and *Shalots*.

Great store of *Peaches*, viz. *Admirables*, *Nivets*, *White Andillies*, *Latter Violet Peaches*, *Yellow latter Peaches*, *Rambouillet*, and *Cadillac Pavies*, *Yellow Pavies*, and *Red Pavies*.

*Spinage* and latter *Peas*.

For *Flowers* we have single *Anemonies*, *Tuberoses*, *Laurel*, *Time Flowers*, *Velvet Flowers*, *Jasmins*, *Lawrel-Roses*, *Ciclamens*, &c.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Month of September and October.*

IF in *July* and *August* our *Kitchen-Gardens* have signa-  
lized themselves by their *Musk-Melons*, *Cucumbers*,  
*Legumes*, and even by their *Plums*, their first *Figs*,  
and some few *Pears*, &c. we shall see that in the Months  
of *September* and *October* which succeed them, they will  
shew themselves exceedingly *Glorious* in the matter of  
*Fruits* which will be by the abundance of *Peaches*, *Mus-*  
*cat*, and *Chassela's Grapes*, of second *Figs*, and of *Rus-*  
*selet*, *Butter*, *Verte Longue*, or *Long Green*, and *Berga-*  
*mot Pears*, &c. This being undoubtedly the true  
Season for *Fruits*, and the time in the whole year  
wherein the *Country* is most frequented.

The moderate temper of the *Air* which now keeps  
an agreeable Medium between the great Heat of the  
*Dog-days* newly past, and the bitter Cold that is to  
bring on *Winter*; Invites out the inhabitants of the  
*Cities*, to make a sally out to breath the free *Air* of  
the



the Country, and to assist at gathering of *Fruits*: And the *Gardens* ought now to surpass in an infinite quantity all they were accustomed to produce in other Months, nor is it fit now to suffer one speck of Ground to lie idle. For if any square has been newly disfurrowed, as for example, a *Garleek*, *Onion*, or *Shalloe Square*, &c. you should take care to fill it up presently again with *Spinage*, *Mâches*, *Chervil*, *Ciboules*, &c. The same course is to be taken with some *Beds* of *Summer Lettuces*, which should be succeeded by a great number of *Endive* Plants, *Winter Lettuces*, &c. The *Bulbous Roots* of *Flowers* must now be put into the Earth again, to begin to take such new *Root* as may defend them against the rigours of the approaching *Winter*.

---

### *Works to be done in November.*

IN this Month begin to force an *Artificial Spring* by the means of your *Hot Beds*, upon which we sow little *Sallets*, viz. *Small Lettuce* to cut, *Chervil*, *Cresses*, &c. Plant *Lettuce* to *Cabbage*, under *Bells* or *Glass Frames*, and replant upon them, *Mint*, *Tarragon*, and *Balm Plants*, and some *Sorrel*, wild *Endive* or *Succory*, and *Macedonian Parsly*, and *Burnet*, and if the weather still continue pretty fair, make an end of planting *Lettuces* in places of good shelter,

This is particularly the Month of the greatest Work and Labour of all, in order to the avoiding the inconvenience of wanting *Garden necessaries*, which is no ordinary Companion in this dead Season, for in earnest the *Cold* fails not to make great Havock in the *Gardens* of the lazy; and therefore at the very beginning of the Month, how flatteringly fair soever the weather



weather appear, there must be some dry long Dung brought and laid near the *Endive, Artichokes, Chard Beets, Cellery, Leeks, Roots, &c.* that being ready at hand, it may with the more facility in few hours be thrown upon every thing that needs it, to prevent their destruction; and as soon as ever the Cold begins to shew it self, you must begin to cover your *Fig-Trees*.

As soon as the *Frosts* appear, begin to use the long Dung which you have been careful to order to be brought and laid ready in needful places; for example, if it be for *Artichokes*, you may keep them a little elevated towards the North, to serve them instead of a small shelter, till you cover them quite; or else if you be pressed with work to be done elsewhere, you cover presently, always taking care however before you cover them, to cut off all that is withered from them. A little of this Dung serves against the first attacks, but we redouble our coverings as the Cold augments. They which are not provided with that sort of dry Dung, may use instead of it, such dry *Leaves* as are gathered up in the neighbouring *Woods*.

If you have a mind to whiten for *Chards* any of the biggest of those *Artichoke Plants*, tie them below with two or three Bands, and then wrap them about with long dry Dung, or Straw, which you must bind over them again, as is already directed when we were speaking of *Cardons*.

In dry Soils, you must earth up a little our *Artichokes*, which would be pernicious in wet *Grounds*, because it would rot the *Artichoke Plants*.

It is convenient to let the *Artichokes* alone so covered till the full *Moon* of *March* be past, that being commonly very dangerous; and many *Gard'ners* suffer the loss of their *Artichokes*, in being tempted by some fair days in *March*, to take off their coverings quite, and to proceed to manuring them; for if you uncover them, it should be but very little, and you should always have the



the caution, to leave the Dung close by them, to be ready at hand to cover them again, in case the *Frost* returns.

At the very beginning of the Month, before the *Frosts* be come, make an end of tying up your *Endive* that is big enough to suffer it, and cover it with what you can get: you also cover your other *Endive* in the same manner, which we could not tie up. It likewise whitens equally well; and it is very convenient, if we have a conservatory, to plant as many as we can of the biggest of them there, in tufts, as we shall further shew hereafter.

Now take the advantage of some fair dry weather, to lay up all you have a mind to keep for your *Winters* provision; and for that effect, take up the Plants in Tufts, with Earth hanging to them, before they be *Frost* bitten, and plant them very close to one another in the *Conservatory*, which for Example are, all *Roots*, as *Carrots*, *Parsnips*, and *Beet-raves*, or *Red Beet-Roots*, and *Artichocks*, which have Fruit. The *Green* ones are more proper for this purpose than the *Violet* ones, which are more tender and less able to endure the *Frost*, and more apt to putrifie in that part next their stem, than the other which are more rustical and hardy. And also *Spanish Cardons*, *Collyflowers*, and *Endive* or *Succory*, as well the *White*, as the *Wild* sort, and even *Leeks* and *Cellery*, though both these last will keep well enough in the naked *Earth*, when they are well covered: But here it is to be noted, that *Cellery* when once whitened must be eaten presently, otherwise it would rot; And you must be careful to raise some of it late, that it may remain small in the *Earth*, without being very much covered, which serves for the latter end of *February* and the Month of *March*.

Those Persons who live near the *Woods*, will do well to gather up the leaves there, not only to make use of for coverings, as I have said, but likewise to lay



lay them to rot in some hole, the soil of them being very good, and especially to make use of for *Mold*.

Now open and lay bare the *Roots* of *Trees* that seem to languish, in order to take from about them the old Soil, cut off as much of their *Roots* as is found in an ill condition, and *Earth* them up again afterwards with good new *Earth*.

Make some *Hot Beds* for *Mushrooms*. The method to make them well, is to choose some spot of new, and as near as can be, light and sandy *Ground*, and dig there a hollow *Bed* of five or six Inches deep, of three or four wide throughout, and of what length you please. The *Dung* must be either of *Horse* or *Mule*, and must be already pretty dry, and such as has been piled up some time: Then make the *Bed* about two foot high, ranking and pressing the *Dung* as close and tight as you can, yet so that it may the better shoot off the waters to the right and left, which if they will pierce through it, would rot the *Dung*; after that, cover the *Bed* to the thickness of two foot more, with the Neighbouring *Earth*, over which again, throw another covering of three or four Inches thick of *Litter*, which in the *Winter* may guard from the great *Cold*, and in the *Summer*, shade from the violent heat the *Mushrooms* which may be expected to shoot up about three or four Months after.

Employ the long dry *Dung* of which you ought to have made provision in the *Summer*, to cover your *Fig Trees*, as well those of the *Wall*, as *Dwarfs*; and for these last, tie all their *Branches* as close together as you can conveniently, with *Osier Withs*, that you may the more easily wrap them about with this covering; and for the *Wall-Trees*, endeavour to leave so many of the higher *Branches* as you can, on the sides, and to tie several of them together to poles or forked sticks that are to serve them for *Props*, and by that means, you cover them with more ease, and



and less charge. Leave on them that covering till the full *Moon* of *March* be past, at which time, only take off part of it, till the full *Moon* of *April* be likewise past. The *Frosts* of these two last Months being dangerous to the young Fruit which then begins to put forth it self, as the *Winter Frosts* are to the Wood which they make to turn all into Pith.

The days being now very short, skilful *Gard'ners* will therefore work by Candle-light till Supper time, either in making of *Straw-Screens* and Coverings, or preparing *Trees* for planting, as soon as the *Frost* permits them, or in deligning, &c.

Put those *Trees* into the *Earth* in *Furrows* which you could not *Plant*, covering up the *Roots* as carefully as if we were *Planting* them in their designed places, without leaving any hollow *Chinks* about their *Roots*, because otherwise the great *Frosts* would spoil them.

You may begin at the latter end of the Month to force such *Asparagus*, as are at least three or four years old, and this forcing is performed, either on the cold *Bed* in the place where they grow, which is the best way, or else upon a *Hot Bed*, if you be minded to remove them. But ordinarily we stay till towards the beginning of the next Month, before we make any *Essays* of that kind, it being in my Opinion, long enough to have of them for four Months together by *Artifice*, till *Nature* be ready to furnish us with more of them for two Months longer by her own sole *Virtue* and *Power*, not but that we might begin to force them at the very beginning of *September* or *October*.

The way of forcing them is, to dig the *Earth* out of a *Path*, to the depth of two Foot, and the breadth of one full foot and a half, if originally the *Path* were but three foot over, because there must at least six or seven good Inches of *Earth* be left next the *Aspara-*

*gus*



*gus* Tufts. The *Path* being thus voided, we fill it up with long hot Dung, very well ramm'd and trodden down, till it be a full foot higher than the Superficies of the *Cold Bed*, at the first making, and after fifteen days, you must stir this Dung over again, mixing some new Dung with it, the better to enable it to communicate sufficient heat to the two adjoining *Cold Beds*, but if it appear too much mortified, so that the *Asparagus* does not shoot up briskly enough, then this recruiting the path-way with fresh Dung and stirring, must be repeated afterwards as often as it shall be necessary, which commonly happens to be once every ten or twelve days. If there fall any great Rains or Snow, that may have too much rotted that Dung, so that it appears not to retain a sufficient heat, then must it be quite taken away, and all new put in its place; for in fine, this *Bed* must always be kept extremely hot; as to the *Cold Bed*, in which the *Plants* are, the *Ground* must be digged up and stirred a little in it, to the depth of about four or five Inches, as soon as the path-way is filled up, for it cannot be done before, because of bringing the Dung to that, (which cannot be done without much trampling on the Soil) which digging being finished, we cover the said *Cold Bed*, with some of the same long Dung, to the thickness of three or four Inches, and at the end of fifteen days, so much time at least being necessary to give activity to those *Asparagus* Tufts, that in this Season are as 'twere dead, or at least benumbed with the cold, we lift up the Dung to see whether the *Asparagus* begin to shoot out or no, and if they do, at every place where they appear, we clap a *Glass Bell*, which we also take great care to cover close with long Dung, and especially a-nights, to prevent the *Frost* from penetrating in the least to the *Asparagus*, which being so extremely tender and delicate as 'tis, would be absolutely spoiled by the least breath of Cold. If in the day time, the Sun shine



shine out a little bright, we must not fail to take off the Dung from the Bells, that the *Asparagus* may be visited by those kind Beams that animate all things, and if besides those Bells, we had likewise *Glass Frames* to clap over them, and so doubly to cover whole *Beds* of *Plants*, that would be still more commodious and more advantageous for bringing to effect this little *Master-piece* of our *Art*. By these helps, the *Asparagus* springing out of the warm *Earth*, and meeting with a warm Air under those *Bells*, grow red and green, and of the same thickness and length as those of the Months of *April* and *May*; nay, and prove a great deal better too, because they have not only been unattack'd by the injuries of the Air, but have attained their perfection in much less time than the others, and I can without vanity affirm, that I was the first that by the inducement of some very plausible Reasons, devised this expedient.

I add here, that a *Bed* of *Asparagus* dextrously forced and well maintained, produces abundantly for a fortnight or three Weeks, and that because the King should not want during the whole Winter, this new Dish as soon as the first *Beds* begin to furnish us, I begin to force as many new ones, and so continue the same course every three Weeks, till the end of *April*, when *Nature* advertises me, that 'tis time to put an end to those Violences I have done Her, and that she is then willing in her Turn, to serve us with some Dishes prepared by her own skill.

You may likewise remove old *Asparagus Plants* out of *Cold Beds* into *Hot ones*, it being true that they spring there, but they never prove so fair as the others, and are attended besides with this inconvenience, that they die there in a very short time.

We force *Sorrel* and *Wild Endive*, or *Succory*, *Macedonian Parsly* or *Alisanders*, &c. in the same manner as we do *Asparagus*, but most commonly it is done

rather



rather upon *Hot Beds*, than on the naked *Earth*, and the Success is very speedy and infallible, and particularly in procuring in one fifteen days time, *Sorrel* that is as fair as that of the Month of *May*.

We should have finished our last manuring of dry *Grounds* the fifteenth day of this Month, as well to render them impenetrable to the Rain and Snowwaters, as to destroy the *Weeds*, and to make our *Gardens* appear something neat and handsome.

To have *Radishes* betimes, that is, towards *Christmas*, or *Candlemas*, we sow them in *Hot Beds* about the middle of *November*, I have already laid down directions for the making of *Hot Beds*, in the works of *February*: That which is particularly to be observed for *Radishes*, is that we must beat down with a board, the *Superficies* of the Mold, to render it a little solid, and to prevent it from rowling into the Holes that are to be made to Sow the *Radishes* in, after which, that the *Bed* may be handsomely Sown, we take a Cord rubbed with *Plaster*, or *Chalk*, or other white matter, and holding it well stretched out between two of us, we mark out with it as many white Lines, at three or four Inches distance one from another, both throughout the whole length and breadth of the *Bed*, as its extent will permit, and then with a round wooden planting stick of a full Inch thick, we make holes all along every Line at the like distance of three or four Inches one from another, and we put only three *Radish* Seeds into every Hole, and if we chance to let fall any more, we pull up all the *Radishes* that come up above the number of three. They which observe not to mark out such Lines, but make their Holes by random-sight only, have their *Beds* not so handsome, and they which make their Holes nearer, and which leave more than three *Radishes* in a Hole, run the hazard of having *Radishes* with a great many Leaves and but little *Root*, There are many Markes



*Gard'ners* whose practice it is, to sow Lines or Rows of *Lettuces* in *February* and *March*, a-cross their *Beds* of *Radishes*, but then the Holes must be made at the distance of seven or eight Inches ; and the *Lettuces* thus sown in Lines, will be gathered and spent before the *Radishes* are fit to gather.

If it freezes very hard we cover the *Hot Beds*, with long Litter, for five or six days ; besides which, for its farther defence against the rigours of the *Winter*, we cover them with *Straw-Screens*, or Coverings, supported upon *Traverse Frames* or *Cradles* composed of Stakes, or other Poles of Wood, placed very near the *Superficies* of the Mold, and we stop the sides close up, and if the *Frost* increase notably, we put a new Load of long Dung over those *Straw-Screens* ; but if it be but moderate, there will need no other covering, the heat of the *Bed* being sufficient to defend the *Plants* ; *Radishes* thus sown come up in five or six days, and if the Holes had not some Air, they would be smoothed and grow dwindling in piercing through the small Straw.

We must not fail at the beginning of this Month, to take up in *Turf*, the *Cellery* which we had planted at a reasonable distance, in the Months of *June* and *July*, in particular *Cold Beds* ; and when we have taken it up, to carry it into the *Conservatory*, or else to re-plant it in some other *Cold Bed*, placing its *Plants* very close together, that they may the more easily be covered.

*Provisions*



*Provisions and Products of November.*

**W**E have still in the beginning of the Month, some Figs, and some latter *Yellow Pavies*.

*Winter Thorn Pears, Bergamots, Marchionesses, Messire Johns, Crasans, Petistons, some Virgoulee Pears, Ambrets, Leschasseries, Amodots, &c.*

*Artichokes.*

Abundance of *Autumnal Calvil Apples*, and some *white Calvils*.

The *Fennelets* or *Fennel Apples*, and *Courpendu's*, or short stalk'd Apples begin also to ripen.

We have *Spinage, Endive* and *Succory*, *Cellery, Lettuces, Sallets*, and *Pot Herbs*, and *Cabbages*, of all sorts, and *Roots* and *Pumpions*.

For *Flowers* we have almost the same as in the foregoing Month, as also some beginnings of *Thlaspi semper virens*, or ever green *Thlaspi*.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen-Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in November.*

**T**HE first *White Frosts* of *November* that make the *Leaves of Trees* grow *Yellow*, and loosen them from the places where they grew, that shrivel up and rot the *Leaves of Endive*, and of the larger *Lettuces*, and that *Blacken the Artichoke Tops*, &c. give us warning of the approach of *Winter* that merciless Enemy of all *Vegetations*: and therefore we must take care early to secure in our *Conservatory* or *Store-house*, all that is liable to be spoiled by the *Cold* without-doors, and besides, to cover with long dry



Dung, that which we cannot conveniently take out of the *Ground*, and which yet will run great hazard of perishing without being sheltered with some covering, and so in this kind of hasty breaking up, and removing, I would have every body extraordinary busie in plying their duty, and I would advise our *Gard'ner* to increase the number of his Labourers, to prevent the damage he is threat'ned with. The prickle Baskets, and Hand barrows should at this time be plyed with the greatest vigour and dilligence, loaden with such things as are to be housed in the store-house or *Conservatory*, and the other filled with Dung, to cover that which is to be left upon the *Ground*. In a word, I cannot tell how to pardon those that either by imprudence or negligence, let themselves be surprized in such important occasions as this, for I would not have them indulge themselves any rest at all, till all their business be done; I would likewise have the store house or *Conservatory* well filled, and all things in it placed in a regular order. And I would have the whole *Garden* put on as 'twere another new kind of cloathing, which must be generally of long Dung.

---

*Works to be done in December.*

AS soon as *December* is come it is no longer time to dally. For now the *Earth* in *Gardens* is quite stripped of all its usual Ornaments, and the *Frost* that seldom fails to signalize it self this Month without respecting the quality of their Masters, spares no bodies *Gardens*, but unmercifully destroys all it meets with of a nature too delicate to endure its rigour; and therefore it concerns us now to make an end of housing and of covering what we could not house or cover,



cover in the Month of November, viz. *Endive, Cardons, Cellery, Artichokes, Roots, Collyflowers, Chard-Beets, Leeks, Fig Trees, &c.* And above all things, we must be careful to preserve those *Novelties* which we may have begun to advance by *Art*, as *Peas, Beans, Cabbage, Lettuce*, and little *Sallets*, to avoid the displeasure of seeing perish in one bitter Night, what we have been labouring two or three Months to advance.

We may likewise still at the beginning of the Month, continue to sow some early *Peas* upon some Banks made of *Earth* raised in double slopes along by some Wall placed in a good *Exposition*, and especially that towards the *South*.

We transport our rotten *Dung* to those places we design to muck and spread them abroad there, that the Rain and *Snow waters* may the better penetrate them, and carry their Salt a little below the *Superficies* of the *Earth* where our Seeds are to be sown.

One of the most principal Works of this Month, is, at the beginning of it, to make a *Hot Bed* of long new *Dung* of the ordinary breadth of four Foot, and height of three, and as soon as its great heat is spent, we must sow upon it, under *Glass Bells*, some good bright *Curled Lettuce*, and as soon as 'tis grown a little big, which usually happens in a Month's time, we must take up the fairest, and plant it in a *Nursery* upon another *Hot Bed*, and under other *Bells*, to the number of twenty, or twenty five under every *Bell*, and when they are grown reasonably big there too: we must take up the biggest with a little *Earth* about them to replant them, to the number of five or six under each *Bell*, to remain there till they be quite *Cabbage*, which usually happens towards the latter end of *March*, and we take care to fence them well from the *Cold*, as well with Coverings of Litter, as by new heating their *Beds*.

We



We practise the same method in sowing these *Lettuces* in the Month of *January*, and in replanting in *February*, that we may have some ready berimes, that is, towards the end of *March*, and to continue so doing till the *Earth* produces us some of her self, without the help of *Hot Dung*. At this time they that employ themselves in rearing *Novelties*, spend the most part of each day in covering them at night, and uncovering them in the morning, or else all comes to nothing.

When in the *Winter* time, we are raising and forcing of *Lettuce* upon *Hot Beds*, and under *Bells*, we must be careful often to lift up the *Bells*, to take away the dead *Leaves*, there being a great many that rot and perish, and one rotten *Leaf* rots others. The inside of the *Bells* must also be cleansed from the filth and moisture that gather there in abundance, and when there comes a fair Sun shiny day, we must not fail to lift up the *Bells*, that the moisture may be dried up that sticks about the *Leaves*. But the chiefest thing to be observed above all, is to keep the *Beds* moderately hot, by recruiting and new heating, and fermenting them from time to time.

### *Provisions and Products of December.*

**B**Y the assistance of our *Store-house* and *Conservatory*, we have all the same things that we already mentioned in the Month of *November*.

We may also now begin to have some forced *Asparagus*; And,

Some very green and tall *Sorrel*, in spite of the hardest *Frosts*.

*Spinage*.

*Winter Cabbages*, as well of the bright and long sided sort, which are the most delicate, as of the green sort.

Abundance



Abundance of *Virgoulee Pears*, *Thorn Pears*, *Ambrets*, *St. Germans*, *Dry Mertins*, *Portal Pears*, &c. As also.

Of *Api Apples*, *Pippins*, *Courpondu's*, *Fennellers* or *Fennel Apples*, and some *Calvils* to still &c.

As to *Flowers* we have store of *Lawrel*, *Time*, *Flowers*, and we have some *Anemonies* and *Ciclamens*.

*How to judge certainly by viewing and visiting a Kitchen Garden, whether there be any thing wanting in it, which it should be stock'd with in the Months of September and October.*

THE Month of *December*, is still not without standing in need of a great deal of activity, for it often happens that the preceding Month proves too short to let us finish all that should be done in it, which must therefore be made an end of in this, and that particularly if the *Cold* have not yet made all the havock it is capable of: We must then mind exactly to do all I have directed to be done under the head of the Works of this Month: to prepare the *Novelties* of the following *Spring*; to clear the places of old *Hoe Beds*, and to make preparation for the making of new ones with all imaginable expedition, and care taken, not only to have a good provision of long *Dung*, and a great many *Glass-Bells*, but likewise to keep all the *Glass-Frames* in good repair, &c. And here I shall not forget to recommend to those curious persons who are blessed with the means to do it, to take care to force *Asparagus*, and to recruit their *Beds* with new warmth as often as their great heat shall begin to flag. It is a work indeed of no considerable pains and expence, but the pleasure to see growing, in the midst of the severest *Frost* and *Snow*, abundance of *Asparagus*, both thick, green, and every way most excellent, is great enough to take us off from grudging at our cost or trouble.



## CHAP. V.

*What sort of Ground is proper to each Legume  
and Kitchen Plant.*

**T** Here are certain sorts of Grounds, which want none of the good Qualities required to make them produce in every Season, and for a long; time together, all sorts of fair and good *Legumes* supposing always, that they be reasonably well cultivated: And there are some that besides that, have the faculty to produce them more early than others, and they are such Grounds as they commonly call Black Sands, in which is found an equal temper between dry and moist, accompanied with a good exposition, and with an inexhaustible Salt of fertility rendring them easie to be entred by the Spade, and penetrated by the Rain-waters: But on the other hand, it is rare enough to find any of these perfect sorts of *Earth*; and that on the contrary, it is very usual to meet with those that offend either in being too dry, light, and parching, or over-moist, heavy and cold, or elie by being ill situated, as being some of them too high, some too sloping, and some of them too low, and too much in a Bottom. Or more especially excessive moisture, and great drought are both pernicious, because this last, besides that it is always attended with a chilling Cold that retards its productions, is likewise apt to rot the greatest part of the *Plants*, and consequently, it is very difficult to correct, and almost impossible entirely to surmount so great a defect; but it is not altogether so difficult to qualifie a dry temper, for provided it be not extreme great, and that we have the convenience of Water to water it, and of Dung to amend and enrich it, we are Masters of two Sovereign



reign and infallible Remedies, which we must apply for its cure. And so by care and pains we may get the Conquest over those dry and stubborn Lands, and force them to bring forth in abundance all things we shall regularly demand of them.

It follows thence, that when we are so happy as to meet with those choice good sorts of *Ground*, we may indifferently both sow and plant every where in them, any sorts of *Legumes* or *Plants* whatsoever, with an assured Confidence, that they will prosper. The only Subjection we are obliged to in such *Grounds* is, first, to weed much, because they produce abundance of *Weeds* among the good *Herbs*; and secondly, to be often removing our *Legumes* and changing their places, which is an essential point of Practice in all sorts of *Gardens*, it being not at all convenient to place for two or three times together, the same Vegetables in the same piece of *Ground*, because the Nature of the *Earth* requires these sorts of Changes, as being as 'twere assured in this Diversity, to find wherewithal to recruit and perpetuate its first vigour. And though in those good *Grounds* all things prosper admirably well, yet is it a most undoubted Truth, that *Southern* and *Eastern* Expositions are here as well as every where else, more proper than those of the *West* and *North*, to forward, and improve its productions; witness *Strawberries*, *Hasting Peas*; *Cherries* and *Muscad-Grapes*, &c. To balance which, these last Expositions have likewise some peculiar advantages, that make them to be esteemed in their turn; for Example during the excessive Heats of *Summer*, that often scorch up every thing, and make our *Legumes* and other *Plants* run up too hastily to Seed, they are exempt from those violent impressions, which the Sun makes upon those places that are fully exposed to his burning Rays, and consequently our *Plants* will maintain themselves longer in good plight in those situations than in the others.

It



It also follows from hence, that if any Person have *Ground*, though tolerably good, yet not of an equal goodness all over, either caused by the difference of its natural temper, or situation, and sloping inclination upwards or downwards, that then I say, the skill and Industry of the *Gard'ner* shews it self, by knowing how to allot every Plant the place in which it may best come to maturity in every Season, as well in regard of Forwardness, and sometimes of Backwardness, as of its outward Beauty, and inward perfection.

Generally speaking, those *Grounds* that are moderately dry, light, and sandy, and such as though they be a little strong and heavy, situated on a gentle rising towards the *South* or *West*, and are backed by great Mountains, or fenced by high *Walls* against the Cold Winds are more disposed to produce the Novelties of the *Spring*, than the strong, heavy, fat and moist Sands: but likewise on the other Hand, in *Summers*, when there falls but little Rain, these last produce thicker and better nourisht *Legumes*, and require not such large and frequent Waterings, so that we may find some sort of Satisfaction in all sorts of *Grounds*.

However though absolutely speaking all things that may enter into a *Kitchen-Garden*, may grow in all sorts of *Grounds* that are not altogether Barren; yet it has been observed in all times, that all sorts of *Earth* agree not equally with all sorts of *Plants*; Our able *Market Gard'ners* justify the truth of this by a most convincing Experience; for we see that such of them whose *Gardens* are in Sandy *Grounds*, seldom mind to plant in them any *Artichokes*, *Colly-flowers*, *Beet-Chards*, *Onions*, *Cardons*, *Cellery*, *Beet-raves*, or *Red Beet-Roots*, and other *Roots*, &c. as those do that have theirs in stronger and more hearty Lands, and on the contrary, these last employ not their

*Ground*



Ground in *Sorrel*, *Purslain*, *Lettuce*, *Endive*, other small Plants that are delicate and subject to perish with *Mildew*, and the *Wet rot*, as do those whose *Gardens* are in lighter Lands.

From what has been said, there result two things ; the first is, that an able *Gard'ner* which has a pretty dry and hilly *Ground* to cultivate with an *Obligation* to have of all sorts of things in his *Garden*, should place in the moistest parts those Plants that require a little moisture to bring them to perfection, as *Artichokes*, *Red Beet-Roots*, *Scorzoner's*, *Salsifies*, *Carrots*, *Parsnips*, *Skirrets*, *Beet-Chards*, *Colli-flowers* and *Cabbages*, *Spinage*, *Common Peas*, *Beans*, *Currans*, *Gooseberries*, *Raspberries*, *Onions*, *Ciboules*, *Leeks*, *Parsly*, *Sorrel*, *Radishes*, *Patience* or *Dock Sorrel*, *Sweet Herbs*, *Borage*, *Bugloss*, &c. And supposing the *Provision* above specified, be already planted in its other parts he should fill up the dryer parts of the same *Garden* with *Lettuces* of all *Seasons*, *Endive*, *Succory*, *Chervil*, *Tarragon*, *Basil*, *Burnet*, *Mint*, and other *Sallet* *Furnitures*, and *Purslain*, *Garlick*, *Shallots*, *Winter Cabbages*, *Hot Beds* of all sorts of *Plants*, and of little *Sallets* ; and he must place his *Legumes* there at moderate distances, because they grow not of so large a *Size* and *Stature* there, as in fatter places. And lastly, he must keep his *Walks* and *Path ways* higher than his dressed *Grounds*, as well to draw into these latter the *Rain-waters* that would be *unuseful* and *incommodious* in the *Walks*, to render the artificial waterings he shall be obliged to use, of the greater advantage to them, by preventing them from running out any where aside, which must be one of his principal *Applications*.

He must also chuse out in the same *Grounds* those *Parts* which come the nearest to the good temper between dry and moist, for the raising of *Asparagus*, *Strawberries*, *Careons*, *Cellery*, &c. because these sorts of *Plants* languish with drowth in places too dry, and  
perish



perish with Rottenness in parts over-moist. He must place in the Border under his Northern Walls his *Aller-luis's*, *Latter Strawberries*, and *Bourdelsais*, or *Verjuice Grapes* and in the Counter-Borders of the same Northern Quarter, he may make his Nursery Beds for *Strawberries*, and sow *Chervil* all the Summer long, the North side in all sorts of Grounds, being most proper for those purposes. And as this Gard'ner should be curious of Novelties, he ought to look upon the Banks under the Walls towards the South and East to be a marvellous and favourable shelter for the raising them; as for Example, for the procuring of *Strawberries* and early *Peas* at the beginning of May, *Violets* at the entrance of March, and *Cabbage Lettuces* at the beginning of April. He should likewise plant in the dressed Banks next to the same Eastern and Western Walls, his Nursery of *Cabbages*, and sow there his *Winter Lettuces*, that is, *Shell-Lettuces*, to remain there all Autumn and Winter, till in the Spring it be time to transplant them, into the places where they are to come to perfection: He should likewise plant in the Borders of the same Walls, his *Fasse-phierre*, or *Sampire*, which he can hardly have by any other means, which course is to be followed in all sorts of Gardens; and in the Winter time he should likewise observe this particular caution, to throw all the Snow off from the neighbouring places upon the dressed Borders of those Wall trees, and especially those of the Eastern Quarter, both for the erecting a Magazine, as 'twere of Moisture in such places upon which the Rain but seldom falls, as upon those in which the violent heat of Summer is like to be of pernicious influence.

The second thing is, That the Gard'ner whose Garden is in a very fat and moist Ground, must take a quite contrary method with all his Plants to that just now above mentioned; always assuring himself that those parts of it which are very moist, unless he

can



can find means to drain and render them lighter, will be of no other use to him than to produce noxious Weeds, and consequently, that those which partake the least of that intemperature, whether by their own Nature and Situation, or by the care and industry of the ingenious *Gard'ner*, are always to be lookt upon as the best for all sorts of things. He must place in the driest parts most of those *Plants* that keep in their places for several years together, excepting *Currans*, *Gooseberries*, and *Raspberry Bushes*; as for Example, *Asparagus*, *Artichokes*, *Strawberries*, *Wild Endive* and *Succory*, &c. In other places, let him put those things which in *Summer* require the least time to come to perfection, viz. *Sallets*, *Peas*, *Beans*, *Radishes*, nay and *Chardons*, *Cellery*, &c. and because all things grow thick and tall in those fat and moist places, therefore he must plant his *Kitchen-plants* there at greater distance one from the other, than in drier places; he must also keep his *Beds* and dressed *Grounds* raised higher, than his *Walks* and *Pathways* to help to drain out of his *Grounds* the *Water* that is so hurtful to his *Plants*, and for that Reason, his *Beds* of *Asparagus*, especially as likewise his *Strawberry* and *Cellery Beds*, &c. no more than those of his *Sallets* must not be made Hollow, as those must be, that are made in drier *Grounds*.

I have had good Success where the *Ground* is fat, viscous, and as 'twere Clayie, by raising in the midst of it, certain large Squares where the frequent Rain Waters in the *Summer*, of the Year 1682. remained without penetrating above seven or eight Inches deep, and by having given to the said Squares by the means of that elevation, a sloping descent on each side, all along the bottom of which I made at the same time some little Dykes or water-courses about a foot deep as well to separate the Squares from the Counter-borders as particularly to receive the mischievous Waters which by staying on the Squares, otherwise would ruin



ruin all the *Plants* in them, which Waters afterwards discharged themselves into stone Gutters, which I had purposely ordered to be made to carry them off. I afterwards raised most of the Counterborders in the same manner, Arch-wise, that what water might remain in them, might shoot off into the sides of the Walks, all along which there were other little Dikes almost unperceivable, to receive those Waters and convey them into the same stone Gutters; and I can truly affirm, that before I used this precaution, all that I had in those Squares, to perish the *Plants* with the Rot, and the *Trees* with the *Faundice*; besides which mischiefs, the Winds easily threw up my *Trees* by the *Roots*, because they could hardly take any fast hold in that kind of *Ground* that was grown liquid and soft like new made Mortar, or Pap.

#### CHAP. VI.

*What sort of Culture is most proper for every particular Plant.*

**I**T is a very considerable Advance to have settled a *Garden* upon a good foot at first, and to have wisely employed, or at least assigned out all its parts according to the different Qualifications of its *Ground*, the goodness of its *Expositions*, the order of the Months, and the nature of each *Plant*: But that is not all, we must carefully cultivate them, in such a manner as they peculiarly require.

For there is a general Culture of *Kitchen Gardens*, and there is a particular Culture peculiar to each *Plant*. As to the general Culture it is well enough known, that the most necessary and important points of it consists first, in well mending and mucking the *Earth*, whether it be naturally good or not, because *Kitchen-Plants* exhaust it much; secondly, in keeping it always loose and stirred, either by digging up whole *Beds*, to Sow or transplant in them, &c. or such other places where the Spade may.



may be employ'd, as for Example among *Artichokes*, *Cardons*, &c. or by pecking and grubbing up where the closeness of the *Plants* to one another will permit us to use only grubbing Instruments, as for Example, among *Strawberries*, *Lettuces*, *Endive*, *Peas*, *Beans*, *Cellery*, &c. Thirdly in watering plentifully all sorts of *Plants* in very *Hot Weather*, and especially in sandy *Grounds*, for those that are strong and rank require not so much, always observing that in both sorts of *Ground*, watering is not so necessary for *Asparagus*, nor for *Borders* or edgings of *Time*, *Sage*, *Lavender*, *Hyssop*, *Rue*, *Worm-wood*, &c. which need but little moisture to keep them in good plight. Fourthly, it consists in keeping the *Superficies* of our *Ground* clear of all sorts of *Weeds*, either by *Weeding*, or *digging*, or by only raking them over, when they have not been long dressed, so that as far as 'tis possible, the *Earth* may always appear as if it had been newly stirred up.

I shall not insist any longer here upon the Head of the *General Culture*, because it is so well known to all *People*, but shall only declare my *Opinion* and the practice of able *Gard'ners* in that which is peculiarly to be used to each particular *Plant*.

I shall begin with observing to you, that among *Kitchen Plants*, there are some that are Sown to remain still in the place where they were first, and others again, only to be transplanted elsewhere; that there are some that prove well both ways; some that are multiplied without Seed, some that are transplanted whole, and some that are cut to be transplanted, there are some which bear several times in a year, and that last longer than a year; others that produce but once in a year, but yet last to bear for several years after; and Lastly some again, that perish after their first production.

The *Plants* of the first *Class*, are *Radishes*, almost all *Red Beet-Roots*, *Carrots*, *Parsnips*, *Skirrets*, *Turnips*,  
Mâches



*Näohes, Repondes, Scorzonera's, Salsifies,* and besides them, *Garlick, Chervil, Wild Endive, or Succory, Harts-Horn Sallet, Garden-Cresses, Sallots, Spinage, Beras, small Lettuce to cut, Parsly, Burnet, Cutting Beets, Peas, Purslain, &c.* and the greatest part of our *Sorrel, Patience or Sharp-Leav'd Dock, Onions, and Ciboules.*

The *Plants* of the second *Class* which succeed not without being transplanted, are *Chard Beets, Cellery,* and the greatest part of our *White Endive,* both long and tied, and *Cabbages,* unless they be sown very thin, or be very much thinn'd after they are sown; of this *Class* are also *Cabbages, most Musk melons, and Cucumbers, Citrulls or Pumpions, Potirons or flat Pumpions, Leeks, &c.*

Those of the third *Class* that is, such as may be indifferently either continued in the places where they are first sown, or transplanted elsewhere, are *Asparagus,* though most commonly they are sown at first in *Nurseries,* to be transplanted a year or two after; as also *Basil, Fennel, Anise, Borage, Bugloss, Cardons, Capucin Capers or Nasturces, Ciboules, Savory, Time, Musk'd Chervil, &c.*

The *Plants* of the fourth *Class* that are multiplied without being sown, are *Alleluia, or Wood Sorrel, English Cives, Violets, &c.* Because they grow into thick *Tufts* which are separated into many; *Artichokes* are propagated by their *Eyes, Off sets, or Slips;* *Mint,* and *Round Sorrel, Tripe Madame, Tarragon, Balm, &c.* by their *Layers or Branches* that take *Root* where they touch the *Earth,* the two last of which are multiplied by *Seed,* as likewise are the *Artichokes* sometimes. *Strawberries* propagate by their *Runners, Rasp berries, Gooseberries, and Currans,* by their *Slips, or Suckers,* and by their *Cuttings* which also take root. *Lavender, Worm wood, Sage, Time, and Marjoram,* by their *Branches* which take *Root* at their joints, and are also multiplied by their *Seeds*  
the



the common *Bays*, both by *Layers* and *Seed* too; *Vines*, and *Fig Trees*, by their *Suckers*, *Hooked Slips*, and *Cuttings*, whether *Rooted* or not *Rooted*.

In the fifth place, those *Plants* of which we cut off some part either of the *Leaves* or *Roots*, or both at the same time, in order to transplant them, are *Artichokes*, *Chard Beets*, *Leeks*, *Cellery*, &c. And those others whose *Leaves* we do not cut at all, though it be good always to Trim their *Roots* a little to refresh them, are *Endive*, and *Succory*, most commonly and *Savoy*, *Sorrel*, &c. and all *Lettuces*, *Alleluia* or *Wood Sorrel*, *Violets*, *Basil*, *Arrach* or *Orange*, *Borage*, *Bugloss*, *Capucin* *Capers* or *Nasturces*, *Cabbages*, *Tarragon*, *Samphire*, *Strawberries*, *Marjoram*, *Musk Melons*, *Cucumbers*, *Citruls* or *Pumpions*, *Purslain*, and *Radishes* for *Seed*, &c.

The *Plants* that bring forth several times in a year, and yet last for some years following, are *Sorrel*, *Patient* or *Sharp Dock*, *Alleluia* or *Wood Sorrel*, *Burnet*, *Chervil*, *Parsly*, *Fennel*, all *Edging*, or *Sweet Herbs*, *Wild Endive* or *Succory*, *Macedonian Parsly* or *Alisanders*, *Mint*, *Tarragon*, *Samphire*, &c.

Those that produce but once in the year, but yet last bearing for several years together afterwards, are *Asparagus*, and *Artichokes*.

And lastly, those that cease to be useful after their first production are all *Lettuces*, *Common Endive*, *Peas*, *Beans*, *Cardons*, *Melons*, *Cucumbers*, *Citruls* or *Pumpions*, *Onions*, *Leeks*, *Cellery*, *Arrach* or *Orange* and all *Plants* whose *Roots* are only in use, as *Red Beets*, *Carrots*, &c.

Now to give you a particular account of the *Culture* that belongs to every several sort of *Plant*, I must tell you, that this *Culture* consists, first, in observing the distances they are to be placed at one from the other; second, in the *Triming* of such as need it; third, in planting them in that situation, and disposition which they require; fourth, in giving them those assistances  
X which



which some of them have need of to bring them to perfection, or which are convenient for them, whether it be by tyling up, or wrapping about, or Earthing up, or otherwise covering them, &c.

---

## CHAP. VII.

*Shewing how long every Kitchen-Plant may profitably stand in its place in a Kitchen Garden; which of them must be housed in the Conservatory to supply us in the Winter, and which are they which we may force to grow by Art, in spite of the Frost. And lastly, how long each sort of Seed will last without losing its Vertue.*

**I**T is a very important point in Gard'ning, to know how long every *Plant* may usefully possess the place where it grows in our *Gardens*, that so the forecast of an able *Gard'ner* may prepare others immediately to substitute in the places of such, as being as 'twere but Passengers, take up their places but a few Months; for by this means, not only there remains no unprofitable spot of *Ground* in our *Gardens*, but we seem besides to reap a sensible pleasure, by enjoying in some Sense beforehand some things that are not yet in Nature.

To treat of this matter well, I think it very pertinent to speak first of those *Plants* that are of long duration, whether in respect of the time they take up in attaining to their Perfection, or of that in which they continue bearing. *Asparagus*, doubtless, hold the first Rank in this number, and as to *Asparagus*, reckoning from the time we first sow or transplant them, we ought hardly ever to begin to gather them till their shoots be of a competent thickness, which



which happens not till the third or fourth year after, but after that time, provided they be placed in good *Ground*, and carefully cultivated, they may very well be suffered to stand ten or twelve years, it being certain that they will not fail to shoot up and bear vigorously and plentifully during all that time; but yet if we perceive any decay in them sooner, we may destroy and break them up sooner; and if on the contrary, we find them continue to produce well longer than we have limited, we may continue them longer in their places.

*Raspberry, Curran, and Gooseberry* shrubs, easily last eight or ten years.

*Artichokes* must be renewed, that is, new planted in a fresh place after the third year.

The Borders of *Wormwood, Hyssop, Lavender, Marjoram, Rue, Rosemary, Sage, Time, Violets, &c.* provided they be not endamaged, by an extraordinary hard *Winter*, may subsist in their places three or four years, if care be taken to clip them pretty close every *Summer*.

*Alleluia, or Wood-sorrel, Mint, Musk'd Chervil, English Cives, Tarragon, Sorrel, Patience, or sharp Dock, Samphire, Macedonian Parsly or Alisanders, Trip-Madame, &c.* may likewise last well enough in their places three or four Years.

*Strawberry Plants* may last three years, *Wild Endive or Succory, Anis, Ordinary Parsly, Burnet, Fennel, Scozonere, and Common Salsifies, &c.* last two years.

*Leeks* both to cut, and for *Chards, and Cibouls, &c.* last a year, that is, from one *Spring* to another.

*Borage, Bugloss, Red Beet Roots, Spanish Cardons, Carrots, Skirrets, Cabbages, Milan Cabbages, Colliflowers, Citruls or Pumpions, Harts-horn Sallet, Potirons or Flat Pumpions, Parsnips, Leeks, &c.* keep their places nine Months, that is, reckoning from the *Spring*, when they were sown, to the end of *Autumn*.

*Y 2* *Garlick,*



*Garlick, Basil, Nasturces or Capucin Capers, Cucumbers, and Melons or Muskmelons, Shalots, Onions, and the first or Summer Turneps, &c.* take them up only during the *Spring* and *Summer* Seasons, so that their places may receive a new Decoration of Plants in *Autumn*.

*Arrach, or Orage, Ordinary Chervil, White Endive, and Succory, Garden Cresses, and all sorts of Lettuces, whether to cabbage, or to tie up, &c.* take up their Ground about two Months.

*Radishes, Purslain, and Ordinary Chervil, &c.* take up their places but five or six Weeks, and therefore they must be new sown every fifteen days in *Summer* time.

*Hasting Pease and Beans, continue on the Ground six or seven Months, reckoning from the Month of November when they are sown; but common Pease and Beans, and Aricôs, or French-Beans, take it up but four or five Months.*

*Spinage and Mâches* keep theirs all *Autumn* and *Winter* and therefore are planted in places where we have already raised such Plants as last not beyond the *Summer*.

*Mallows and Marsh-mallows* are multiplied only by Seed, and pass not beyond the *Winter*.

The Plants that require housing in the Conservatory during the *Winter*, are *Cardoons, Celler, Artichoke heads, both the Endives, as well the White, as the Wild sort; all that are known by the name of Roots, as Red Beet Roots, Carrots, &c. as likewise Leeks, Cetruls or Pumpions, Potirons or Common Pumpions, Garlick, and Shalots.* All the rest resist the injuries of the *Winter* well enough, viz. *Cabbages, Parsly, Fennel, Cibouls, and even Tarragon, Mint, Samphire, Trip-Madam, Balm, Asparagus, Sorrel, &c.* But they sprout not till the *Spring*, unless forced on *Hot Beds.* Other Plants are not acquainted with that sort of help, or rather Violence, such as are all *Roots, and*  
Garlick,



*Garlick, Onions, Leeks, Cabbages, &c.* Add to this, that by the same expedient of *Hot Beds* we may also raise in the height of cold Weather, little *Sallets* of *Lettuces*, with their Furnitures of *Cresses, Chervil, Mint, &c.*

There remains now nothing but to know how long each sort of Seed will keep good; upon which I must tell you; that generally speaking, most Seeds grow nought after one or two years at most, and therefore it concerns us always to be provided with new ones, if we would not run the hazard of sowing to no purpose in the *Spring*. There are hardly any but *Pease, Beans,* and the Seeds of *Muskmelons, Cucumbers, Citruls* or *Pumpions,* and *Potirons* or *Flat Cucumbers,* that last eight or ten years. The Seeds of *Colliflowers* last three or four, and those of all sorts of *Endive* and *Succory,* five or six years. Of all sorts of Seeds there are none that keep so small a time as *Lettuce Seed,* which yet are better the second, than the first year, but yet are good for nothing the third. Concerning which, with the Particular *Culture* of each several *Plant,* and the Monthly Provision and Products both of *Fruits* and *Plants,* See the *Alphabet,* Page 175.

---

The End of the Last P A R T.

---



# THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS.

**A**N Advertisement with Precautions to the Nobility  
and Gentry. Page 1

Some Rules for the Defence of Gardens, and Plantations,  
against turbulent and blasting Winds, with Instructions  
touching Espalliers, for preserving tender Greens and  
Plants. P. 85

Chap. I, II.

A Gard'ner ought to be well Skill'd in the Culture of Fruit-  
Gardens and Kitchen-Gardens. P. 1

Chap. iii.

An Abridgment of the Maxims of Gard'ning. P. 3

Chap. iv

The Gard'ner's Character.

## PART II.

Chap. I.

**O**F the Condittons necessary to a good Garden. p. 10

Chap. ii.

Of Earth in General. p. 11

Chap. iii.

Of the necessary Conditions requisite to a good Earth. p. 12

Chap. iv.

Of the several Terms and Distinctions us'd in discoursing  
of Earth. p. 15

Chap. v.



# The CONTENTS

## Chap. v.

*Of the Situations of Gardens.*

## Chap. vi.

*Of the Exposure of Gardens, and what may be good or ill in either of them*

p. 18

## Chap. vii.

*Of the Conveniencies of Waterings for Gardens.*

p. 20

## Chap. viii, ix.

*A Garden ought to be partly upon a Level, of a Pleasant Figure, and well plac'd Entrance.*

p. 21

## Chap. x, xi.

*A Garden must be well inclos'd with Walls, and not far distant from the House*

p. 23

## Chap. xii.

*How to Correct defective Ground, either as to quality or want of quantity.*

p. 24

## Chap. xiii

*Of Slopings and Raisings*

p. 26

## Chap. xiv, xv, xvi, xvii.

*Of the Distribution of the Ground of a Fruit and Kitchen-Garden.*

ibid

## Chap. xviii, xix, xx, xxi.

*Of the manner of Cultivating Fruit-Gardens, and of Tillage.*

p. 27

## Chap. xxii, xxiii.

*Of Amendments and Dungs.*

## Chap. xxiv.

*Whether it be proper to Dung Trees.*

p. 32

## Chap. xxv

*What sort of Earth is most proper for every kind of Fruit-Trees.*

p. 33

## PART III.

**A** Preliminary Discourse to the third Part, chiefly relating to Fruit-Trees.

p. 35

Chap. I.



# The CONTENTS.

## Chap. I.

*Of Standard Pears to plant.* p. 43

*A Catalogue of Mr. De la Quintinye's best Pears, Peaches and Brugnonns, with their times of Ripening, several Situations, with the Pages where they are particularly Discours'd of, both in Folio and this Abridgment.* p. 43

## Chap. ii.

*Of Pears in General, with their Descriptions,* p. 35

## Chap. iii.

*Mr. De la Quintinyes descriptions of Peaches, Plums, and Cherries* p. 58

## Chap. iv.

*Of Apples.* p. 73

*Of Vines.* p. 76

*Of Figs.* p. 78

## Chap. v.

*How to make the best use of the Walls in every Garden.* p. 80

*These 5 Chapters comprehend what is Material to the 15th.* Vide p. 83

## Chap. xvi.

*What good Conditions are required in every Fruit-Tree, to qualifie it to be chosen and preferr'd to some good place in a Fruit Garden.*

## Chap. xvii, xviii.

*How to Chuse Trees as they stand in the Nursery Gardens.* p. 84

## Chap. xix

*How to prepare a Tree for Planting.* p. 86

## Chap. xx.

*When and how to Plant Trees, when ready fitted and prepar'd for it.* p. 89

## Chap. xxi.

*How to order Trees planted for Reserves, in Other Cases or Baskets.* p. 91

PART



# The CONTENTS

## PART. IV.

### Chap. I.

**T**HE Definition of the Pruning of Trees. p. 95.

### Chap. ii, iii, iv.

Of the Reasons for, and Time of Pruning. p. 96.

### Chap. v.

Of the Idea of Beauty which Dwarfs require. p. 97.

### Chap. vi.

Of the Idea of Beauty which Wall-Trees require, together with the Maxims of Palisading. p. 98.

### Chap. vii.

Of Branches in General. p. 99.

### Chap. viii.

To know the difference of good and ill Branches. p. 101.

### Chap. ix.

The explanation of Words Strong and Strength, Weak and Weakness. p. 102.

### Chap. x.

The manner of pruning Trees, in the first Year of their being planted. p. 103.

### Chap. xii, xiii, xiv, xv.

Of the pruning of a Tree that has been planted one Year. Chap. xvi. ibid.

Of the first pruning of a Tree that has produc'd two fine Branches, and both well plac'd. p. 106.

### Chap. xvii.

Of the first pruning of a Tree that has only produc'd two Branches, both beautiful and thick, yet both ill plac'd. p. 107.

### Chap. xviii.

Of a Tree which has produc'd three or four fine well plac'd Branches, or else three or four ill ones, and those all in the extremity, or a little beneath it. p. 108.

### Chap. xix.

Of the Pruning of Trees that have produced five, six, or seven fine Branches. p. 109.

### Y

Chap. xx.



# The CONTENTS.

Chp. xx, xxi.

*Of the second Pruning of a Tree, that in the first Year had produced two fine Branches for Wood.* p. 110

Chap. xxii, xxiii.

*Of the second Pruning of a Tree, which had produced the first Year four fine Branches of Wood, or more.*

Chap. xxiv. p. 111

*Of the Pruning which must be perform'd the third Year upon all sorts of Trees Planted within four Years.*

Chap. xxv. p. 114

*Of the first Pruning of Trees that have been Planted with many Branches.* Chap. xxvi p. 116

*Of the Pruning of Tall Standards, or high-bodied Trees* Chap. xxvii p. 117

*Of the Conduct of Graffs in Slits made upon old Trees, either Dwarfs or Wall.* p. 118

Chap. xxviii

*What is to be done in cases not foreseen, tho' common to all sorts of Trees, even those that have been manag'd by all the Rules of Art.* p. 118

Chap. xxix

*Common Remarks for certain singular cases relating to the Pruning of all manner of Trees.* p. 119

Chap. xxx.

*Particular Remarks for the first Pruning, yearly to be perform'd in February and March upon Trees of Stone-Fruit, especially on Peach and Apricot Trees, either Dwarf-Standards or Wall-Trees.* p. 128

Chap. xxxi.

*Remarks upon the second and third Pruning of Stone-Fruit.* Chap. xxxii p. 129

*Of the different manners of ordering a Peach-Tree in Summer.* Chap. xxxiii. p. 130

*Of the Trimming of superfluous Buds and Sprigs.* p. 131

Chap. xxxiv

*Of Pinching or Breaking, to be perform'd upon some Trees in Summer.* p. 132

Chap. xxxv.



# The CONTENTS.

## Chap. XXXV.

*Of what is to be done to some Trees being extraordinary vigorous, yet not bearing Fruit.* p. 133

## Chap. XXXVi.

*Of Fig Trees, their Culture and Conduct.* ibid

## Chap. XXXVii.

*Of the manner of Pruning pretty old Trees.* p. 137

## Chap. xxxviii.

*Of defects of Pruning, in relation to old Dwarfs.* p. 138

## Chap. xxxix.

*Of defects of Pruning, in relation to old Wall-trees*

Chap. xl. ibid.

*Of the Pruning of Vines.* p. 139

## PART V

### Chap. I.

**O***F the care that is requir'd to pick Fruits when they are too abounding.* p. 142

### Chap. ii.

*How to uncover, at a proper time, certain Fruits which require it.* p. 145

### Chap. iii.

*Of the maturity of Fruits, and the order which Nature observes in it.* p. 146

### Chap. iv.

*How to judge of the Maturity and Goodness of Fruit.*

Chap. v. p. 147

*Of the Causes of the Forwardness or Backwardness of Maturity of all manner of Fruits.* p. 148

### Chap. vi.

*Remarks of Maturity in every sort of Fruit, and first of the Summer Fruit which ripen wholly upon the Tree.*

Chap. vii. p. 149

*Of the Situation that is proper for the Fruits that are gather'd, in order to preserve them some time.* p. 150

### Chap. viii.

*Of the Transportation of Fruits.* p. 150

Y 2

Chap. ix.



# The CONTENTS.

## Chap. ix.

*Of the Store-houses or Conservatories for Fruits.* p. 154

## Chap. x.

*Of the Diseases of Fruit-Trees.* p. 161

## Chap. xi, xii, xiii, xiv, xv.

*Of Grafts and Grafting* p. 166

## Chap. xvi

*Of Nurseries and Seminaries* p. 169

## Chap. xvii.

*Of the different manner of Lettices us'd to pallisade*  
p. 170

## PART VI

**O***f the Culture of Kitchen-Gardens.* p. 173

### Chap. I.

*What should be planted in a Kitchen-Garden of a reasonable Extent, to render it compleatly furnish'd.* p. 174

### Chap. ii, iii, iv.

*A Catalogue of all the Seeds, and other things which contribute to the Production and Multiplication of every sort of Plant. Together with what sort of Culture is most proper for every sort of Plant.* p. 175

*The Gard'ner's Kalender, directing what is to be done in a Kitchen Garden, every Month in the Year.*

*What Provisions and Products, we may have in every Month of the Year: And* 231

*How to know if any thing be wanting, which it should be stock'd with in every Month.*

### Chap. v.

*What sort of Ground is proper to each Legume or Kitchen-Plant,* Chap. vi. p. 296

*What sort of Culture is proper for every particular Plant.* Chap. vii. p. 302

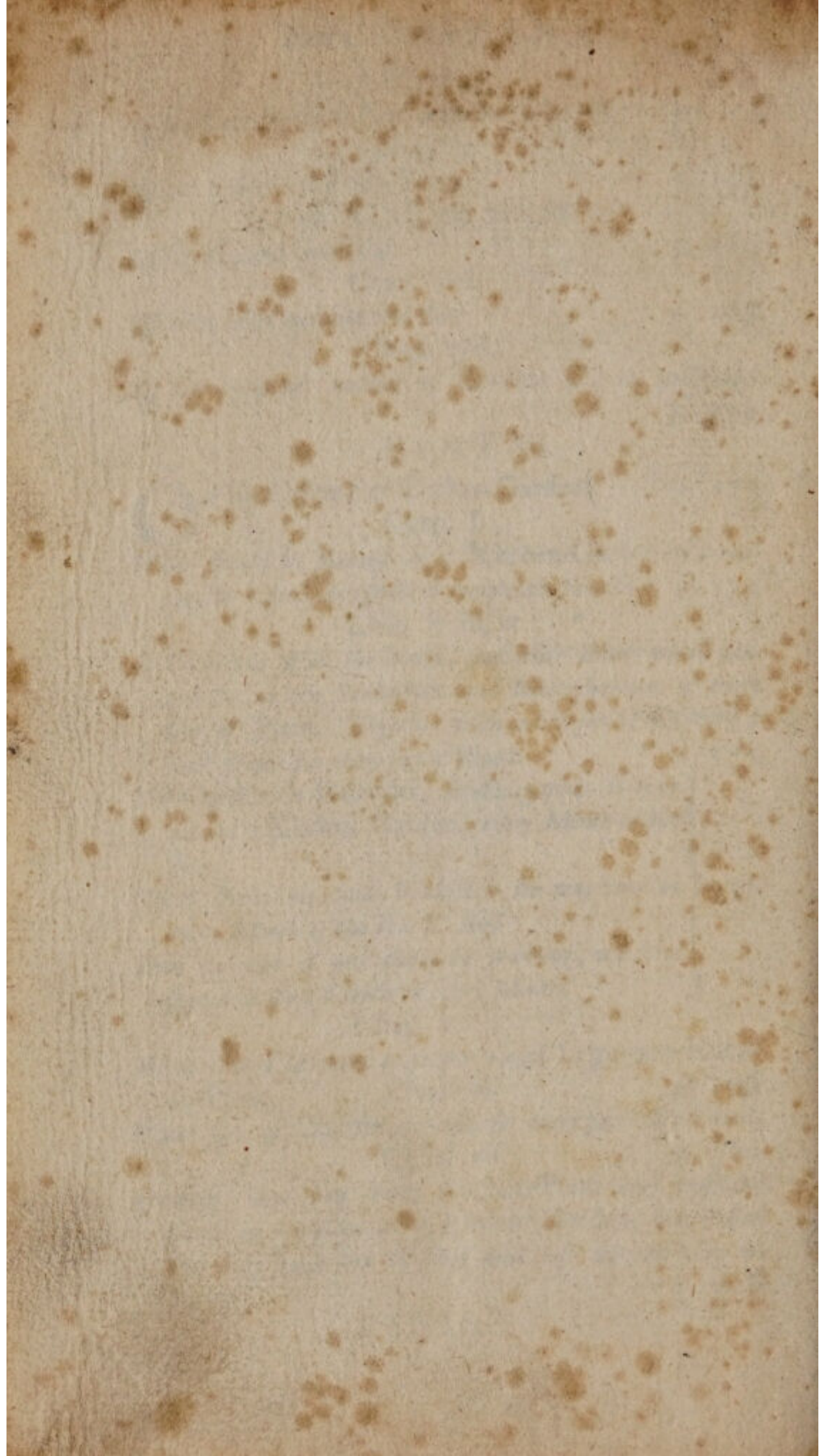
*Shewing how long every Kitchen-Plant may profitably stand in its place in a Kitchen-Garden, &c. And how long each sort of Seed will last without losing its Virtue.* p. 306

## FINIS.















3: 6000  
5: 1000



8-6  
6-8  
57-0  
5



